

Italian FOR **DUMMIES®**

Learn to:

- Speak Italian quickly and effectively
- Grasp basic grammar, vocabulary, and pronunciations



Berlitz®

The international leader in language instruction

Francesca Romana Onofri

Karen Antje Moller

Teresa L. Picarazzi, PhD

Get More and Do More at Dummies.com®



Start with **FREE** Cheat Sheets

Cheat Sheets include

- Checklists
- Charts
- Common Instructions
- And Other Good Stuff!

To access the Cheat Sheet created specifically for this book, go to
www.dummies.com/cheatsheet/Italian

Get Smart at Dummies.com

Dummies.com makes your life easier with 1,000s of answers on everything from removing wallpaper to using the latest version of Windows.

Check out our

- Videos
- Illustrated Articles
- Step-by-Step Instructions

Plus, each month you can win valuable prizes by entering our Dummies.com sweepstakes.*

Want a weekly dose of Dummies? Sign up for Newsletters on

- Digital Photography
- Microsoft Windows & Office
- Personal Finance & Investing
- Health & Wellness
- Computing, iPods & Cell Phones
- eBay
- Internet
- Food, Home & Garden

Find out "HOW" at Dummies.com

*Sweepstakes not currently available in all countries; visit Dummies.com for official rules.

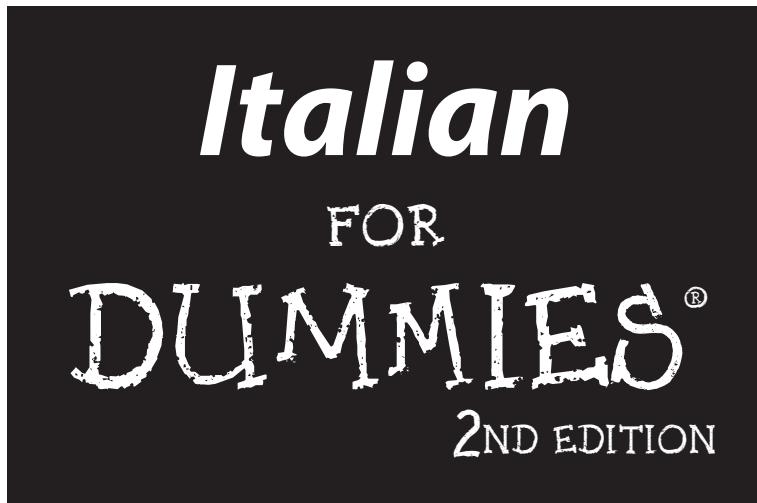


Italian

FOR

DUMMIES®

2ND EDITION



**by Teresa Picarazzi, Francesca Romana Onofri,
and Karen Möller**



John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

Italian For Dummies® 2nd Edition

Published by

John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

111 River St.

Hoboken, NJ 07030-5774

www.wiley.com

Copyright © 2011 by John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

Published by John Wiley & Sons, Inc., Hoboken, NJ

Published simultaneously in Canada

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, scanning or otherwise, except as permitted under Sections 107 or 108 of the 1976 United States Copyright Act, without the prior written permission of the Publisher. Requests to the Publisher for permission should be addressed to the Permissions Department, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 111 River Street, Hoboken, NJ 07030, (201) 748-6011, fax (201) 748-6008, or online at <http://www.wiley.com/go/permissions>.

Trademarks: Wiley, the Wiley Publishing logo, For Dummies, the Dummies Man logo, A Reference for the Rest of Us!, The Dummies Way, Dummies Daily, The Fun and Easy Way, Dummies.com, Making Everything Easier, and related trade dress are trademarks or registered trademarks of John Wiley & Sons, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the United States and other countries, and may not be used without written permission. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners. John Wiley & Sons, Inc., is not associated with any product or vendor mentioned in this book.

LIMIT OF LIABILITY/DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTY: THE PUBLISHER AND THE AUTHOR MAKE NO REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES WITH RESPECT TO THE ACCURACY OR COMPLETENESS OF THE CONTENTS OF THIS WORK AND SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION WARRANTIES OF FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. NO WARRANTY MAY BE CREATED OR EXTENDED BY SALES OR PROMOTIONAL MATERIALS. THE ADVICE AND STRATEGIES CONTAINED HEREIN MAY NOT BE SUITABLE FOR EVERY SITUATION. THIS WORK IS SOLD WITH THE UNDERSTANDING THAT THE PUBLISHER IS NOT ENGAGED IN RENDERING LEGAL, ACCOUNTING, OR OTHER PROFESSIONAL SERVICES. IF PROFESSIONAL ASSISTANCE IS REQUIRED, THE SERVICES OF A COMPETENT PROFESSIONAL PERSON SHOULD BE SOUGHT. NEITHER THE PUBLISHER NOR THE AUTHOR SHALL BE LIABLE FOR DAMAGES ARISING HEREFROM. THE FACT THAT AN ORGANIZATION OR WEBSITE IS REFERRED TO IN THIS WORK AS A CITATION AND/OR A POTENTIAL SOURCE OF FURTHER INFORMATION DOES NOT MEAN THAT THE AUTHOR OR THE PUBLISHER ENDORSES THE INFORMATION THE ORGANIZATION OR WEBSITE MAY PROVIDE OR RECOMMENDATIONS IT MAY MAKE. FURTHER, READERS SHOULD BE AWARE THAT INTERNET WEBSITES LISTED IN THIS WORK MAY HAVE CHANGED OR DISAPPEARED BETWEEN WHEN THIS WORK WAS WRITTEN AND WHEN IT IS READ.

For general information on our other products and services, please contact our Customer Care Department within the U.S. at 877-762-2974, outside the U.S. at 317-572-3993, or fax 317-572-4002.

For technical support, please visit www.wiley.com/techsupport.

Wiley also publishes its books in a variety of electronic formats and by print-on-demand. Not all content that is available in standard print versions of this book may appear or be packaged in all book formats. If you have purchased a version of this book that did not include media that is referenced by or accompanies a standard print version, you may request this media by visiting <http://booksupport.wiley.com>. For more information about Wiley products, visit us at www.wiley.com.

Library of Congress Control Number: 2011932102

ISBN: 978-1-118-00465-4

Manufactured in the United States of America

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1



About the Authors

Teresa Picarazzi graduated with a BA from Skidmore College and an MA/PhD in Italian Literature from Rutgers University. For many years she taught Italian language, literature, and culture at several universities, including The University of Arizona, Wesleyan University, and Dartmouth College. She also directed the Italian language and study abroad programs at some of these. For the past six years, she has taught Italian at The Hopkins School in New Haven, Connecticut.

In her spare time, Teresa likes to cook and read. She lives in Fairfield, Connecticut, with her daughter, her husband, Toby the dog, and Mittens and Governor the cats. The family spends every summer in Ravenna, Italy.

After her university studies in linguistics and Spanish and English language and literature, **Francesca Romana Onofri** lived several years abroad to better her understanding of the cultures and languages of different countries. In Spain and Ireland she worked as an Italian and Spanish teacher, as well as a translator and interpreter at cultural events. In Germany she was responsible for communication and special events in a museum of modern art, but even then she never gave up on her passion for languages: She was an Italian coach and teacher at the Opera Studio of the Cologne Opera House, and did translations — especially in the art field. Back in Italy, Francesca has edited several Berlitz Italian books and is working as a translator of art books, as well as a cultural events organizer and educator.

Karen Möller is currently studying Italian and English linguistics, literature, and culture. Before entering academia, Karen worked in the field of public relations and wrote articles for all kinds of fashion magazines and newspapers. Recently she has had occasion to work with Berlitz Publishing on German-Italian projects, including verb, vocabulary, and grammar handbooks, and Italian exercise books.

Dedication

I would like to dedicate this book to my parents, Mary and Domenico.

—Teresa Picarazzi

Author's Acknowledgments

I would like to thank my husband Giancarlo and daughter Emilia for their patience and support while I was working on this book, and my students, present and past, for their curiosity and love for all things Italian. I would also like to thank the people at Wiley for making this book come true: acquisitions editor Michael Lewis for contacting me; project editor Susan Hobbs for carefully guiding me step by step through the process, and technical editors Alicia Vitti and Christiana Thielmann for making me look at some aspects of Italian language and culture through a different lens.

—Teresa Picarazzi

Publisher's Acknowledgments

We're proud of this book; please send us your comments at <http://dummies.custhelp.com>. For other comments, please contact our Customer Care Department within the U.S. at 877-762-2974, outside the U.S. at 317-572-3993, or fax 317-572-4002.

Some of the people who helped bring this book to market include the following:

Acquisitions, Editorial, and Media Development

Project Editor: Susan Hobbs

Acquisitions Editor: Michael Lewis

Copy Editor: Susan Hobbs

Assistant Editor: Erin Calligan Mooney

Editorial Program Coordinator: Joe Niesen

Technical Editors: Alicia Vitti,
Christiana Thielmann

Editorial Manager: Jennifer Ehrlich

Editorial Supervisor and Reprint Editor:
Carmen Krikorian

Editorial Assistants: David Lutton,
Jennette ElNaggar

Art Coordinator: Alicia B. South

Cover Photos: © iStockphoto.com / stevedangers

Cartoons: Rich Tennant
(www.the5thwave.com)

Composition Services

Project Coordinator: Nikki Gee

Layout and Graphics: Claudia Bell, Carl Byers,
Nikki Gately, Joyce Haughey,
Corrie Socolovitch, Christin Swinford

Proofreaders: Laura Albert, Susan Moritz,
Mildred Rosenzweig

Indexer: Potomac Indexing, LLC

Publishing and Editorial for Consumer Dummies

Diana Graves Steele, Vice President and Publisher, Consumer Dummies

Kristin Ferguson-Wagstaffe, Product Development Director, Consumer Dummies

Ensley Eikenburg, Associate Publisher, Travel

Kelly Regan, Editorial Director, Travel

Publishing for Technology Dummies

Andy Cummings, Vice President and Publisher, Dummies Technology/General User

Composition Services

Debbie Stailey, Director of Composition Services

Contents at a Glance

<i>Introduction</i>	1
<i>Part I: Getting Started.....</i>	7
Chapter 1: Saying It Like It Is	9
Chapter 2: Jumping Into the Basics of Italian	21
Chapter 3: Buongiorno! Salutations!.....	43
Chapter 4: Getting Your Numbers and Time Straight.....	63
<i>Part II: Italian in Action</i>	83
Chapter 5: Casa dolce casa (Home Sweet Home)	85
Chapter 6: Where Is the Colosseum? Asking Directions.....	103
Chapter 7: Food Glorious Food — and Don't Forget the Drink.....	119
Chapter 8: Shopping, Italian Style.....	139
Chapter 9: Having Fun Out on the Town.....	151
Chapter 10: Taking Care of Business and Telecommunicating	173
Chapter 11: Recreation and the Outdoors.....	191
<i>Part III: Italian on the Go.....</i>	207
Chapter 12: Planning a Trip	209
Chapter 13: Money, Money, Money	221
Chapter 14: Getting Around: Planes, Trains, Taxis, and Buses.....	233
Chapter 15: Finding a Place to Stay	255
Chapter 16: Handling Emergencies.....	271
Chapter 17: Small Talk, Wrapping Things Up.....	293
<i>Part IV: The Part of Tens</i>	313
Chapter 18: Ten Ways to Pick Up Italian Quickly	315
Chapter 19: Ten Things Never to Say in Italian.....	319
Chapter 20: Ten Favorite Italian Expressions	323
Chapter 21: Ten Phrases to Say So That People Think You're Italian	327

<i>Part V: Appendixes</i>	331
Appendix A: Verb Tables	333
Appendix B: Dictionaries	347
Appendix C: About the CD	359
Appendix D: Answer Keys.....	361
<i>Index</i>	369

Table of Contents

Introduction	1
About This Book	1
Conventions Used in This Book.....	1
Foolish Assumptions.....	3
How This Book Is Organized	3
Part I: Getting Started.....	3
Consonants.....	3
Part II: Italian in Action.....	3
Part III: Italian on the Go	4
Part IV: The Part of Tens.....	4
Part V: Appendixes	4
Icons Used in This Book	4
Where to Go from Here.....	5
 Part I: Getting Started.....	 7
 Chapter 1: Saying It Like It Is	 9
You Already Know Some Italian!.....	9
Cognates.....	11
Popular expressions.....	11
Mouthing Off: Basic Pronunciation	12
The Alphabet.....	13
Vowels	13
Consonants	15
Stressing Words Properly.....	19
Using Gestures	20
 Chapter 2: Jumping Into the Basics of Italian	 21
Setting Up Simple Sentences	21
Coping with Gendered Words (Articles, Nouns, and Adjectives).....	22
Nouns and gender.....	22
The indefinite articles	23
Definite articles	24
Adjectives	25
Talking about Pronouns	26
Personal pronouns	27
Saying “you”: Formal and informal	27

Verbs	28
Introducing regular and irregular verbs	28
Idiomatic uses of avere	32
Having to, wanting to, being able to	37
Presenting the Simple Tenses: Past, Present, and Future.....	38
Chapter 3: Buongiorno! Salutations!	43
Looking at Common Greetings and Good-byes	43
Deciding between formal or friendly	45
Replying to a greeting.....	45
Specifying your reuniting.....	46
Making Introductions	47
Introducing yourself	47
Introducing other people.....	50
Getting Acquainted.....	53
Finding out whether someone speaks Italian.....	53
Talking about where you come from	54
Extending and responding to invitations.....	60
Chapter 4: Getting Your Numbers and Time Straight	63
Counting Numbers.....	63
Times of Day and Days of the Week	66
Using the Calendar and Making Dates	68
Making dates.....	69
Telling time	70
Chatting about the Weather	72
Familiarizing Yourself with the Metric System.....	77
Length and Distance.....	78
Weight	78
Part II: Italian in Action	83
Chapter 5: Casa dolce casa (Home Sweet Home)	85
Ordering Ordinals.....	85
Inhabiting Your Home.....	87
Hunting for an apartment	87
Sprucing up your apartment	92
Furnishing your new pad	93
Housekeeping in style	95
Cooking and cleaning	98
Doing household chores	100

Chapter 6: Where Is the Colosseum? Asking Directions	103
Finding Your Way: Asking for Specific Places.....	103
Mapping the quarters and following directions	105
Verbs on the Move	109
Locations You May Be Looking For.....	113
Chapter 7: Food Glorious Food — and Don't Forget the Drink	119
Eating, Italian Style	119
Drinking, Italian Style	119
Expressing your love for espresso	120
Beverages with even more of a kick	121
The Start and End of Dining Out.....	123
Making reservations	124
Paying for your meal	125
Having Breakfast.....	126
Eating Lunch.....	127
Enjoying Dinner	129
Shopping for Food	132
Al macellaio (ahl mah-chehl-lahy-oh) (at the butcher's).....	132
Pesce (fish) (peh-sheh)	133
At the panetteria (breadshop)	134
Chapter 8: Shopping, Italian Style	139
Clothing Yourself.....	139
Deciding between department stores and boutiques	139
Sizing up Italian sizes	143
Talking definitely and indefinitely	144
Coloring your words.....	145
Accessorizing	147
Stepping out in style.....	148
Chapter 9: Having Fun Out on the Town.....	151
Acquiring Culture	151
Going to the movies.....	154
Going to the theater.....	156
Going to a museum.....	160
Going to a local festival.....	161
Going to a concert	162
Inviting Fun.....	164
Chapter 10: Taking Care of Business and Telecommunicating	173
Phoning Made Simple.....	173
Connecting via cellphones, texts, and Skype	174
Calling for business or pleasure	176
Making Arrangements over the Phone	178
Asking for People and Getting the Message.....	179

What Did You Do Last Weekend? — Talking about the Past	182
Discussing Your Job	186
The human element	187
Office equipment	187
Chapter 11: Recreation and the Outdoors	191
Taking a Tour	191
Speaking Reflexively	195
Playing Sports	196
Talking about Hobbies and Interests	200
Part III: Italian on the Go	207
Chapter 12: Planning a Trip	209
Deciding When and Where to Go	209
Taking a Tour	211
Booking a Trip/Traveling to Foreign Lands	213
Arriving and Leaving: The Verbs “Arrivare” and “Partire”	216
Going to the Beach and Spa	217
Using the Simple Future Tense	217
Chapter 13: Money, Money, Money	221
Going to the Bank	221
Changing Money	224
Using Credit Cards	226
Looking at Various Currencies	228
Chapter 14: Getting Around: Planes, Trains, Taxis, and Buses	233
Getting through the Airport	233
Checking in	234
Dealing with excess baggage	236
Waiting to board the plane	237
Coping after landing	238
Going through Customs	240
Losing Luggage	241
Renting a Car	243
Navigating Public Transportation	245
Calling a taxi	245
Moving by train	246
Going by bus or tram	249
Reading maps and schedules	251
Being Early or Late	253

Chapter 15: Finding a Place to Stay	255
Choosing a Place to Stay.....	255
Reserving a Room.....	256
Checking In	259
Personalizing pronouns	262
This or these: Demonstrative adjectives and pronouns.....	263
Yours, mine, and ours: Possessive pronouns	263
Bending Others to Your Will: Imperatives	267
Chapter 16: Handling Emergencies.....	271
Talking to Doctors	272
Describing what ails you.....	273
Understanding professional medical vocabulary.....	277
Getting what you need at the pharmacy.....	277
Braving the dentist	279
Reporting an Accident to the Police	280
I've Been Robbed! Knowing What to Do and Say When the Police Arrive	281
Dealing with Car Trouble.....	285
When You Need a Lawyer: Protecting Your Rights.....	287
Reporting a Lost or Stolen Passport	288
Chapter 17: Small Talk, Wrapping Things Up	293
Discovering Interrogative Pronouns	293
Asking simple questions	295
Taking care of basic needs	296
Talking About Yourself and Your Family — Possessives Part 2	300
Speaking Reflexively.....	305
Talking shop	307
Discussing your job	307
Part IV: The Part of Tens.....	313
Chapter 18: Ten Ways to Pick Up Italian Quickly.....	315
Read Italian Food Labels.....	315
Ask for Food in Italian	316
Listen to Italian Songs.....	316
Read Italian Publications	316
Watch Italian Movies.....	316
Tune in to Italian Radio and TV Programs	317
Listen to Italian Language Tapes	317
Share Your Interest	317
Surf the Net.....	318
Cook!.....	318

Chapter 19: Ten Things Never to Say in Italian.....	319
Ciao-ing Down	319
Don't Be Literal	320
Five Fickle "False Friends"	320
Food Faux Pas	321
The Problem with "Play"	321
Being Careful of "False Friends"	321
Chapter 20: Ten Favorite Italian Expressions	323
Mamma mia!	323
Che bello!.....	323
Uffa!.....	324
Che ne so!/Boh!	324
Magari!.....	324
Ti sta bene!	324
Non te la prendere!.....	324
Che macello!.....	325
Non mi va!.....	325
Mi raccomando!	325
Chapter 21: Ten Phrases to Say So That People Think You're Italian	327
In bocca al lupo!.....	327
Acqua in bocca!.....	328
Salute!.....	328
Macché!.....	328
Neanche per sogno!.....	328
Peggio per te!.....	328
Piantala!	329
Vacci piano!	329
Eccome!.....	329
Lascia perdere!.....	329
Part V: Appendixes	331
Appendix A: Verb Tables	333
Italian Verbs	333
Irregular Italian Verbs	336
Italian -IRE Verbs with a Special Pattern (-isc-)	343
Common Irregular Past Participles	345

Appendix B: Dictionaries	347
Appendix C: About the CD.....	359
Track Listing.....	359
Customer Care	360
Appendix D: Answer Keys	361
<i>Index.....</i>	<i>369</i>

Introduction

As society becomes more global, knowing how to say at least a few words in other languages opens doors to communication. Carrying on a brief conversation in an immersion situation can enrich your experience. You may be planning a trip to Italy for business or pleasure. You may have friends and neighbors who speak other languages, or you may want to get in touch with your heritage by learning a little bit of the language that is spoken today in the place your ancestors came from.

Whatever your reason for wanting to learn some Italian, *Italian For Dummies* can help. Two experts at helping readers develop knowledge — Berlitz, experts in teaching foreign languages; and John Wiley & Sons, Inc., publishers of the best-selling *For Dummies* series — have teamed up to produce a book that gives you basic Italian language skills. We're not promising fluency here, but basic communicative competency that will allow you to be understood. If you need to greet someone, purchase a ticket, or order off a menu in Italian, you need look no further than *Italian For Dummies*.

About This Book

This is not a class that you have to drag yourself to twice a week for a specified period of time. You can use *Italian For Dummies* however you want to, whether your goal is to learn some words and phrases to help you get around when you visit Italy, or you just want to be able to say “Hello, how are you?” to your Italian-speaking neighbor. Go through this book at your own pace, reading as much or as little at a time as you like. You don’t have to trudge through the chapters in order, either; just read the sections that interest you.

Note: If you’ve never taken Italian before, you may want to read the chapters in Part I before you tackle the later chapters.

Conventions Used in This Book

To make this book easy for you to navigate, we’ve set up a few conventions:

- ✓ Italian terms are set in **boldface** to make them stand out.
- ✓ Pronunciations are set in normal type with stressed syllables in *italics*. English translations are also set in italics.

✓ Verb conjugations (lists that show you the forms of a verb) are given in tables in this order of six persons: “I,” “you” (singular, informal), “he/she/it/you” (formal), “we,” “you” (plural/informal), and “they/you” (plural, formal) form. Pronunciations follow in the second column. Following is an example using **parlare** (pahr-lah-reh) (*to speak*). The translations in the third column have all three forms, but for the sake of space, I only give you the first:

Conjugation	Pronunciation	Translation
io parlo	ee-oh pahr-loh	<i>I speak, I do speak, I am speaking</i>
tu parli	tooh pahr-lee	<i>You (informal) speak</i>
lei/lui/lei parla	ley/looh-ee/lehy pahr-lah	<i>She/he/you (formal) speak</i>
noi parliamo	noi pahr-lee-ah-moh	<i>We speak</i>
voi parlate	voi parl-lah-teh	<i>You (plural informal) speak</i>
loro parlano	loh-roh pahr-lah-noh	<i>They/you (plural formal) speak</i>

Language learning is a peculiar beast, so this book includes a few elements that other *For Dummies* books do not. Following are the new elements you'll find:

- ✓ **Talkin' the Talk dialogues:** The best way to learn a language is to see and hear how it's used in conversation, so we include dialogues throughout the book under the heading "Talkin' the Talk." Listen to and repeat these dialogues as often as you like. In both the CD and the text, they will help you approximate authentic pronunciation.
- ✓ **Words to Know blackboards:** Identifying key words and phrases is also important in language learning, so we collect the important words in a chapter (or section within a chapter) in a chalkboard, with the heading "Words to Know."
- ✓ **Fun & Games activities:** You can use the Fun & Games activities to reinforce some chapter concepts you've learned. These word games are fun ways to gauge your progress.

Also note that because each language has its own ways of expressing ideas, the English translations that we provide for the Italian terms may not be exactly literal. We want you to know the gist of what's being said. For example, the phrase **Mi dica** (mee dee-kah) can be translated literally as the formal imperative "Tell me," but the phrase really means "(How) Can I help you?"

Foolish Assumptions

To write this book, we had to make some assumptions about who you are and what you want from a book called *Italian For Dummies*. These are the assumptions we made:

- ✓ You know no Italian — or if you took it back in school, you don't remember much.
- ✓ You're not looking for a book that will make you fluent in Italian; you just want to know some words, phrases, and sentence constructions so that you can communicate basic information in Italian.
- ✓ You don't want to have to memorize long lists of vocabulary words or a bunch of boring grammar rules.
- ✓ You want to have fun and learn a little bit of Italian at the same time.

If these statements apply to you, you've found the right book!

How This Book Is Organized

This book is divided by topic into parts, and then into chapters. The following sections tell you what types of information you can find in each part.

Part I: Getting Started

This part lets you get your feet wet by giving you some Italian basics: how to pronounce your ABCs, numbers, words, and so on. We even boost your confidence by reintroducing you to some Italian words that you probably already know. Finally, we outline the basics of Italian grammar that you may need to know when you work through later chapters in the book.

Part II: Italian in Action

In this part, you begin learning and using Italian. Instead of focusing on grammar points as many language textbooks do, this part focuses on everyday situations, such as shopping, dining, going out, asking for directions, and being home.

Part III: Italian on the Go

This part gives you the tools you need to take your Italian on the road, whether it's planning a trip or excursion, navigating public transportation, finding a room, or handling an emergency.

Part IV: The Part of Tens

If you're looking for small, easily digestible pieces of information about Italian, this part is for you. Here, you can find ten ways to learn Italian quickly, ten useful Italian expressions to know, ten things never to say in Italian, and more.

Part V: Appendices

This part of the book includes important information that you can use for reference. We include verb tables, which show you how to conjugate regular and irregular verbs. We also provide a listing of the tracks that appear on the audio CD that comes with this book so that you can find out where in the book those dialogues are and follow along. We give you a mini-dictionary in both Italian-to-English and English-to-Italian formats. If you encounter an Italian word that you don't understand, or you need to say something in Italian, you can look it up here. You can also find the answers to the Fun and Games sections here.

Icons Used in This Book

You may be looking for particular information while reading this book. To make certain types of information easier for you to find, we've placed the following icons in the left-hand margins throughout the book:



This icon highlights tips that can make learning Italian easier.



To ensure that you don't forget important information, this icon serves as a reminder, like a string tied around your finger.



Languages are full of quirks that may trip you up if you're not prepared for them. This icon points to discussions of these weird grammar rules.



If you're looking for information and advice about culture and travel, look for these icons.



The audio CD that comes with this book gives you the opportunity to listen to real Italian speakers so that you can get a better understanding of what Italian sounds like. This icon marks the Talkin' the Talk dialogues that you can find on the CD. This is a great way to practice your own speaking.

Where to Go from Here

Learning a language is all about jumping in and giving it a try (no matter how bad your pronunciation is at first). So make the leap! Start at the beginning, pick a chapter that interests you, or pop the CD into your stereo or computer and listen to a few dialogues. Skip over the parts that distract you and take you away from Italian (such as the pronunciation spellings and translations after you've been through them once): The more you think in Italian, the more natural it will come to you. Before long, you'll be able to respond, "Sì!" when people ask, "Parla italiano?"

Part I

Getting Started

The 5th Wave By Rich Tennant



"I insisted they learn some Italian.
I couldn't stand the idea of standing
in front of the Trevi Fountain and
hearing, 'gosh', 'wow', and 'far out.'"

In this part . . .

Ciao! See? You already understand some Italian, although you may think we're saying good-bye before we even say hello. The truth is that **ciao** mean both "hello" and "goodbye."

These first four chapters introduce you to the basics of the Italian language: Chapter 1 gets you going with pronunciation, Chapter 2 helps you with basic Italian grammar. You learn how to say "hello" and "goodbye" as well as how to introduce yourself and others in Chapter 3. And you learn how to tell time, put dates in your calendar, and ask for phone numbers in Chapter 4. So Andiamo! (ah-de-ah-moh) (Let's go!)

Chapter 1

Saying It Like It Is

In This Chapter

- Taking note of the little Italian you know
- Looking at popular expressions and cognates
- Learning basic Italian pronunciation
- Using gestures

Iou probably know that Italian is a Romance language, which means that Italian, just like Spanish, French, Portuguese, and some other languages, is a “child” of Latin. There was a time when Latin was the official language in a large part of Europe because the Romans ruled so much of the area. Before the Romans came, people spoke their own languages, and the mixture of these original tongues with Latin produced many of the languages and dialects still in use today.

If you know one of these Romance languages you can often understand bits of another one of them. But just as members of the same family can look very similar but have totally different personalities, so it is with these languages. People in different areas speak in very different ways due to historical or social reasons, and even though Italian is the official language, Italy has a rich variety of dialects. Some dialects are so far from Italian that people from different regions cannot understand each other.

Despite the number of different accents and dialects, you will be happy to discover that everybody understands the Italian you speak and you understand theirs. (Italians don’t usually speak in their dialect with people outside their region.)

You Already Know Some Italian!

Although Italians are very proud of their language, they have allowed some English words to enter it. They talk, for example, about gadgets, jogging, feeling and shock; they often use the word okay; and since computers have entered their lives, they say “**cliccare sul mouse**” (kleek-kah-reh soohl mouse)

(to click the mouse). Finally, there's **lo zapping** (loh zap-ping), which means switching TV channels with the remote. These are only a few of the flood of English words that have entered the Italian language.

In the same way, many Italian words are known in English-speaking countries. Can you think of some?

How about . . .

- ✓ **pizza** (*peet-tsah*)
- ✓ **pasta** (*pahs-tah*)
- ✓ **spaghetti** (*spah-geht-tee*)
- ✓ **tortellini** (*tohr-tehl-lee-nee*)
- ✓ **mozzarella** (*moht-tsah-rehl-lah*)
- ✓ **espresso** (*ehs-prehs-soh*)
- ✓ **cappuccino** (*kahp-pooh-chee-noh*)
- ✓ **panino** (*pah-nee-noh*): For one sandwich; for two or more, the word is **panini** (*pah-nee-nee*)
- ✓ **biscotti** (*bees-koht-tee*) (cookies): One cookie is a **biscotto** (*bees-koht-toh*)
- ✓ **tiramisù** (*tee-rah-mee-sooh*)

Incidentally, did you know that **tiramisù** literally means “pull me up”? This refers to the fact that this sweet is made with strong Italian espresso.

You may have heard words from areas other than the kitchen, such as the following:

- ✓ **amore** (*ah-moh-reh*): This is the word “love” that so many Italian songs tell about.
- ✓ **avanti** (*ah-vahn-tee*): You use this word as “come in!” and also “come on!” or “get a move on!”
- ✓ **bambino** (*bahm-bee-noh*): This is a male child. The female equivalent is **bambina** (*bahm-bee-nah*).
- ✓ **bravo!** (*brah-voh*): You can properly say this word only to one man. To a woman, you must say “**brava!**” (*brah-vah*), and to a group of people, you say “**bravi!**” (*brah-vee*) unless the group is composed only of women, in which case you say “**brave!**” (*brah-veh*).
- ✓ **ciao!** (*chou*): **Ciao** means “hello” and “goodbye.”

- ✓ **scusi** (*scooh-zee*): This word stands for “excuse me” and “sorry” and is addressed to persons you don’t know or to whom you speak formally. You say “**scusa**” (*scooh-zah*) to people you know and to children.

You’ve heard at least some of these words, haven’t you? This is just a little taste of all the various words and expressions you’ll get to know in this book.

Cognates

In addition to the words that have crept into the language directly, Italian and English have many cognates. A cognate is a word in one language that has the same origin as a word in another one and may sound similar. You can get an immediate picture of what cognates are from the following examples:

- ✓ **aeroporto** (ah-eh-roh-*pohr*-toh) (*airport*)
- ✓ **attenzione** (aht-tehn-*tsyoh*-neh) (*attention*)
- ✓ **comunicazione** (koh-moooh-nee-kah-*tsyoh*-neh) (*communication*)
- ✓ **importante** (eem-pohr-*tahn*-teh) (*important*)
- ✓ **incredibile** (een-kreh-dee-bee-leh) (*incredible*)

You understand much more Italian than you think you do. Italian and English are full of cognates. To demonstrate, read this little story with some Italian words and see how easy it is for you to understand.

It seems **impossibile** (eem-pohs-see-bee-leh) to him that he is now at the **aeroporto** (ah-eh-roh-*pohr*-toh) in Rome. He always wanted to come to this **città** (cheet-tah). When he goes out on the street, he first calls a **taxi** (tah-ksee). He opens his bag to see if he has the **medicina** (meh-dee-chee-nah) that the **dottore** (doht-toh-reh) gave him. Going through this **terribile traffico** (tehr-ree-bee-leh *trahf*-fee-koh), he passes a **cattedrale** (kaht-teh-drah-leh), some **sculture** (skoohl-tooh-reh), and many **palazzi** (pah-laht-tsee). He knows that this is going to be a **fantastico** (fahn-tahs-tee-koh) journey.

Popular expressions

Every language has expressions that you use so often that they almost become routine. For example, when you give something to somebody and he or she says, “Thank you,” you automatically reply, “You’re welcome!” This

type of popular expression is an inseparable part of every language. When you know these expressions and how to use them, you're on the way to really speaking Italian.

The following are some of the most common popular expressions in Italian:

- ✓ **Accidenti!** (ahch-chee-dehn-tee) (*Wow!/Darn it!*)
- ✓ **Andiamo!** (ahn-dyah-moh) (*Let's go!*)
- ✓ **Che c'è?** (keh cheh) (*What's up?*)
- ✓ **D'accordo? D'accordo!** (dahk-kohr-doh) (*Agreed? Agreed!*)
- ✓ **E chi se ne importa?** (eh kee seh neh eem-pohr-tah) (*Who cares?*)
- ✓ **È lo stesso.** (eh loh stehs-soh) (*It's all the same; It doesn't matter.*)
- ✓ **Fantastico!** (fahn-tahs-tee-koh) (*Fantastic!*)
- ✓ **Non fa niente.** (nohn fah nee-ehn-teh) (*Don't worry about it. It doesn't matter.*) You say “**Non fa niente**” when someone apologizes to you for something.
- ✓ **Non c'è di che.** (nohn cheh dee keh) (*You're welcome.*)
- ✓ **Permesso?** (pehr-mehs-soh) (*May I pass/come in?*) Italians use this expression every time they cross a threshold entering a house or when passing through a crowd.
- ✓ **Stupendo!** (stooh-pehn-doh) (*Wonderful!; Fabulous!*)
- ✓ **Va bene!** (vah beh-neh) (*Okay!*)

Mouthing Off: Basic Pronunciation

Italian provides many opportunities for your tongue to do acrobatics. This is really fun, because the language offers you some new sounds. In this section, I give you some basic pronunciation hints that are important both for surfing through this book and for good articulation when you speak Italian. First, I'd like to make a deal with you. Next to the Italian words throughout this book you find the pronunciation in parentheses. In the following sections, I give you some helpful hints about how to read these pronunciations — that is, how to pronounce the Italian words. The deal is that you and I have to agree on which letters refer to which sounds. You have to follow this code all through this book.

In the pronunciations, I separate the syllables with a hyphen, like this: **casa** (kah-zah) (*house*). Furthermore, I italicize the stressed syllable, which means that you put the stress of the word on the italicized syllable. (See the section “Stressing Words Properly,” later in this chapter, for more information about

stresses.) If you learn the correct pronunciation in this chapter, starting with the alphabet, you may even forego the pronunciation spelling provided, and read it like a real Italian.

The Alphabet

What better way is there to start speaking a language than to familiarize yourself with its alphabet! Table 1-1 shows you all the letters as well as how each sounds. It's essential to learn how to pronounce the Italian alphabet so that you'll be able to pronounce all of the new words you will be learning. Listen to and repeat the CD as many times as you need to in order to get down the right sounds. In the long run, this will help you be understood when you communicate in Italian. Note that there are only 21 letters in the Italian alphabet: missing are j, k, w, x, and y (which have crept into some Italian words now used in Italy).

Table 1-1 The Italian Alphabet (ahl-fah-beh-toh)

<i>Letter</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>	<i>Letter</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>
a	ah	b	bee
c	chee	d	dee
e	eh	f	ehf-feh
g	jee	h	ahk-kah
i	ee	j	
k		l	ehl-leh
m	ehm-meh	n	ehn-neh
o	oh	p	pee
q	kooh	r	ehr-reh
s	ehs-seh	t	tee
u	ooh	v	vooh
w		x	
y		z	dzeh-tah

Vowels

I'll start with the tough ones: vowels. The sounds are not that new, but the connection between the written letter and the actual pronunciation is not quite the same as it is in English.

Italian has five written vowels: a, e, i, o, and u. The following sections tell you how to pronounce each of them.

The vowel “a”

In Italian, the letter a has just one pronunciation. Think of the sound of the a in the English word father. The Italian a sounds just like that.

To prevent you from falling back to the other a sounds found in English, I transcribe the Italian a as (ah), as shown earlier in **casa** (*kah-sah*) (*house*). Here are some other examples:

- ✓ **albero** (*ahl-beh-roh*) (*tree*)
- ✓ **marmellata** (*mahr-mehl-lah-tah*) (*jam*)
- ✓ **sale** (*sah-leh*) (*salt*)

The vowel “e”

Try to think of the sound in the French word gourmet (you don’t pronounce the t). This sound comes very close to the Italian e. In this book, I transcribe the e sound as (eh). For example:

- ✓ **sole** (*soh-leh*) (*sun*)
- ✓ **peso** (*peh-zoh*) (*weight*)
- ✓ **bere** (*beh-reh*) (*to drink*)

The vowel “i”

The Italian i is simply pronounced (ee), as in the English word see. Here are some examples:

- ✓ **cinema** (*chee-neh-mah*) (*cinema*)
- ✓ **bimbo** (*beem-boh*) (*little boy*)
- ✓ **vita** (*vee-tah*) (*life*)

The vowel “o”

The Italian o is pronounced as in the English (from the Italian) piano. I therefore list the pronunciation as (oh). Try it out on the following words:

- ✓ **domani** (*doh-mah-nee*) (*tomorrow*)
- ✓ **piccolo** (*peek-koh-loh*) (*little; small*)
- ✓ **dolce** (*dohl-cheh*) (*sweet*)

The vowel “u”

The Italian u sounds always like the English (ooh), as in zoo. Therefore, I use (ooh) to transcribe the Italian u. Here are some sample words:

- ✓ **tu** (tooh) (*you*)
- ✓ **luna** (looh-nah) (*moon*)
- ✓ **frutta** (frooh-tah) (*fruit*)

Pronunciation peculiarities

You will come across some sounds and spellings that are not so familiar, for example:

- ✓ oi as in oink: **noi** (noi) (*we*)
- ✓ ahy as in ice: **dai** (dahy) (*you give*)
- ✓ ee as in feet: **diva** (dee-vah) (*diva*)
- ✓ ey as in aid: **lei** (ley) (*she*)
- ✓ ou as in out: **auto** (ou-toh) (*car*)

Consonants

Italian has the same consonants that English does. You pronounce most of them the same way in Italian as you pronounce them in English, but others have noteworthy differences. I start with the easy ones and look at those that are pronounced identically:

- ✓ **b:** As in **bene** (beh-neh) (*well*)
- ✓ **d:** As in **dare** (dah-reh) (*to give*)
- ✓ **f:** As in **fare** (fah-reh) (*to make*)
- ✓ **l:** As in **ladro** (lah-droh) (*thief*)
- ✓ **m:** As in **madre** (mah-dreh) (*mother*)
- ✓ **n:** As in **no** (noh) (*no*)
- ✓ **p:** As in **padre** (pah-dreh) (*father*)
- ✓ **t:** As in **treno** (treh-noh) (*train*) Make certain to exaggerate the **t** when it's doubled, like in the word **spaghetti** (spah-geht-tee) as in the last name Getty.
- ✓ **v:** As in **vino** (vee-noh) (*wine*)

Finally there are some consonants that do not really exist in Italian except in some foreign words that have entered the language.

- ✓ **j:** Exists mostly in foreign words such as jogging, junior, and jeans, and sounds like the **y** in *yam*.
- ✓ **k:** The same as **j**; you find it in words like **okay**, **ketchup**, and **killer**.
- ✓ **w:** As with **j** and **k**, you find it in some foreign words (for the most part English words), like **whisky**, **windsurf**, and **wafer**.
- ✓ **x:** As with **j**, **k**, and **w**, **x** doesn't really exist in Italian, with the difference that "x words" derive mostly from Greek. Examples include **xenofobia** (kseh-noh-foh-bee-ah) (*xenophobia*) and **xilofono** (ksee-loh-foh-noh) (*xylophone*).
- ✓ **y:** The letter **y** normally appears only in foreign words, like **yogurt**, **hobby**, and **yacht**.

Now, on to the consonants that are pronounced differently than they are in English.

The consonant "c"

The Italian c has two sounds, depending on which letter follows it:

- ✓ **Hard c:** When **c** is followed by **a**, **o**, **u**, or any consonant, you pronounce it as in the English word **cat**. I transcribe this pronunciation as (k). Examples include **casa** (kah-sah) (*house*), **colpa** (kohl-pah) (*guilt*), and **cuore** (kwoh-reh) (*heart*).

To obtain the "k" sound before **e** and **i**, you must put an **h** between the **c** and the **e** or **i**. Examples include **che** (keh) (*what*), **chiesa** (kyeh-zah) (*church*), and **chiave** (kyah-veh) (*key*).

- ✓ **Soft c:** When **c** is followed by **e** or **i**, you pronounce it as you do the first and last sound in the English word church; therefore, I give you the pronunciation (ch). Examples include **cena** (cheh-nah) (*dinner*), **cibo** (chee-boh) (*food*), and **certo** (chehr-toh) (*certainly*).

To obtain the "ch" sound before **a**, **o**, or **u**, you have to insert an **i**. This **i**, however, serves only to create the "ch" sound; you do not pronounce it. Examples include **ciao** (chou) (*Hello; goodbye*), **cioccolata** (chok-koh-lah-tah) (*chocolate*), and **ciuccio** (chooh-choh) (*baby's pacifier*).

This pronunciation scheme sounds terribly complicated, but in the end, it's not that difficult. Here I present it in another way, which you can take as a little memory support:

Follow a scheme like this:

C + i, e = “ch”

C+ h, o, u, a, cons = “k”

The consonant “g”

The Italian **g** behaves the same as the **c**. Therefore, I present it the same way:

✓ **Hard g:** When **g** is followed by **a**, **o**, **u**, or any consonant, you pronounce it as you pronounce the **g** in the English word good. I transcribe this pronunciation as (g). Examples include **gamba** (gahm-bah) (*leg*), **gomma** (gohm-mah) (*rubber*), and **guerra** (gweh-rah) (*war*).

To obtain the “g” sound before **e** or **i**, you must put an **h** between the letter **g** and the **e** or **i**. Examples include **spaghetti** (spah-geht-tee) (*spaghetti*), **ghiaccio** (yahch-choh) (*ice*), and **ghirlanda** (geer-lahn-dah) (*wreath*).

✓ **Soft g:** When **g** is followed by **e** or **i**, you pronounce it as you do the first sound in the English word job; therefore, I write the pronunciation as (j). Examples include **gentile** (jehn-tee-leh) (*kind*), **giorno** (johr-noh) (*day*), and **gelosia** (jeh-loh-zee-ah) (*jealousy*).

To obtain the “j” sound before **a**, **o**, or **u**, you have to insert an **i**. The **i** serves only to indicate the proper sound; you do not pronounce it. Examples include **giacca** (jahk-kah) (*jacket*), **gioco** (joh-koh) (*game*), and **giudice** (jooh-dee-cheh) (*judge*). Here’s another little pattern to help you remember these pronunciations:

gamba	gomma	guerra	ghiaccio	spaghetti	= g
gentile	giorno	giacca	gioco	giudice	= j

The consonant “h”

The consonant **h** has only one function: namely, to change the sound of **c** and **g** before the vowels **e** and **i**, as described earlier. It also appears in foreign expressions such as hostess, hit parade, and hobby, and in some forms of the verb **avere** (ah-veh-reh) (*to have*), but it’s always silent.

The consonant “q”

Q exists only in connection with **u** followed by another vowel; that is, you always find **qu**. The **q** is pronounced like (k), and **qu** is, therefore, pronounced (kw). Examples include **quattro** (kwaht-troh) (*four*), **questo** (kwehs-toh) (*this*), and **quadro** (kwah-droh) (*picture*).

The consonant “r”

The Italian **r** is not pronounced with the tongue in the back, as it is in English, but trilled at the alveolar ridge, which is the front part of your palate, right behind your front teeth. You have to practice it. In the beginning, you may not find this pronunciation manageable, but practice makes perfect!

Here are some words to help you practice:

- ✓ **radio** (rah-dee-oh) (*radio*)
- ✓ **per favore** (pehr fah-voh-reh) (*please*)
- ✓ **prego** (preh-goh) (*you're welcome*)

The consonant “s”

S is sometimes pronounced as the English **s**, as in **so**. In this case, I give you the pronunciation (*s*). In other cases, it's pronounced like the English **z**, as in **zero**; in these cases, I list (*z*) as the pronunciation. Examples include **pasta** (*pahs-tah*) (*pasta*), **solo** (*soh-loh*) (*only*), **chiesa** (*kyeh-zah*) (*church*), and **gelosia** (*jeh-loh-zee-ah*) (*jealousy*).

The consonant “z”

A single **z** is pronounced (*dz*) — the sound is very similar to the English **z** in **zero**, with a **d** added at the beginning, as in **zero** (*dzehr-oh*) (*zero*). Just try it. When the **z** is doubled, you pronounce it more sharply, like (*t-ts*), as in **tazza** (*taht-tsah*) (*cup; mug*). Furthermore, when **z** is followed by the letter **i**, it also has a **ts** sound, like in the word **nazione** (*nah-tsyoh-neh*) (*nation*).

Double consonants

When you encounter double consonants in Italian, you have to pronounce each instance of the consonant or lengthen the sound. The difficult part is that there's no pause between the consonants.

Doubling the consonant usually changes the meaning of the word. So, to make sure that your Italian is understandable, emphasize doubled consonants well. To make you pronounce words with double consonants correctly, I write the first consonant at the end of one syllable and the other one at the beginning of the following one, as in these examples:

- ✓ **nono** (*noh-noh*) (*ninth*)
- ✓ **nonno** (*nohn-noh*) (*grandfather*)
- ✓ **capello** (*kah-pehl-loh*) (*hair*)
- ✓ **cappello** (*kahp-pehl-loh*) (*hat*)

Try it once again:

- ✓ **bello** (behl-loh) (*beautiful*)
- ✓ **caffè** (kahf-feh) (*coffee*)
- ✓ **occhio** (ohk-kyoh) (*eye*)
- ✓ **spiaggia** (spyahj-jah) (*beach*)

Consonant clusters

Certain consonant clusters have special sounds in Italian. Here they are:

- ✓ **gn** is pronounced as the English “ny.” The sound is actually the same as in a Spanish word I’m sure you know: **señorita** (seh-nyoh-ree-tah) (*miss*), or better yet, an Italian word like **gnocchi** (nyohk-kee).
- ✓ **gl** is pronounced in the back of the throat like the English word *million* in words like **gli** (lyee) (*the*) and **famiglia** (fah-mee-lyah) (*family*.) You should not say anything like the English **g**.
- ✓ **sc** follows the same rules of the soft and hard “c” from the previous section. It is pronounced as in the English *scooter* when it comes before **a, o, u, or h** — that is, as in **scala** (skah-lah) (*scale*), **sconto** (skohn-toh) (*discount*), and **scuola** (scwoh-lah) (*school*). Before **e** and **i**, it is pronounced like the **sh** in *cash*. Examples of this pronunciation include **scena** (sheh-nah) (*scene*), **scesa** (sheh-sah) (*descent*), and **scimmia** (sheem-mee-ah) (*monkey*).

Stressing Words Properly

Stress is the audible accent that you put on a syllable as you speak it. One syllable always gets more stress than all the others. (A reminder: In this book I italicize the syllable to stress.)

Some words give you a hint as to where to stress them: They have an accent grave (̄) or acute (̄) above one of their letters. Here are some examples:

- ✓ **caffè** (kahf-feh) (*coffee*)
- ✓ **città** (cheet-tah) (*city*)
- ✓ **lunedì** (looh-neh-dee) (*Monday*)
- ✓ **perché** (pehr-keh) (*why*)
- ✓ **però** (peh-roh) (*but*)

- ✓ **università** (ooh-nee-vehr-see-tah) (*university*)
- ✓ **virtù** (veer-tooh) (*virtue*)

Only vowels can have accents, and in Italian all vowels at the end of a word can have this accent (˘). If there's no accent in the word, you're unfortunately left on your own. A rough tip is that Italian tends to have the stress on the penultimate (the next-to-last) syllable. But there are too many rules and exceptions to list them all here!



- ✓ The accent tells you where to stress the word.
- ✓ Fortunately, only a few words have the same spelling and only an accent to distinguish them. But it can be a very important distinction, as in the following example:
 - e (eh) and è (eh) (*he/she/it is*) are distinguished only by the accent on the vowel.

Using Gestures

Italians love to emphasize their words with gestures. For example, there are gestures to express the following feelings: **Ho fame** (oh fah-meh) (*I'm hungry*), **Me ne vado** (meh neh vah-doh) (*I'm leaving*), and **E chi se ne importa?** (eh kee seh neh eem-pohr-tah) (*Who cares?*). Needless to say, a flood of rude gestures exist as well.

Unfortunately, describing the gestures in words is too difficult, because Italian body language is a science and is hard for non-Italians to copy. You also have to make the right facial expressions when performing these gestures. These gestures generally come naturally and spontaneously, and you're sure to see some as you observe Italian life. Still, I won't let you go off without some of the practical, useful gestures that you might make when with Italians. Greeting and saying goodbye, for example, are accompanied by a common gesture — hugging and kissing. Italians seek direct contact when greeting one another. When you're not very familiar with a person, you shake hands. But when you know a person well or you have an immediate good feeling, you kiss cheek to cheek; that is, you don't really touch with your lips, but only with your cheek.

Chapter 2

Jumping Into the Basics of Italian

In This Chapter

- ▶ Introducing simple sentence construction
- ▶ Dealing with masculine and feminine words
- ▶ Discovering the use of pronouns
- ▶ Using the right “you”
- ▶ Exploring regular and irregular verbs
- ▶ Uncovering the present tense

This chapter takes a look at some basic Italian grammar and leads you through the building blocks of sentences. Consider these blocks as challenging scaffolding that helps you to construct your sentences, piece by piece. In this chapter, I walk you through gender and number, as well as how to conjugate enough verbs to get you immediately on the road to communicating in Italian.

Setting Up Simple Sentences

Becoming a fluent speaker of a foreign language takes a lot of work. Simply communicating or making yourself understood in another language is much easier. Even if you only know a few words, you can usually communicate successfully in common situations such as at a restaurant or a hotel.

Forming simple sentences is, well, simple. The basic sentence structure of Italian is subject-verb-object — the same as in English. Nouns in Italian are gender specific. In the following examples, you can see how this structure works:

- ✓ **Carla parla inglese.** (*kahr-lah pahr-lah een-gleh-zeh*) (*Carla speaks English.*)
- ✓ **Pietro ha una macchina.** (*pee-eh-troh ah ooh-nah mahk-kee-nah*) (*Pietro has a car.*)
- ✓ **L’Italia è un bel paese.** (*lee-tahl-ee-ah eh oohn behl pah-eh-zeh*) (*Italy is a beautiful country.*)

Coping with Gendered Words (Articles, Nouns, and Adjectives)

Gender drives the construction of definite and indefinite articles, nouns, and adjectives. It is essential to learn the gender of nouns as soon as you encounter them, because that will determine what article and adjective you're going to use with them — these are all interconnected. Luckily most of this grammar follows some very cool schemata which you can plug in anywhere once you have it down. The more you commit these to memory, the easier it will be to effectively create sentences.

Nouns and gender

All nouns have a specific gender (masculine and feminine) and number (singular and plural). You need to know what those are in order to create (and understand) sentences, have verb agreement, and add on articles and adjectives. The good news is that nouns follow a predictable pattern. The following shows you how to form the singular and plural of masculine and feminine nouns. See if you can infer the rules just by looking at the chart.

Feminine nouns singular	a (ah)	una casa (ooh-nah kah-zah) (<i>one house</i>)
Feminine nouns plural	e (eh)	due case (dooh-eh kah-zeh) (<i>two houses</i>)
Masculine nouns singular	o (oh)	un libro (oohn lee-broh) (<i>one book</i>)
Masculine nouns plural	i (ee)	due libri (dooh-eh lee-bree) (<i>two books</i>)
Masculine/feminine nouns singular	e (eh)	un esame (m) (oohn eh-zah-meh) <i>(one exam)</i>
Masculine/feminine nouns plural	i (ee)	due esami (dooh-eh eh-za-mee) (<i>two exams</i>)/una lezione (f.) (ooh-nah lets-yoh-neh) <i>due lezioni</i> (dooh-eh lets-yoh-nee)

So the rules are:

- ✓ Feminine nouns usually end in **a** in the singular and **e** in the plural.
- ✓ Masculine nouns usually end in **o** in the singular and **i** in the plural.
- ✓ There are masculine and feminine nouns that end in **e** in the singular and in **i** in the plural. You need to memorize their gender the first time you encounter them.



Here's a tip. Anything ending in **-ione** (like **nazione** [nahts-yoh-neh]) is feminine.

That was pretty painless, wasn't it? Are you ready for some exceptions in the way of invariable nouns? These nouns only have one form: that is, they are the same in both the singular and plural forms. See if you can guess the rules for these as you go through the following bullets.

✓ un caffè (m) (oohn kahf-feh) <i>one coffee,</i>	due caffè (dooh-eh kahf-feh) <i>two coffees</i>
✓ un bar (m) (oohn bahr) <i>one bar,</i>	due bar (dooh-eh bahr) <i>two bars</i>
✓ una bici (f) (ooh-nah bee-chee) <i>one bike,</i>	due bici (dooh-eh bee-chee) <i>two bikes</i>
✓ uno zoo (m) (ooh-noh zoh) <i>one zoo,</i>	due zoo (dooh-eh zoh) <i>two zoos</i>

The rules for the three main types of invariable nouns follow:

1. Nouns that end in an accented final vowel, such as **caffè** and **città** (*cheet-tah*) (*city*), are invariable.
2. Nouns that end in a consonant (these are rare!), such as **bar** and **film** (*feel-m*) (*film, movie*) are invariable.
3. Nouns that are abbreviations, such as **zoo**, **bici**, **radio** (*rah-dee-oh*) and **cinema** (*chee-neh-mah*) (*cinema, movie-house*) are invariable.

The indefinite articles

Did you happen to notice the indefinite articles for “one” or “a/an” that precede all of the previously mentioned nouns? They are always singular. Also, Italian indefinite articles agree in gender. And the one you choose also has to take into account the first letter of the noun that it precedes. Table 2-1 shows you the indefinite articles plus some examples.

Table 2-1 Indefinite articles (Gli articoli indeterminativi)
(lyee ahr-tee-koh-lee een-deh-tehr-meen-ah-tee-vee)

<i>Feminine Femminili (fehm-meen-ee-lee)</i>	<i>Masculine Maschili (mahs-kee-lee)</i>
una ragazza (ooh-nah rah-gahts-tsah) <i>(a girl)</i>	un ragazzo (oohn rah-gahts-tsoh) <i>(a boy)</i>
un'amica (oohn-ah-mee-kah) (<i>a (girl) friend</i>)	un amico (oohn ah-mee-koh) (<i>a (boy) friend</i>)
una zia (ooh-nah dzee-ah) (<i>an aunt</i>)	uno zio (ooh-noh dzee-oh) (<i>an uncle</i>)
una studentessa (ooh-nah stooh-dehn-tehs-sah) (<i>a (female) student</i>)	uno studente (ooh-noh stooh-dehn-teh) (<i>a (male) student</i>)

Did you make a special note of the letters that the nouns begin with? So the rules for indefinite articles go something like this:

- una** before all feminine nouns beginning with a consonant
- un'** before all feminine nouns beginning with a vowel
- un** before all masculine nouns beginning with vowels and consonants
- uno** before all masculine nouns beginning with the **s** **impura** (s+ consonant), **z, gn, ps, st: zio** (*dzee-oh*) (*uncle*); **gnomo** (*nyoh-moh*) (*gnome*); **psicologo** (*psee-kohl-oh-goh*); **studente** (*stooh-dehn-teh*) (*student*)

Definite articles

Of course, you don't go around talking about singular things all the time. Italian is one of those languages that require a definite article before the noun in most cases. For example, if you want to say "Sicily is interesting," you need to precede Sicily with an article, such as "**La Sicilia è interessante**" (lah see-chee-lee-ah eh een-tehr-ehs-sahn-teh). The same goes for the following noun: "Love is blind" (**L'amore è cieco**) (lah-moh-reh eh cheh-koh).

Table 2-2 shows a list of articles that you should try to commit to memory. Italian definite articles agree in number and gender with the nouns they precede. Just like with the indefinite articles, the letter that heads the noun also determines what article to use.

Table 2-2 Definite Articles (Articoli determinativi)
(ahr-tee-koh-lee deh-tehr-mee-nah-tee-vee)

<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Masculine "the"</i>		
Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
I' (/)		Io (/oh)	
la (/ah)	le (/eh)	l'	gli (/yee)
		il (/i)	i (ee)

Here are some examples of definite articles. Can you identify a pattern?

- la casa/le case** (lah *kah-zah*/leh *kah-zeh*) (*house, houses*)
- l'amica/le amiche** (lah-*mee-kah*, leh *ah-mee-keh*) (*friend, friends*)
- il libro/i libri** (il *lee-broh*, ee *lee-bree*) (*book, books*)
- lo zio/gli zii,** (loh *dzee-oh*, lyee *zee*) (*uncle, uncles*) **lo studente, gli studenti** (loh *stooh-dehn-teh*, lyee *stooh-dehn-tee*) (*student, students*)

Here are two examples: Note how the article does not appear in the translation, but is necessary in Italian:

Gli amici vengono a cena (lyee ah-mee-chee *vehn-goh-noh* ah *cheh-nah*)
(Friends are coming for dinner.)

Mi piacciono le lasagne! (mee *pyahch-choh-noh* leh *lah-zah-nyeh*)
(I like lasagna.)

Adjectives

The gender feature of nouns extends to other grammatical categories, including pronouns and adjectives. First, I take a look at the adjectives.

An adjective is a word that describes a noun — whether a person, a thing, or whatever — with a quality or characteristic. (You can read more about these in Chapters 3, 8 and 16.) There are two types of adjectives in Italian: The first type has four endings, and the second type has two.

The first type matches in both number and gender with the noun it is modifying, and, therefore, ends in **o**, **a**, **i**, and **e**, as follows with the adjective **italiano** (ee-tahl-ee-ah-noh) (*Italian*):

- ✓ **il ragazzo italiano** (il rah-gahts-tsoh ee-tah-lee-ah-noh) (*the Italian boy*)
- ✓ **i ragazzi italiani** (ee rah-gahts-tsee ee-tah-lee-ah-nee) (*the Italian boys*)
- ✓ **la ragazza italiana** (lah rah-gahts-tsah ee-tah-lee-ah-nah) (*the Italian girl*)
- ✓ **le ragazze italiane** (leh rah-gahts-tseh ee-tah-lee-ah-neh) (*the Italian girls*)

Other typical adjectives with the four endings include **spagnolo** (spahn-yoh-loh) and **giallo** (jahl-loh) (*yellow*).

The second type only agrees in number (and not gender), and ends in **e** in the singular and **i** in the plural. The adjective **grande** (graahn-deh) (*big*) is one of those adjectives. These adjectives are valid for both feminine and masculine nouns. In the plural of both genders, change the **-e** to an **-i** — for example, **grandi** (graahn-dee) (*big*). Other adjectives that only agree in number include **francese** (frahn-cheh-zeh) (*French*) and **verde** (vehr-deh) (*green*).

- ✓ **l'esame facile** (leh-zah-meh fah-chee-leh) (*the easy exam*)
- ✓ **gli esami facili** (lyee eh-zah-mee fah-chee-lee) (*the easy exams*)
- ✓ **la prova facile** (lah proh-vah fah-chee-leh) (*the easy test*)
- ✓ **le prove facili** (leh proh-veh fah-chee-lee) (*the easy tests*)

In Italian, the position of the adjective is not as rigid as it is in English. In most cases, the adjective follows the noun. Nevertheless, there are some

adjectives which can stand before the noun, such as **bello** (*beh-l-loh*) (*beautiful*), **buono** (*bwoh-noh*) (*good*), and **cattivo** (*kaht-tee-voh*) (*bad*).

Words to Know

<i>esame</i> (m)	<i>eh-zah-meh</i>	exam
<i>prova</i> (f)	<i>proh-vah</i>	test
<i>ragazzo/a</i> (m/f)	<i>rah-gats-tsoh</i>	boy
<i>studente</i> (m)	<i>stooh-dehn-teh</i>	student (male)
<i>studentessa</i> (f)	<i>stooh-dehn-tehs-sah</i>	student (female)
<i>casa</i> (f)	<i>kah-zah</i>	house
<i>libro</i> (m)	<i>lee-broh</i>	book
<i>amica</i> (f/sing.)	<i>ah-mee-kah</i>	girl-friend
<i>amiche</i> (f/pl.)	<i>ah-mee-keh</i>	girl-friends
<i>amico</i> (m/sing)	<i>ah-mee-koh</i>	friend (male)
<i>amici</i> (m/pl)	<i>ah-mee-chee</i>	male friends or mixed gender friends.
<i>caffè</i> (m)	<i>kahf-feh</i>	coffee
<i>bici</i> (f)	<i>bee-chee</i>	bike

Talking about Pronouns

A pronoun replaces, as the word itself says, a noun. When you talk about Jim, for example, you can replace his name with **he**. You often use pronouns to avoid repetition.

Personal pronouns

Several types of personal pronouns exist. Presently, the most important ones for you are the subject pronouns, which refer to **I, you, he, she, it, we, or they**. Every verb form refers to one of these pronouns, as the following section points out. Table 2-3 lists the subject pronouns.

Table 2-3

Subject Pronouns

Pronoun	Pronunciation	Translation
io	ee-oh	<i>I</i>
tu	tooh	<i>you</i>
lui	loooh-ee	<i>he</i>
lei	ley	<i>she</i>
noi	noi	<i>we</i>
voi	voi	<i>you</i>
loro	loh-roh	<i>they</i>

Italians often drop subject pronouns because the verb ending shows what the subject is. Use a personal pronoun only for contrast, for emphasis, or when the pronoun stands alone.

- ✓ Contrast: **Tu tifi per il Milan, ma io per la Juventus.** (tooh tee-fee pehr il mee-lahn mah ee-oh pehr lah yooh-vehn-toohs) (*You're a fan of Milan, but I'm a fan of Juventus.*)
- ✓ Emphasis: **Vieni anche tu alla festa?** (vyeh-nee ahn-keh tooh ahl-lah fehs-tah) (*Are you coming to the party, too?*)
- ✓ Isolated position: **“Chi è?” “Sono io.”** (kee eh soh-noh ee-oh) (*“Who's there?” “It's me.”*)

Saying “you”: Formal and informal

You probably already know that many foreign languages contain both formal and informal ways of addressing people. If you didn't know before, now you do! In Italian, you need to respect this important characteristic. Use the informal pronoun **tu** (tooh) (*you*) with good friends, young people, children, and your family members. When, however, you talk to a person you don't know well (a superior, shopkeeper, waiter, teacher, professor, and so on), you should address him or her formally — that is, with **lei** (ley) (*you*). When you become more familiar with someone, you may change from formal to informal. According to custom, the elder person initiates the use of **tu**.



Tu requires the verb form of the second person singular — for example, **tu sei** (tooh sey) (*you are*). **Lei** calls for **lei è** (ley eh) (*you are [formal singular]*).

The following examples show the forms of you:

- ✓ Informal singular: **Ciao, come stai?** (chou koh-meh stahy?) (*Hi, how are you?*)
- ✓ Formal singular: **Buongiorno, come sta?** (bwohn-johr-noh koh-meh stah) (*Good morning, how are you?*)
- ✓ Informal plural: **Ciao, come state?** (chou koh-meh stah-teh) (*Hi, how are you?* (Speaking here to a group of people.)

Verbs

There seems to be an infinite number of verbs in Italian. These truly are the glue to bind the different parts of speech together. Some people try to get by using only infinitives (the verbs before you conjugate them), but I want you to make sense and feel confident when speaking, so learn the regular and irregular verbs patterns in this chapter (and also Appendix A), and you'll be on your way to talking in the present, past, and future tenses. Getting a good handle on them gives you a solid basis from which to build your sentences, communicate, and be understood!

Introducing regular and irregular verbs

What's the difference between regular and irregular verbs? Regular verbs follow a certain pattern in their conjugation: They behave the same way as other verbs in the same category. Therefore, you can predict a regular verb's form in any part of any tense. On the other hand, you cannot predict irregular verbs in this way — they behave a bit like individualists.

Regular verbs

You can divide Italian verbs into three categories, according to their ending in the infinitive form. They are, -are, as in **parlare** (pahr-lah-reh) (*to speak*); -ere, as in **vivere** (vee-veh-reh) (*to live*); and -ire, as in **partire** (pahr-tee-reh) (*to leave*). Verbs in these categories can be regular as well as irregular. Notice the subject pronouns that go with the verbs: We place them here to remind you which verb form you need.

These translate in the present tense as, for example: I speak, I do speak, I am speaking, I'm going to speak (if it's not too much in the future) — it depends

on the context. I translate the first person of all of the verbs that follow: the other persons follow suit.

The following shows you the conjugation of three regular verbs:

Conjugation	Pronunciation	Translation
parlare	pahr-lah-reh	<i>to speak</i>
io parlo	ee-oh pahr-loh	<i>I speak, I do speak, I'm speaking, I'm going to speak</i>
tu parli	tooh pahr-lee	
lui/lei parla	loooh-ee/ley pahr-lah	
noi parliamo	noi pahr-lyah-moh	
voi parlate	voi pahr-lah-teh	
loro parlano	loh-roh pahr-lah-noh	
vivere	vee-veh-reh	<i>to live</i>
io vivo	ee-oh vee-voh	<i>I live, I do live, I'm living</i>
tu vivi	tooh vee-vee	
lui/lei vive	loooh-ee/ley vee-veh	
noi viviamo	noi vee-vyah-moh	
voi vivete	voi vee-veh-teh	
loro vivono	loh-roh vee-voh-noh	
partire	pahr-tee-reh	<i>to leave, to depart</i>
io parto	ee-oh pahr-toh	<i>I leave, I do leave, I am leaving</i>
tu parti	tooh pahr-tee	
lui/lei parte	loooh-ee/ley pahr-teh	
noi partiamo	noi pahr-tyah-moh	
voi partite	voi pahr-tee-teh	
loro partono	loh-roh pahr-toh-noh	

You can apply these patterns to every regular verb, such as **mangiare** (mahn-jah-reh) (*to eat*), **giocare** (joh-kah-reh) (*to play*), **ripetere** (ree-peh-teh-reh) (*to repeat*), **prendere** (prehn-deh-reh) (*to have or take as in a restaurant*) and **aprire** (ah-pree-reh) (*to open*). Some regular verbs behave a bit differently, but this doesn't render them irregular. In some cases — for example, some -ire verbs — you insert the letters -isc- between the root and the ending (in all persons except the **noi** and **voi**), as in this example of **capire** (kah-pee-reh) (*to understand*):

Conjugation	Pronunciation	Translation
io capisco	ee-oh kah-pees-koh	<i>I understand, I do understand, I am understanding</i>
tu capisci	tooh kah-pee-shee	
lui/lei capisce	loo-h-ee/ley kah-pee-shee	
noi capiamo	noi kah-pyah-moh	
voi capitè	voi kah-pee-teh	
loro capiscono	loh-roh kah-pees-koh-noh	

Other verbs that follow this pattern are **finire** (fee-nee-reh) (*to finish, end*) and **preferire** (preh-feh-ree-reh) (*to prefer*). For more verbs that follow this **isc** pattern, check out Appendix A, and for lots more on Italian verbs in general, pick up a copy of my *Italian Verbs For Dummies* (John Wiley & Sons, Inc.).

Irregular verbs

Two important verbs, which you often use as auxiliary verbs, are irregular — **avere** (ah-veh-reh) (*to have*) and **essere** (ehs-seh-reh) (*to be*).

Conjugation	Pronunciation	Translation
avere	ah-veh-reh	<i>to have</i>
io ho	ee-oh oh	<i>I have, I do have</i>
tu hai	tooh ahy	
lui/lei ha	loo-h-ee/ley ah	
noi abbiamo	noi ahb-byah-moh	
voi avete	voi ah-veh-teh	
loro hanno	loh-roh ahn-noh	
essere	ehs-seh-reh	<i>to be</i>
io sono	ee-oh soh-noh	<i>I am</i>
tu sei	tooh sey	
lui/lei è	loo-h-ee/ley eh	
noi siamo	noi see-ah-moh	
voi siete	voi see-eh-teh	
loro sono	loh-roh soh-noh	

Talkin' the Talk



Cindy is visiting Florence for the first time. She's gotten lost, and so she asks a traffic cop, a vigile urbano (vee-jee-leh oohr-bah-noh), how to find her hotel.

Cindy: **Scusi, ho una domanda.**
skooh-zee oh ooh-nah doh-mahn-dah
Excuse me, I have a question.

Parla inglese?
pahr-lah een-gleh-zeh
Do you speak English?

Vigile: **No ma lei parla italiano!**
noh mah ley pahr-lah ee-tahl-ee-ah-noh
No, but you speak Italian!

Cindy: **Parlo poco ma capisco di più.**
pahr-loh poh-koh mah kah-pees-koh dee pyooh
I speak a little but I understand more.

Mi sono persa.
mee soh-noh pehr-sah
I'm lost.

Vigile: **Dove deve andare?**
doh-veh deh-veh ahn-dah-reh
Where do you need to go?

Cindy: **Non posso trovare il mio albergo.**
nohn pohs-soh troh-vah-reh il mee-oh ahl-behr-goh
I can't find my hotel.

Vigile: **Ha una piantina di Firenze?**
ah ooh-nah pyahn-tee-nah dee fee-rehn-zeh
Do you have a map of Florence?

Cindy: **Si eccola qua.**
see ehk-koh-lah kwah
Yes, here it is.



Ecco! (*ehk-koh*) Here you go! Here it is! is used only when pointing something out. You can attach a direct object pronoun to **ecco** if you like: “**Dov’è la mia borsa?**” (*doh-veh lah mee-ah bohr-sah ehk-koh-lah*) (*Where’s my bag? Here it is!*) “**Gigio, dove sei?**” (“**Eccomi!**” (*jee-joh doh-veh sey ehk-koh-mee*) (“*Giorgio, where are you?*” “*Here I am!*”)).

You frequently hear this expression in a hotel: **Ecco la sua chiave** (*ehk-koh lah sooh-ah kyah-veh*) (*Here is your key*), and in a bar: **Ecco i due cappuccini** (*ehk-koh ee dooh-eh kahp-pooh-chee-nee*) (*Here are the two cappuccinos!*)

Idiomatic uses of avere

Even though the verb **avere** means *to have*, it is frequently used in circumstances when we would use the verb *to be* in English (such as to be hungry, to be thirsty, to be hot, to be cold, to be a certain age). In Italian, these terms literally mean to have hunger, to have thirst, to have heat, to have years.

Table 2-4 lists some common idiomatic expressions with **avere**.

Table 2-4

Idiomatic Uses of Avere

Expression	Pronunciation	Translation
avere fame	ah-veh-reh fah-meh	<i>to be hungry</i>
avere sete	ah-veh-reh seh-teh	<i>to be thirsty</i>
avere caldo	ah-veh-reh kahl-doh	<i>to be hot</i>
avere freddo	ah-veh-reh frehd-doh	<i>to be cold</i>
avere sonno	ah-veh-reh sohn-noh	<i>to be sleepy</i>
avere voglia di	ah-veh-reh vohl-yah dee	<i>to feel like, have a craving for</i>
avere bisogno di	ah-veh-reh bee-zoh-nyoh dee	<i>to need</i>
avere torto	ah-veh-reh tohr-toh	<i>to be wrong</i>
avere ragione	ah-veh-reh rah-joh-neh	<i>to be right</i>
avere anni	ah-veh-reh ahn-nee	<i>to be a certain age</i>

Other common irregular verbs are **andare** (*ahn-dah-reh*) (*to go*), **venire** (*veh-nee-reh*) (*to come*), **dire** (*dee-reh*) (*to say or tell*), **fare** (*fah-reh*) (*to do or make*), **dare** (*dah-reh*) (*to give*), and **uscire** (*oooh-shee-reh*) (*to go out*):

Conjugation	Pronunciation	Translation
andare	ahn-dah-reh	<i>to go</i>
io vado	ee-oh vah-doh	<i>I go, I do go, I'm, going</i>
tu vai	tooh vahy	
lui/lei va	looh-ee/ley vah	
noi andiamo	noi ahn-dyah-moh	
voi andate	voi ahn-dah-teh	
loro vanno	loh-roh vahn-noh	
venire	veh-nee-reh	<i>to come</i>
io vengo	ee-oh vohn-goh	<i>I come, to do come, I'm coming</i>
tu vieni	tooh vyeh-nee	
lui/lei viene	looh-ee/ley vyeh-neh	
noi veniamo	noi veh-nyah-moh	
voi venite	voi veh-nee-teh	
loro vengono	loh-roh vohn-goh-noh	
dire	dee-reh	<i>to say or tell</i>
io dico	ee-oh dee-koh	<i>I say, I do say, I'm saying</i>
tu dici	tooh dee-chee	
lui/lei dice	looh-ee/ley dee-cheh	
noi diciamo	noi dee-chah-moh	
voi dite	voi dee-teh	
loro dicono	loh-roh dee-koh-noh	
fare	fah-reh	<i>to do or make</i>
io faccio	ee-oh fahch-choh	
tu fai	tooh fahy	
lui/lei fa	looh-ee/ley fah	
noi facciamo	noi fahch-chah-moh	
voi fate	voi fah-teh	
loro fanno	loh-roh fahn-noh	

Like the verb **avere**, Table 2-5 shows that the verb **fare** (to do or to make) has some interesting idiomatic uses that don't translate word for word.

Table 2-5

Idiomatic Uses of Fare

<i>Expression</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>	<i>Translation</i>
fare domanda	<i>fah-reh doh-mahn-dah</i>	<i>to apply for a job or to a university</i>
fare una domanda	<i>fah-reh ooh-nah doh-mahn-dah</i>	<i>to ask a question</i>
fare una passeggiata	<i>fah-reh ooh-nah pahs-sehj-jah-tah</i>	<i>to take a walk</i>
fare una pausa	<i>fah-reh ooh-nah pou-zah</i>	<i>to take a break</i>
fa bel/cattivo tempo	<i>fah behl kaht-tee-voh tehm-poh</i>	<i>to be nice/ugly out (weather)</i>
fa caldo/freddo	<i>fah kahl-doh frehd-doh</i>	<i>to be hot or cold out</i>
fare un giro	<i>fah-reh oohn jee-roh</i>	<i>to take a ride</i>
fare fotografie	<i>fah-reh foh-toh-grah-fee-eh</i>	<i>to take pictures</i>

Then there are other very common, very irregular verbs, which are best to commit to memory.

Conjugation**Pronunciation****Translation**

dare	<i>dah-reh</i>	<i>to give</i>
io do	<i>doh</i>	<i>I give, I do give, I'm giving</i>
tu dai	<i>dahy</i>	
lui/lei dà	<i>looh-ee/ley dah</i>	
noi diamo	<i>noi dee-ah-moh</i>	
voi date	<i>voi dah-teh</i>	
loro danno	<i>loh-roh dahn-noh</i>	

So, too, does the verb **dare** (*to give*) have some idiomatic uses, and so it also means to take when you're taking an exam: **dare un esame** (*dah-reh oohn eh-zah-meh*)

<i>Conjugation</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>	<i>Translation</i>
uscire	<i>ooh-shee-reh</i>	<i>to go out, to exit, to leave the house</i>
io esco	<i>ee-oh ehs-koh</i>	
tu esci	<i>tooh ehsh-ee</i>	
lui/lei esce	<i>loooh-ee/ley ehsh-eh</i>	
noi usciamo	<i>noi ooh-shah-moh</i>	
voi uscite	<i>voi ooh-shee-teh</i>	
loro escono	<i>loh-roh ehs-koh-noh</i>	

Talkin' the Talk



Fabio has just called Giacomo to chat and catch up on things.

Fabio: **Ciao Giacomo, sono Fabio.**
chou jah-koh-moh soh-noh fah-byoh
 Hi Giacomo, it's Fabio.

Giacomo: **Uè Fabio, come va?**
ooh-eh fah-byoh koh-meh vah
 Hey, Fabio, how's it going?

Fabio: **Benone! Studio molto in questi giorni.**
*beh-noh-neh stoooh-dee-oh mohl-toh in kwehs-tee
 johr-nee*
 Great! I'm studying a lot these days.

Giacomo: **Dai l'esame di filosofia lunedì?**
*dahy leh-zah-meh dee fee-loh-soh-fee-ah
 looh-neh-dee*
 Are you taking the philosophy exam on Monday?

Fabio: **Si, e ho ancora 120 pagine da leggere.**
*see eh oh ahn-koh-rah chehn-toh-vehn-tee pah-gee-
 neh dah lehj-jeh-reh*
 Yes, and I still have to read 120 pages.

Ma ho bisogno di fare una pausa, di uscire.
mah oh bee-zoh-nyoh dee fah-reh ooh-nah pou-zah
dee ooh-shee-reh
But I need to take a break, to go out.

Cosa fai stasera?
koh-zah fahy stah-seh-rah
What are you doing tonight?

Giacomo: **Esco con Anna.**
ehs-koh kohn ahn-nah
I'm going out with Anna.

Fabio: **Dove andate?**
doh-veh ahn-dah-teh
Where are you going?

Giacomo: **Se fa bello, andiamo a mangiare in collina.**
seh fah behl-loh ahn-dyah-moh ah mahn-jah-reh
in kohl-ee-nah
If it's nice out, we're going to go eat in the country.
(Lit: the hills)

Perchè non venite anche tu e Daniela?
pehr-keh nohn veh-nee-teh tooh eh dahn-yeh-lah
Why don't you and Daniela come?

Fabio: **Buon'idea!**
bwohn-ee-dey-ah
Good idea!

Vedo cosa dice Daniela e ti richiamo fra mezz-ora.
veh-doh koh-zah dee-cheh dahn-yeh-lah eh tee ree-kyah-moh frah medz-dzoh-rah
I'll see what Daniela says and call you back in a half hour.

Giacomo: **D'accordo – ciao a dopo!**
dahk-koahr-doh chou ah doh-poh
Okay, talk to you later!

Fabio: **Ciao!**
chou
Bye!

Having to, wanting to, being able to

Three modal verbs — **dovere** (doh-veh-reh) (*to have to, must, to need to, ought to*), **volere** (voh-leh-reh) (*to want*), **potere** (poh-teh-reh) (*to be able to, can*) — are kind of like helping verbs. You conjugate them and then the verb that follows is the infinitive. For example:

Devo fare la spesa. (dey-voh fah-reh lah speh-zah) *I need to go (food) shopping.*

Voglio dormire! (vohl-yoh dohr-mee-reh) *I want to sleep!*

Posso andare a bere? (pohs-soh ahn-dah-reh ah beh-reh) *May I go get a drink?*

Conjugation	Pronunciation	Translation
dovere	doh-veh-reh	<i>to have to, must, ought to, need to</i>
io devo	io dey-voh	<i>I must, I should, I ought to, I need to</i>
tu devi	tooh dey-vee	
lui/lei deve	looh-ee/ley dey-veh	
noi dobbiamo	noi dohb-byah-moh	
voi dovete	voi doh-veh-teh	
loro devono	loh-roh deh-voh-noh	
volere	voh-leh-reh	<i>to want</i>
io voglio	io vohl-yoh	
tu vuoi	tooh vwoi	
lui/lei vuole	looh-ee/ley vwoh-leh	
noi vogliamo	noi vohl-yah-moh	
voi volete	voi voh-leh-teh	
loro vogliono	loh-roh vohl-yoh-noh	
potere	poh-teh-reh	<i>to be able to, can, may</i>
io posso	ee-oh pohs-soh	
tu puoi	tooh pwói	
lui/lei può	looh-ee/ley pwoh	
noi possiamo	noi pohs-syah-moh	
voi potete	voi poh-teh-teh	
loro possono	loh-roh pohs-soh-noh	

Presenting the Simple Tenses: Past, Present, and Future

Clearly, people don't use just one tense. Sometimes you need to report what you did yesterday or outline what you're going to do tomorrow. These three tenses (past, present, and future) are not high grammar — just basic stuff.

- ✓ **Ieri ho mangiato un gelato.** (yeh-ree oh mahn-jah-toh oohn jeh-lah-toh)
(Yesterday I ate an ice-cream.)
- ✓ **Mangio un gelato.** (mahn-joh oohn jeh-lah-toh) (I am eating/eat an ice cream.)
- ✓ **Domani mangerò un gelato.** (doh-mah-nee mahn-jeh-roh oohn jeh-lah-toh)
(Tomorrow I'm going to eat an ice cream.)

You find more on these tenses in Chapter 12 (future) and Chapter 10 (present perfect).

Talkin' the Talk

Emilia and Cristina are two middle-school-aged girls who are walking home from the first day at their new school.

Cristina: **Ho una nuova bici rossa!**
 oh ooh-nah nwoh-vah bee-chee rohs-sah
 I have a new red bike!

Emilia: **La mia è sempre quella vecchia.**
 lah mee-ah eh sehm-preh qwehl-lah vehk-kyah
 I still have my old one.

Cristina: **Quella azzurra? È carina.**
 kwehl-lah adz-dzooh-rah eh kah-ree-nah
 The blue one? It's nice.

Mi piacciono i miei nuovi insenganti.
mee pyach-choh-noh ee myey nwoh-vee
in-sehn-yahn-tee
I like my new teachers.

Emilia: **Quanti anni ha la tua nuova insegnante di matematica?**
 qwahn-tee ahn-nee ah lah tooh-ah nwuoh-vah
 in-seh-nyahn-teh dee mah-teh-mah-tee-kah
 How old is your new math teacher?

Cristina: **Non lo so. Forse quaranta.**
nohn loh soh *fahr-seh qwah-rah-n-tah*
I don't know. Maybe 40.

È brava!
eh *brah-vah*
She's good!

Emilia: **Anch'io sono contenta della nuova scuola.**
ahn-kee-oh *soh-noh kohn-tehn-tah dehl-lah*
nwoh-vah skwoh-lah
I'm happy, too, with the new school.

Vuoi fare un giro in centro?
vwoi *fah-reh oohn gee-roh in chehn-troh*
Do you want to take a ride down-town?

Cristina: **Si ma dobbiamo metterci il casco.**
see mah dohb-*byah-moh meht-tehr-chee il kahs-koh*
Yes, but we have to wear our helmets.

Emilia: **Va bene.**
vah *beh-neh*
Okay.

Ce l'ho qua.
cheh loh kwah
I have it here.

Cristina: **Dove andiamo?**
doh-veh ahn-dyah-moh
Where are we going?

Emilia: **Ho fame! Pizza o gelato?**
oh *fah-meh peets-tsah oh geh-lah-toh*
I'm hungry! Pizza or ice cream?

Cristina: **Gelato, naturalmente!**
geh-*lah-toh nah-tooh-rahl-mehn-teh*
Ice cream, of course!

Emilia: **Andiamo!**
ahn-*dyah-moh*
Let's go!

Words to Know

albergo	ahl-behr-goh	hotel
piantina	pyahn-tee-nah	map
mi sono persa	mee soh-noh pehr-sah	I'm lost
casco	kahs-koh	helmet
gelato	jeh-lah-toh	ice-cream
insegnante	in-seh-nyahn-teh	teacher
va bene	vah beh-neh	okay
d'accordo	dahk-kohr-doh	okay, agreed
ciao	chou	hi/bye
mi piace	mee pyah-cheh	I like (something singular)
mi piacciono	mee pyahch-choh-noh	I like (something plural)
anch'io	ahn-kee-oh	I also, me too
pausa	pou-za	break
domanda	doh-mahn-dah	question
stasera	stah-seh-rah	tonight
dove	doh-veh	where
quanti anni ha	kwahn-tee ahn-nee ah	how old is . . . ?



Fun and Games

The following contains several Italian words that I introduced in this chapter. Just find and circle the words from the list! See Appendix D for the answer key.

A	R	Q	D	R	P	U	F	C	M	N	D
V	O	L	E	R	E	A	A	T	G	H	O
E	S	A	D	H	C	O	M	L	Z	E	V
R	S	D	B	I	F	E	E	S	A	M	E
E	O	I	L	P	A	R	T	I	R	E	R
T	B	E	W	E	R	N	R	D	I	R	E
O	D	A	L	B	E	R	G	O	E	S	T
Z	S	M	Q	C	F	V	G	V	S	L	R
I	C	I	B	A	X	E	T	E	S	U	M
O	A	C	S	R	Z	K	R	D	E	B	O
T	P	A	U	S	A	E	U	P	R	A	D
U	I	T	A	L	I	A	N	O	E	J	L
F	R	A	G	A	Z	Z	A	N	T	K	A
Y	E	N	D	Q	U	A	L	R	I	L	C

albergo	facile
amica	fame
avere	fare
bici	italiano
caldo	partire
capire	pausa
dire	ragazza
dove	rosso
dovere	sete
esame	volere
essere	zio

Chapter 3

Buongiorno! Salutations!

In This Chapter

- ▶ Greetings and good-byes
 - ▶ Deciding when to be formal or friendly
 - ▶ Responding to a greeting
 - ▶ Asking whether someone speaks English
 - ▶ Describing places, nationalities, and where you come from
 - ▶ Introducing yourself and others
-

Buongiorno! (bwohn-johr-noh) (*Hello!*)

Have you ever counted the number of times you say hello in a single day? You probably say it more often than you realize. When you interact with people, you usually begin with a greeting — and that greeting can have an impact on the first impression you give. This chapter explains how to say hello and good-bye as well as how to supplement a greeting with some basic small talk.

Looking at Common Greetings and Good-byes

Italians like to have social contact and meet new people. Generally, they're easygoing and receptive to people trying to speak their language. At the same time, they tend to be very respectful and polite.

To give you a good start in greeting people in Italian, we want to familiarize you with the most common greetings and good-byes, followed by examples.

✓ Ciao	chou	<i>Hello and good-bye: informal</i>
Ciao Claudio	chouh <i>klou-dee-oh</i>	<i>Hi, Claudio! Bye, Claudio!</i>
✓ Salve	<i>sahl-veh</i>	<i>Hello and good-bye: neutral, but more formal than Ciao!</i>
Salve ragazzi!	<i>sahl-veh rah-gaht-tsee</i>	<i>Hi, folks!, or Hey, guys!</i>
Salve is a relic from Latin. In Caesar's time; the Romans used it a lot.		
✓ Buongiorno	<i>bwohn johr-noh</i>	<i>Good morning (Literally: Good day) formal,</i>
Buongiorno Signora Bruni!	<i>bwohn johr-noh</i> <i>see-nyoh-rah brooh-nee</i>	<i>Good morning, Mrs. Bruni!</i>
Buongiorno is the most formal greeting. Whenever you're in doubt, use this word (if it is before 2:00 p.m.). You frequently hear it when you leave an Italian shop.		
✓ Buonasera	<i>bwoh-nah-seh-rah</i>	<i>Good afternoon; good evening: formal</i>
Buonasera signor Rossi!	<i>bwoh-nah-seh-rah</i> <i>see-nyohr rohs-see</i>	<i>Good afternoon/evening Mr. Rossi!</i>
You use buonasera after 2 p.m. to say both hello and good-bye. Just mind the time of day!		
✓ Buonanotte	<i>bwoh-nah-noht-teh</i>	<i>Good-night! (Use only when parting for the night and going to bed)</i>
Buonanotte ragazzi!	<i>bwoh-nah-noht-teh</i> <i>rah-gaht-tsee</i>	<i>Good night, guys!</i>
✓ Buona giornata!	<i>bwoh-nah johr-nah-tah</i>	<i>Have a good day!</i>
You often use this phrase when you're leaving somebody or saying goodbye on the phone.		
✓ Buona serata!	<i>bwoh-nah seh-rah-tah</i>	<i>Have a good evening!</i>
Like buona giornata , you use buona serata when you're leaving someone or saying good-bye on the phone, if that person is your friend. The difference is that you use buona serata , according to Italian custom, after 2 p.m.		
✓ Arrivederci	<i>ahr-ree-veh-dehr-chee</i>	<i>Good bye.</i>
Arrivederci signora Eva!	<i>ahr-ree-veh-dehr-chee</i> <i>see-nyoh-rah eh-vah</i>	<i>Good-bye, Mrs. Eva!</i>

Deciding between formal or friendly



In Chapter 2 you saw some of the differences between using the **tu**, **voi**, **Lei**, and **Loro** pronouns and verbs when you want to say “you.”

An important feature of Italian culture is that there are two different ways of addressing people.

- ✓ You generally use the formal form of address — **Lei** (ley) (*you*: formal singular) — with adults you don’t know: businesspeople (waiters, shopkeepers), officials, and persons of higher rank, such as supervisors, teachers, professors, older people, and so on. (With children or among young people you use the informal **tu**.)
- ✓ When you get to know someone better, depending on your relationship, you may switch to the informal form of address — **tu** (tooh) (*you*, informal singular). You also use the informal with members of your family, friends, and, as already mentioned, with children.

Replies to a greeting

When you reply to a greeting in English, you often say “How are you?” as a way of saying “Hello” — you don’t expect an answer. In Italian, however, this is not the case; you respond with an answer. Following are common ways to reply to particular greetings.

Formal greeting and reply

Greeting:

Buongiorno signora, come sta?

bwohn-johr-noh see-nyoh-rah koh-meh
stah

Hello, ma’am, how are you?

Reply:

Benissimo, grazie, e Lei?

beh-nees-see-moh grah-tsee-eh eh ley

Very well, thank you, and you?

Informal greeting and reply

Greeting:

Ciao, Roberto, come stai?

chou roh-behr-toh koh-meh stahy

Hi, Roberto, how are you?

Reply:

Bene, grazie, e tu?

beh-neh *grah-tsee-eh eh tooh*

Fine, thanks, and you?

Another typical, rather informal, greeting and reply

Greeting:

Come va?

koh-me vah

How are things?

Reply:

Non c'è male.

nohn cheh mah-leh

Not bad.

Specifying your reuniting

Sometimes, you want to say more than just good-bye and specify your next meeting. The following expressions are common and also can be used as good-byes on their own:

A presto! (ah *prehs-toh*) (*See you soon!*)

A dopo! (ah *doh-poh*) (*See you later!*)

A domani! (ah *doh-mah-nee*) (*See you tomorrow!*)

Ci vediamo! (chee *veh-dyah-moh*) (*See you!*)

You can combine **Ci vediamo** with other phrases. For example:

Ci vediamo presto! (chee *veh-dyah-moh prehs-toh*)
(*See you soon!*)

Ci vediamo dopo! (chee *veh-dyah-moh doh-poh*)
(*See you later!*)

Ci vediamo domani! (chee *veh-dyah-moh doh-mah-nee*)
(*See you tomorrow!*)

Using body language

In Italy, people who are familiar with each other, such as family and friends, commonly hug and kiss on both cheeks.

Italians kiss twice: once right, once left.

Another common physical greeting is the more formal handshake. You shake hands with people you meet for the first time and with those you don't know well.

Making Introductions

It's important to be able to introduce yourself to someone, and to answer questions about who you are and where you're from.



Whether to use first or last names as well as formal and informal registers are important considerations. In a job situation, you usually use last names, whereas at private functions, people are more likely to tell you their first names. The fact that someone gives you his or her first name, however, does not necessarily mean that you should use the informal **tu** (tooh) (*you*); using a person's first name with the formal form of address is quite common. Usually, the older person proposes making the switch to the informal form.

Introducing yourself

We want to familiarize you with an important reflexive verb, **chiamarsi** (kyah-mahr-see) (*to call oneself*), which you use to introduce yourself and to ask others for their names. Here is the present tense of this important verb:

(word missing)

Conjugation	Pronunciation	Meaning
mi chiamo	mee kyah-moh	<i>My name is</i>
ti chiami	tee kyah-mee	<i>Your name is</i>
si chiama	see kyah-mah	<i>Your/ his,/her/its name is</i>
ci chiamiamo	chee kyah-myah-moh	<i>Our names are</i>
vi chiamate	vee kyah-mah-teh	<i>Your names are</i>
si chiamano	see kyah-mah-noh	<i>Their names are</i>

So that you can get the ring of the verb **chiamarsi**, practice these easy examples. Just change your intonation and word order, and you can ask someone's name instead of telling them.

- ✓ **Ciao (or Buongiorno), mi chiamo Eva.** (chou/bwohn-johr-noh mee kyah-moh eh-vah) (*Hello, my name is Eva.*)
- ✓ **E tu come ti chiami?** (eh too koh-meh tee kyah-mee) (*And what's your name?*)
- ✓ **Lei, come si chiama?** (lay koh-meh see kyah-mah) (*What's your name?*)
- ✓ **Piacere!** (pyah-cheh-reh) (with a quick hand-shake) is one way of saying: *Nice to meet you!*



Incidentally, as in English, you can also introduce yourself simply by saying your name: **Io sono Pietro** (*ee-oh soh-noh pee-eh-troh*) (*I'm Pietro*). Finally, you can just simply state your name, without the “Mi chiamo” (*My name is*) or “Sono,” (*I am*) as in the sample dialogue that follows.

Talkin' the Talk

The people in this dialogue are colleagues assigned to work on the same project. They introduce themselves to each other.

- | | |
|--------------|--|
| Mr. Messa: | Carlo Messa. Piacere!
<i>kahr-loh mehs-sah pyah-cheh-reh</i>
Carlo Messa, nice to meet you! |
| Mr. Rossi: | Piacere, Marco Rossi.
<i>pyah-cheh-reh mahr-koh rohs-see</i>
Nice to meet you, Marco Rossi. |
| Ms. Pertini: | Piacere, sono Paola Pertini.
<i>pyah-cheh-reh soh-noh pah-oh-lah pehr-tee-nee</i>
Nice to meet you, I'm Paola Pertini. |
| Ms. Salvi: | Lieta di conoscerla. Anna Salvi.
<i>lee-eh-tah dee koh-noh-shehr-lah ahn-nah sahl-vee</i>
Pleased to meet you, Anna Salvi. |
| Mr. Melis: | Mi chiamo Carlo Melis, piacere.
<i>mee kyah-moh kahr-loh meh-lees pyah-cheh-reh</i>
My name is Carlo Melis, nice to meet you. |
| Mr. Foschi: | Molto lieto, Silvio Foschi.
<i>mohl-toh lee-eh-toh seel-vee-oh fohs-kee</i>
Very pleased to meet you, Silvio Foschi. |

Children and young people forego ceremony and introduce themselves more casually, though still politely — something like this:

- Ciao! Sono Giulio.**
chou soh-noh jooh-lee-oh
Hello! I'm Giulio.
- E io sono Giulia, piacere.**
eh ee-oh soh-noh jooh-lee-ah pyah-cheh-reh
And I'm Giulia, nice to meet you.

The following example offers a very informal introduction, used only in a very casual situation, such as on the beach or at a club:

Come ti chiami?
koh-meh tee-kyah-mee
What's your name?

Chiara. E tu?
kyah-rah eh tooh
Chiara, and yours?

Amedeo.
ah-meh-deh-oh
Amedeo.

Talkin' the Talk



Now listen to two young people introducing each other in a less formal setting. Mario enters the café and comes up to a table occupied by another person, Patrizia.

Mario: **È libero?**
eh /ee-beh-roh
Is it free?

Patrizia: **Sì.**
see
Yes.

Mario: **Grazie. Scusa, ma non sei la sorella di Gianni?**
grah-tsee-eh skooh-za mah nohn say lah soh-rehl-lah
di giahn-nee
Thank you. Excuse me, but aren't you Gianni's sister?

Patrizia: **Sì.**
see
Yes.

Mario: **Mi chiamo Mario.**
mee kyah-moh mah-ree-oh
My name is Mario.

Gioco a calcio con Gianni.
joh-koh ah cahl-choh kohn jahn-nee
I play soccer with Gianni.

Patrizia: **Ciao, io sono Patrizia.**
 chou ee-oh soh-noh pah-tree-tsee-ah
 Hello, I'm Patrizia.

Mario: **Ti disturbo?**
 tee dees-toohr-boh
 Am I bothering you?

Patrizia: **No, per niente.**
 Noh pehr nee-ehn-teh.
 No, not at all.

Sto aspettando due amici.
 stoh ahs-peht-tahn-doh dooh-eh ah-mee-chee
 I'm waiting for two friends.

Introducing other people

Sometimes you not only have to introduce yourself, but also introduce someone to your friends or to other people.

The following vocabulary may be helpful in making introductions. With it, you can indicate the relationship between you and the person you're introducing. Gesturing toward the person and simply saying **mio fratello** means, quite simply, "This is my brother."

- ✓ **mio fratello** (*mee-oh frah-tehl-loh*) (*my brother*)
- ✓ **mia sorella** (*mee-ah soh-rehl-lah*) (*my sister*)
- ✓ **mia figlia** (*mee-ah fee-lyah*) (*my daughter*)
- ✓ **mio figlio** (*mee-oh fee-lyoh*) (*my son*)
- ✓ **mio marito** (*mee-oh mah-ree-toh*) (*my husband*)
- ✓ **mia moglie** (*mee-ah moh-lyee-eh*) (*my wife*)
- ✓ **mia madre** (*mee-ah mah-dreh*) (*my mother*)
- ✓ **mio padre** (*mee-oh pah-dreh*) (*my father*)
- ✓ **la mia amica/il mio amico** (*lah mee-ah ah-mee-kah eel mee-oh ah-mee-koh*) (*my friend [m]*) Sometimes this also means girlfriend or boyfriend.

- ✓ **la mia ragazza/il mio ragazzo** (lah mee-ah rah-gat-tsah/eel mee-oh rah-gat-tsoh) (*my girlfriend/my boyfriend*)
- ✓ **la mia fidanzata/il mio fidanzato** (lah mee-ah fee-dahn-zah-tah/eel mee-oh fee-dahn-zah-toh) (*my fiancè*)
- ✓ **il mio collega** (eel mee-oh kohl-leh-gah) (*my colleague [m]*)
- ✓ **la mia collega** (lah mee-ah kohl-leh-gah) (*my colleague [f]*)

To make life easier I give you here the verb **presentare** (preh-zehn-tah-reh) (*to introduce*). (See Chapter 2 for more on ARE verb conjugations.)

Ti presento mia moglie, Teresa. (tee preh-zehn-toh mee-ah mohl-yeh teh-reh-sah) (*Let me introduce you (informal) to my wife, Teresa.*)

Le presento mia suocera, Mary. (lehpreh-zehn-toh mee-ah swoh-chehr-ah) (*Let me introduce you (formal) to my mother-in-law, Mary.*)

Talkin' the Talk

The following dialogue, which represents a formal occasion, contains some typical expressions used during introductions. Here, Mrs. Ponti introduces a new colleague to one of her co-workers. Note the abbreviation for signora.

Sig.ra Ponti: **Buonasera signora Bruni . . . Signora Bruni, Le presento il signor Rossi.**
bwoh-nah-seh-rah see-nyoh-rah brooh-nee see-nyoh-rah brooh-nee leh preh-zehn-toh eel see-nyohr rohs-see
 Good afternoon, Mrs. Bruni . . . Mrs. Bruni, I'd like to introduce you to Mr. Rossi.

Sig.ra Bruni: **Lieta di conoscerla.**
lee-eh-tah dee koh-noh-shehr-lah
 Pleased to meet you.

Sig. Rossi: **Il piacere è tutto mio!**
eel pyah-cheh-reh eh tooht-toh mee-oh
 The pleasure is all mine!

Talkin' the Talk



Of course, friends can be informal with one another, as the next conversation shows. Here Teresa bumps into her old friend Marinella. Both are married now and introduce their husbands.

Marinella: **Ciao, Teresa, come stai?**
chou teh-reh-zah koh-meh stahy
Hello, Teresa. How are you?

Teresa: **Bene, grazie.**
beh-neh grah-tsee-eh.
Well, thank you.

Sono contenta di vederti!
soh-noh con-tehn-tah dee veh-dehr-tee
I'm happy to see you!

Marinella, ti presento mio marito Giancarlo.
mahr-een-ehl-lah tee preh-zehn-toh mee-oh mah-ree-
toh jahn-kahr-loh
Marinella, I'd like to introduce you to my husband,
Giancarlo.

Marinella: **Ciao, Giancarlo.**
chou, jahn-kahr-loh
Hello.

Giancarlo: **Piacere.**
pyah-cheh-reh
Nice to meet you.

Marinella: **E questo è Gianni.**
eh kwehs-toh eh jahn-nee
And this is Gianni.

Gianni: **Piacere.**
pyah-cheh-reh
Nice to meet you.

Getting Acquainted

Introducing yourself is the first step in getting to know someone. If you get a good feeling about the person and want to speak more, a conversation usually follows the introduction. This section tells you about the different topics you might talk about to get to know each other.

Finding out whether someone speaks Italian

Of course you will want to practice your Italian as soon as you get to Italy. You have an opportunity to try out your newly acquired smattering of Italian.

Parla italiano?/	(pahr-lah/pahr-lee)	<i>Do you speak Italian?</i>
Parli italiano?	ee-tahl-ee-ah-noh)	(Formal/Informal))
Parla inglese?/	(pahr-lah/pahr-lee)	<i>Do you speak English?</i>
Parli inglese?	een-gleh-seh)	(Formal/Informal))

A possible response to these questions is:

Parlo un po'. (pahr-loh oohn poh) *I speak a little bit.*

Talkin' the Talk

Ilaria and Carmen have recently gotten to know each other. Because Carmen is not Italian, although she lives in Italy, Ilaria is curious to know how many languages she speaks.

Ilaria: **Quante lingue parli?**
 kwahn-teh leen-gweh pahr-lee
 How many languages do you speak?

Carmen: **Tre: italiano, spagnolo e tedesco.**
 treh ee-tah-lee-ah-noh spah-nyoh-loh eh
 teh-dehs-koh
 Three: Italian, Spanish, and German.

Ilaria: **E qual è la tua lingua madre?**
 eh kwah-leh lah tooh-ah leen-gwah mah-dreh
 And which is your mother tongue?

Carmen: **Lo spagnolo.**
loh spah-nyoh-loh
Spanish.

Ilaria: **Tua madre è spagnola?**
tooh-ah mah-dreh eh spah-nyoh-lah
Is your mother Spanish?

Carmen: **Sì. E mio padre è austriaco.**
see eh mee-oh pah-dreh eh ous-tree-ah-koh
Yes, and my father is Austrian.

Talking about where you come from

You know how interesting meeting people from other countries and nationalities can be. Two common questions are useful to remember:

- ✓ **Da dove viene?** (dah doh-veh vee-eh-neh) (*Where do you come from? Where are you coming from; in this instance, where are you from?*) Formal
- ✓ **Da dove vieni?** (dah doh-veh vee-eh-nee) (*Where are you from?*) Informal
- ✓ **Di dov'è?** (dee doh-veh) (*Where are you from?*) Formal
- ✓ **Di dove sei?** (dee doh-veh sey) (*Where are you from?*) Informal

The answers are, respectively:

- ✓ **Vengo da . . .** (vehn-goh dah) (*I come from/I'm from*)
- ✓ **Sono di . . .** (soh-noh dee) (*I'm from . . .*)

Now you can play with these phrases. You can insert the names of continents, countries, cities, or places.

Talkin' the Talk

Il signor Dadina is sitting in his favorite café in Ravenna drinking his coffee and notices somebody at the next table who is examining a map of the city's Byzantine churches. Il signor Dadina is a curious person:

Sig. Dadina: **Non è di qui, vedo Di dov'è?**
nohn eh dee kw-ee veh-roh di doh-veh
 I can see you're not from here: where are you from?

Sig. Tarroni: **Sono di Perugia.**
soh-noh dee peh-rooh-jah
 No, I'm from Perugia.

Sig. Belli: **Una bella città!**
ooh-nah behl-lah cheet-tah
 A beautiful town!

Sig. Verdi: **Sì, è piccola ma molto bella.**
see eh peek-koh-lah mah mohl-toh behl-lah
 Yes, it is small but very beautiful.

If you want to talk about provenance, the adjectives denoting nationalities come in handy. As you say in English, “Are you American?” you say the same in Italian:

- ✓ **È americano/a?** (eh ah-meh-ree-*kah*-noh/nah) (*Are you American?*)
 Formal
- ✓ **Sei americano/a?** (sey ah-meh-ree-*kah*-noh/nah) (*Are you American?*)
 Informal

After you know the basics for such a situation, you’re ready to chat.

Talkin’ the Talk

Il signor Bennati, meets a Canadian, Mr. Walsh. Because they are strangers, their exchange is in the formal form.

Sig. Bennati: **Di dov'è?**
dee doh-veh
 Where are you from?

Mr. Walsh: **Sono canadese.**
soh-noh kah-nah-deh-zeh
 I'm Canadian.

Sig. Bennati: **Di dove esattamente?**
dee doh-veh eh-zaht-tah-mehn-teh
 From where, exactly?

Mr. Walsh: **Di Montreal. Lei è italiano?**
 dee mohn-treh-ahl ley eh ee-tah-lee-ah-noh
 From Montreal. Are you Italian?

Sig. Bennati: **Sì, di Firenze.**
 see dee fee-rehn-tseh
 Yes, from Florence.

In English, you must put the pronoun (I, you, he, she, we, and so on) in front of the verb. You may have noticed that this is not the case in Italian. Because the verb form is different for each pronoun, you can easily leave out the pronoun — you understand who is meant from the verb ending and from the context. You use the pronoun only when the subject isn't clear enough or when you want to emphasize a fact — for example, **Loro sono americani, ma io sono italiano** (*loh-roh soh-noh ah-meh-ree-kah-nee mah ee-oh soh-noh ee-tahl-yah-noh*) (*They are Americans, but I am Italian*).

Use adjectives ending in **-o** (singular) and **-i** (plural) to refer to males, and adjectives ending in **-a** (singular) and **-e** (plural) to refer to females. Adjectives that end in **-e** in the singular refer to both males and females and end in the plural with **-i**.

Some adjectives indicating nationality end with **-e**: This form is both feminine and masculine. Table 3-1 gives some examples.

Table 3-1 Some Nationalities and Countries

Nationality/Country	Pronunciation	Translation
albanese/i Albania	ahl-bah-neh-zeh/see ahl-bah-nee-ah	<i>Albanian/Albanians</i> <i>Albania</i>
canadese/i Canada	kah-nah-deh-zeh/zee kah-nah-dah	<i>Canadian/Canadians</i> <i>Canada</i>
cinese/i Cina	chee-neh-zeh/zee chee-nah	<i>Chinese</i> (sing.pl.) <i>China</i>
francese/i Francia	frahn-cheh-zeh/zee frahn-chah	<i>French</i> (sing./pl.) <i>France</i>
giapponese/i Giappone	jahp-poh-neh-zeh/zee jahp-poh-neh	<i>Japanese</i> (sing/pl.) <i>Japan</i>
inglese/i Inghilterra	een-gleh-zeh/zee een-geel-tehr-rah	<i>English</i> (sing./pl.) <i>England</i>

Nationality/Country	Pronunciation	Translation
irlandese/i	eer-lahn-deh-zeh/zee	<i>Irish</i> (sing./pl.)
Irlanda	eer-lahn-dah	<i>Ireland</i>
olandese/i	oh-lahn-deh-zeh/zee	<i>Dutch</i> (sing./pl.)
olanda	oh-lahn-dah	<i>Holland</i>
portoghese/i	pohr-toh-geh-zeh/zee	<i>Portuguese</i> (sing./pl.)
Portogallo	pohr-toh-gahl-loh	<i>Portugal</i>
senegalese/i	seh-neh-gahl-eh-zeh/zee	<i>Senegalese</i> (sing./pl.)
Senegal	seh-neh-gahl	<i>Senegal</i>
svedese/i	sveh-deh-zeh/zee	<i>Swedish</i> (sing./pl.)
Svezia	sveh-tsee-ah	<i>Sweden</i>

In other cases, nationalities have feminine, masculine, plural feminine, and plural masculine forms, and end in **a**, **o**, **e**, **i**, as Table 3-2 shows.

Table 3-2 Gender-Specific Nationalities and Countries

Nationality/ Country	Pronunciation	Translation
americana/o/e/i	ah-meh-ree-kah-nah/noh/	<i>American/Americans</i>
Stati Uniti d'America	neh/nee stah-tee ooh-nee-tee dah-meh-ree-kah	<i>America</i>
australiana/o/e/i	ou-strahl-yah-nah/noh/	<i>Australian/Australians</i>
Australia	neh/nee ou-strahl-yah	<i>Australia</i>
brasiliiana/o/e/i	brah-see-lyah-nah/noh/	<i>Brazilian/Brazilians</i>
Brasile	neh/nee brah-see-leh	<i>Brazil</i>
greca/o/greci/greche	greh-koh/greh-kah/greh-chee/gre-keh	<i>Greek/Greeks</i>
Grecia	greh-chah	<i>Greece</i>
italiana/o/e/i	ee-tah-lee-ah-nah/noh/	<i>Italian/Italians</i>
Italia	neh/nee ee-tah-lee-ah	<i>Italy</i>
marocchina/o/e/i	mah-rohk-kee-nah/noh/	<i>Moroccan/Moroccans</i>
Marocco	neh/nee mah-rohk-koh	<i>Morocco</i>

(continued)

Table 3-2 (continued)

<i>Nationality/ Country</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>	<i>Translation</i>
messicano/a/e/i Messico	meh-see-kah-nah/noh/ neh/nee meh-see-koh	<i>Mexican/Mexicans Mexico</i>
polacco/a/polacchi/ polacche Polonia	poh-lah-koh/kah/kee/keh poh-loh-nee-ah	<i>Polish (sing./pl.) Poland</i>
rumeno/a/i/e Romania	rooh-meh-nah/noh/neh/nee roh-mah-nee-ah	<i>Romanian/Romanians Romania</i>
russa/o/e/i Russia	roohs-sah/soh/seh/see roos-see-ah	<i>Russian/Russians Russia</i>
spagnola/o/e/i Spagna	spah-nyoh-lah/loh/leh/lee spah-nyah	<i>Spanish (sing./pl.) Spain</i>
svizzera/o/e/i Svizzera	sweet-tseh-rah/roh/reh/ree sweet-tseh-rah	<i>Swiss (sing./pl.) Switzerland</i>
tedesca/o/tedesche/ tedeschi Germania	teh-dehs-kah/koh/keh/kee jehr-mah-nee-ah	<i>German/Germans Germany</i>



Instead of saying **sono americano** (*soh-noh ah-meh-ree-kah-noh*) (*I'm American*), you can also say **vengo dall'America** (*vehn-goh dahl-lah-meh-ree-kah*) (*I'm from America*). The same is true for all countries.

The following examples give you more practice with this construction.

- ✓ **Veniamo dall'Italia.** (*veh-nee-ah-moh dahl-lee-tah-lee-ah*) (*We come from Italy/we're from Italy.*)
- ✓ **Vengono dalla Spagna.** (*vehn-goh-noh dahl-lah spah-nyah*) (*They come from Spain.*)
- ✓ **Vengo dal Giappone.** (*vehn-goh dahl jahp-poh-neh*) (*I come from Japan.*)
- ✓ **Veniamo dal Canada.** (*veh-nee-ah-moh dahl kah-nah-dah*) (*We come from Canada.*)
- ✓ **Veniamo dagli U. S. A. (or Stati Uniti)** (*veh-nee-ah-moh dah-lyee ooh-zhah/stah-tee ooh-nee-tee*) (*We come from the U. S. A. or United States*)

If you travel to Italy and make new friends, you may be asked these informal questions:

- ✓ **Ti piace l'Italia?** (tee *pyah-cheh lee-tah-lee-ah*) (*Do you like Italy?*)
- ✓ **Sei qui per la prima volta?** (say *kwee pehr lah pree-mah vohl-tah*)
(*Is this your first time here?*)
- ✓ **Sei qui in vacanza?** (say *kwee een vah-kahn-tsah*) (*Are you on vacation?*)
- ✓ **Quanto rimani?** (*kwahn-toh ree-mah-nee*) (*How long are you staying?*)

Talkin' the Talk

In the following dialogue, you can catch some typical expressions for describing a city.

- Tokiko: **Ti piace Venezia?**
tee *pyah-cheh veh-neh-tsee-ah*
Do you like Venice?
- Dolores: **Sì, è molto romantica.**
see eh *mohl-toh roh-mahn-tee-kah*
Yes, it's very romantic.
- Tokiko: **È bellissima! Io sono giapponese.**
eh behl-/ees-see-mah. ee-o *soh-noh jahp-poh-neh-zeh*
It's very beautiful! I am Japanese.
- Dolores: **Com'è Tokio?**
kohm-eh *toh-kee-oh*
What's Tokyo like?
- Tokiko: **È grandissima, moderna.**
eh *grahn-dees-see-mah moh-dehr-nah*
It's huge, modern.



Extending and responding to invitations

You may be asked to join an Italian friend for a meal in a restaurant, or even at his/her home after you've become friends. When you want to invite someone to dinner, you can use the following phrases:

- ✓ **Andiamo a cena insieme?** (ahn-dee-ah-moh ah *cheh-nah een-syeh-eh-meh*) (*Should we go to dinner together?*)
- ✓ **Posso invitarti stasera?** (pohs-soh een-vee-tahr-tee stah-seh-rah) (*Can I invite you for this evening?*) This usually means that the person asking is going to be treating.

To accept an invitation, you can use the following expressions:

- ✓ **Volentieri, grazie!** (voh-lehn-tyeh-ree *grah-tsee-eh*) (*I'd like to, thank you!*)
- ✓ **Con piacere, grazie!** (kohn pyah-cheh-reh *grah-tsee-eh*) (*With pleasure, thank you!*)

Of course, you can't accept every invitation you receive. Following are expressions you can use to decline an invitation:

- ✓ **Mi dispiace ma non posso.** (mee dees-pee-ah-cheh mah nohn *pohs-soh*) (*I'm sorry, but I can't.*)
- ✓ **Magari un'altra volta, grazie.** (mah-gah-ree oohn-ahl-trah *vohl-tah grah-tsee-eh*) (*Perhaps another time, thank you.*)
- ✓ **Mi dispiace, ho già un altro impegno.** (mee dees-pyah-cheh oh jah oohn ahl-troh eem-peh-nyoh) (*I'm sorry, but I already have another appointment.*)

Talkin' the Talk

Francesca talks to Giovanni to get the particulars for their date that evening.

Francesca: **Ci vediamo per cena questa sera?**
chee veh-dyah-moh pehr cheh-nah kwehs-tah seh-rah
Shall me meet for supper tonight?

Giovanni: **Si, perchè no? Offro io, però.**
see pehr-keh noh. ohf-froh ee-oh pehr-oh
Yes, why not? It's my treat, though.



Fun & Games

A chance meeting leads to a quick introduction in the short dialogue. Fill in the blanks in the Italian, using the following phrases. See Appendix D for the answer key.

le presento, il piacere, e lei, come sta, conoscerla

Gayle: **Buonasera, signora Frederick. _____?**

Good afternoon, Ms. Frederick. How are you?

Ms. Frederick **Benissimo, grazie, _____?**

Very well, thank you, and you?

Gayle: **Bene, grazie. _____ mio amico, George.**

Fine, thanks. I'd like to introduce my friend, George.

George: **Lieta di _____, signora.**

Pleased to meet you, Ma'am.

Ms. Frederick: **_____ è mio.**

The pleasure is mine.



Chapter 4

Getting Your Numbers and Time Straight

In This Chapter

- ▶ Counting numbers
- ▶ Telling time
- ▶ Using the calendar and making dates
- ▶ Reviewing the metric system

Numbers are a basic part of any language, so we've included numbers early on in this chapter. You can't get away without knowing numbers, even in small talk. Somebody may ask you how old you are, how many days you're visiting, or whatever. You can see how numbers are used throughout this book, for example in Chapters 7 and 13.

Counting Numbers

Every language follows a certain scheme to formulate higher numbers. When you know the basics — the numbers from one to ten — you're halfway there.

In the Italian scheme, as in English, the higher value precedes the lower one, so that to say "22," you first say **venti** (*vehn-tee*) (*twenty*) and then **due** (*dooh-eh*) (*two*) and simply put them together: **ventidue** (*vehn-tee-dooh-eh*) (*twenty-two*). The same is true for higher numbers — like **trecentoventidue** (*treh-chehn-toh-vehn-tee-dooh-eh*) (*three hundred and twenty-two*) and **duemila** **trecentoventidue** (*dooh-eh-mee-lah-treh-chehn-toh-vehn-tee-dooh-eh*) (*two thousand three hundred and twenty-two*).

One thing merits some further explanation: When two vowels meet (this happens frequently with **uno** [*ooh-noh*] [*one*] and **otto** [*oht-toh*] [*eight*]) you eliminate the first vowel as in **vent(i)uno** (*vehn-tooh-noh*) (*twenty-one*) and **quarant(a)otto** (*kwaah-rahn-toht-toh*) (*forty-eight*). So far so good.



Every rule has exceptions, and there are some irregular numbers, which you simply have to memorize. The numbers from 11 to 19 follow their own rules: **undici** (*ohn-dee-chee*) (*eleven*), **dodici** (*doh-dee-chee*) (*twelve*), **tredici** (*treh-dee-chee*) (*thirteen*), **quattordici** (*kwaht-tohr-dee-chee*) (*fourteen*), **quindici** (*kween-dee-chee*) (*fifteen*), **sedici** (*seh-dee-chee*) (*sixteen*), **diciassette** (*dee-chahs-seht-teh*) (*seventeen*), **diciotto** (*dee-choht-tuh*) (*eighteen*), and **diciannove** (*dee-chahn-noh-veh*) (*nineteen*).

In Italian you cannot express a decade in just one word — you use a phrase. When you want to say “in the sixties,” you have to say **negli anni sessanta** (*neh-lyee ahn-nee sehs-sahn-tah*), which literally means “in the years sixty.” You form all the other decades using this method also. To say “the seventies” (without the “in the”) you simply say **gli anni settanta** (*lyee ahn-nee seht-tahn-tah*).



One other thing to keep in mind is that the plural of **mille** (*meel-leh*) (*one thousand*) is **mila** (*mee-lah*), as in **duemila** (*dooh-eh-mee-lah*) (*two thousand*).

Table 4-1 gives you enough numbers so that you can form the ones on your own not included here.

Table 4-1 **Numbers**

<i>Italian</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>	<i>Number</i>
From 1 to 30		
zero	<i>dzeh-roh</i>	0
uno	<i>ooh-noh</i>	1
due	<i>dooh-eh</i>	2
tre	<i>treh</i>	3
quattro	<i>kwaht-troh</i>	4
cinque	<i>cheen-kweh</i>	5
sei	<i>sey</i>	6
sette	<i>seht-teh</i>	7
otto	<i>oht-toh</i>	8
nove	<i>noh-veh</i>	9
dieci	<i>dyeh-chee</i>	10
undici	<i>ohn-dee-chee</i>	11
dodici	<i>doh-dee-chee</i>	12
tredici	<i>treh-dee-chee</i>	13
quattordici	<i>kwaht-tohr-dee-chee</i>	14

<i>Italian</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>	<i>Number</i>
quindici	kween-dee-chee	15
sedici	seh-dee-chee	16
diciassette	dee-chahs-seht-teh	17
diciotto	dee-choht-toh	18
diciannove	dee-chahn-noh-veh	19
venti	vehn-tee	20
ventuno	vehn-tooh-noh	21
ventidue	vehn-tee-dooh-eh	22
ventitré	vehn-tee-treh	23
ventiquattro	vehn-tee-kwaht-troh	24
venticinque	vehn-tee-cheen-kweh	25
ventisei	vehn-tee-sey	26
ventisette	vehn-tee-seht-teh	27
ventotto	vehnt-oht-toh	28
ventinove	vehn-tee-noh-veh	29
trenta	trehn-tah	30
Numbers 40 to 100		
quaranta	kwah-rahn-tah	40
cinquanta	cheen-kwahn-tah	50
sessanta	sehs-sahn-tah	60
settanta	seht-tahn-tah	70
ottanta	oht-tahn-tah	80
novanta	noh-vahn-tah	90
cento	chen-toh	100
Numbers from 200 to 900		
duecento	dooh-eh-chehn-toh	200
trecento	treh-chehn-toh	300
quattrocento	kwaht-troh-chehn-toh	400
cinquecento	cheen-kweh-chehn-toh	500
seicento	sey-chehn-toh	600
settecento	seht-teh-chehn-toh	700
ottocento	oht-toh-chehn-toh	800
novecento	noh-veh-chehn-toh	900

(continued)

Table 4-1 (continued)

<i>Italian</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>	<i>Number</i>
Higher numbers		
mille	<i>meel-leh</i>	1,000
duemila	<i>dooh-eh-mee-lah</i>	2,000
un milione	<i>oohn mee-lyoh-neh</i>	1,000,000
due milioni	<i>dooh-eh mee-lyoh-nee</i>	2,000,000
un miliardo	<i>oohn mee-lyahr-doh</i>	1,000,000,000

Common usage for numbers that denote the centuries are:

Manzoni scrisse nell'Ottocento. (mahn-zoh-nee skrees-seh nehl-oht-toh-chehn-toh). (*Manzoni wrote in the 1800s.*)

Il Rinascimento fu nel '400 e '500 (nel Quattrocento e nel Cinquecento). (eel ree-nahsh-ee-mehn-toh fooh hehl *kwaht-troh-chehn-toh eh nehl cheen-kweh-chehn-toh.*) (*The Renaissance was in the 15th and 16th centuries — literally, 1400s and 1500s.*)

Times of Day and Days of the Week

Arranging your social life — whether you want to go to a performance or invite someone to a party — requires knowing the days of the week and times of the day. Table 4-2 gives you the days of the week and the abbreviations for them.



You don't capitalize the days of the week or the months in Italian as you do in English.

Table 4-2**Days of the Week**

<i>Italian/Abbreviation</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>	<i>Translation</i>
domenica/do.	<i>doh-meh-nee-kah</i>	<i>Sunday</i>
lunedì/lun.	<i>loo-neh-dee</i>	<i>Monday</i>
martedì/mar.	<i>mahr-teh-dee</i>	<i>Tuesday</i>
mercoledì/mer.	<i>mehr-koh-leh-dee</i>	<i>Wednesday</i>
giovedì/gio.	<i>joh-veh-dee</i>	<i>Thursday</i>
venerdì/ven.	<i>veh-nehr-dee</i>	<i>Friday</i>
sabato/sab.	<i>sah-bah-toh</i>	<i>Saturday</i>

Here are terms for *today*, *tomorrow*, *day after tomorrow*, and *yesterday*: **oggi** (*oj-jee*), **domani** (*doh-mah-nee*), **dopodomani** (*doh-poh-doh-mah-nee*), and **ieri** (*yeh-ree*).



There's a great song, "Domani il 21 aprile" that most of Italy's greatest contemporary singers put together in support of the people of Abruzzo after the earthquake of 2009. You can do an online search for the title of the song, and sing along with it. This is a fun way to practice your pronunciation!!

Talkin' the Talk

Note the following teacher/student exchange in Italian 101:

Teacher: **Se oggi è lunedì, che giorno è domani?**
 seh oj-jee eh looh-neh-dee keh johr-noh eh
 doh-mah-nee
 If today is Monday, what day is tomorrow?

Student: **Domani è martedì.**
 doh-mah-nee eh mahr-teh-dee
 Tomorrow is Tuesday.

Teacher: **Bravo. Oggi è giovedì: che giorno è domani?**
 brah-voh. ohj-jee eh joh-veh-dee. keh johr-noh eh
 doh-mah-nee
 Good job. Today is Thursday: what day is tomorrow?

Student: **Domani è venerdì.**
 doh-mah-nee eh veh-nehr-dee
 Tomorrow is Friday.

Now the teacher is talking to her colleagues.

Colleague: **Quando parti per le vacanze?**
 kwahn-doh pahr-tee pehr leh vah-kahn-zeh
 When are you leaving for vacation?

Teacher: **Sabato, dopodomani.**
 sah-bah-toh doh-poh-doh-mah-nee
 Saturday, day after tomorrow.

You may find the Italian expression for "the day before yesterday" interesting. It is **l'altro ieri** (*lahl-troh yeh-ree*), which literally means "the other yesterday." Some of the ways you might use these expressions are:



- ✓ **Il concerto è martedì sera.** (eel kohn-chehr-toh eh mahr-teh-dee seh-rah) (*The concert is on Tuesday evening.*)
- ✓ **Dov'eri ieri pomeriggio?** (doh-veh-ree yeh-ree poh-meh-reej-joh) (*Where were you yesterday afternoon?*)
- ✓ **Il concerto c'è stato l'altro ieri. L'hai perso!** (eel kohn-chehr-toh cheh stah-toh lahl-troh yeh-ree lahy pehr-soh) (*The concert was the day before yesterday. You missed it!*)

Using the Calendar and Making Dates

Table 4-3 lists the months that you need in order to plan a vacation, organize your life, remember your friends' birthdays, and also talk about your favorite holidays and seasons.

Table 4-3

Months

<i>Italian</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>	<i>Translation</i>
gennaio	gehn-nahy-oh	<i>January</i>
febbraio	fehb-brahy-oh	<i>February</i>
marzo	mahr-tsoh	<i>March</i>
aprile	ah-pree-leh	<i>April</i>
maggio	mahj-joh	<i>May</i>
giugno	jooh-nyoh	<i>June</i>
luglio	loo-h-lyoh	<i>July</i>
agosto	ah-gohs-toh	<i>August</i>
settembre	seht-tehm-breh	<i>September</i>
ottobre	oht-toh-breh	<i>October</i>
novembre	noh-vehm-breh	<i>November</i>
dicembre	dee-chehm-breh	<i>December</i>

Here is a useful rhyme that most Italians learn some version of. This might help you to remember and pronounce some of the months and numbers. You can listen and repeat as much as you want!

Trenta giorni ha novembre con aprile, giugno e settembre. Di ventotto ce n'è uno. Tutti gli altri ne han trentuno.

(*trehn-tah johr-nee ah noh-vehm-breh kohn ah-pree-leh jooh-nyoh eh seht-tehm-breh. Dee vehn-toht-toh cheh neh ooh-noh. Tooh-tee lyee ahl-tree neh ahn trehn-tooh-noh.*)

(*Thirty days have November, April, June, and September. With 28 there is but one. All the rest have thirty-one.*)

Making dates

To ask for the date you say:

Che giorno è oggi? (keh johr-noh eh ohj-jee) (*What is the date today?/What day is today?*) This is also the same way to ask for the day. Or

Quanti ne abbiamo oggi? (kwahn-tee neh ahb-byah-moh ohj-jee) (*What is today's date?*) Here is an important difference between saying the date in English and in Italian. The word order is reversed in Italian. To say the date you use this order: **è** (eh) (it's) + **il** (eel) (the)+ number + month + (year, if necessary). Here's a sample.

Oggi è il dieci febbraio duemilaundici. (ohj-jee eh eel dyeh-chee fehb-brahy-oh dooh-eh-mee-lah-oohn-dee-chee) (*Today is February 10, 2011.*)

To ask when something is occurring, just use the word **quando** (qwahn-doh) (*when*).

Quando parti per la Sicilia? (kwahn-doh pahr-tee pehr lah see-cheel-ee-ah) (*When are you leaving for Sicily?*)

. . . and to answer

Parto l'8 agosto. (pahr-toh loht-toh ah-gohs-toh) (*I'm leaving August 8th.*)

Or to ask when someone was born:

Quando sei nata? (kwahn-doh sey nah-tah) (*When were you born?*)

. . . and to respond

Sono nata il sette novembre millenovecentosessantuno. (soh-noh nah-tah eel seht-teh noh-vehm-breh meel-leh-noh-veh-chehn-toh-sehs-sahn-tooh-noh) (*I was born in '61.*)

Note: I gave the past participle a feminine ending **nata**. If you're speaking to or about a male, the word should be **nato** (ending in the "o".)

Telling time

When you write the time in Italian, you go from 1.00 to 24.00 (or 00.00). But generally when you speak, you use just 1 to 12, and if there's a doubt about a.m. or p.m., you can add **di mattina** (dee maht-tee-nah) (*in the morning*), **di pomeriggio** (dee poh-meh-ree-joh) (*in the afternoon*) or **di sera** (dee seh-rah) (*in the evening*).

Asking for the time

You can ask for the time in two interchangeable ways:

1. **Che ora è?** (keh oh-rah eh) (*What time is it?*)
2. **Che ore sono?** (keh oh-reh soh-noh) (*What time is it?*)

Another way of asking politely for the time follows:

Scusi, mi può dire l'ora, per favore? (skooh-zee mee pwoh dee-reh loh-rah pehr fah-voh-reh) (*Excuse me, can you please tell me the time?*)

If the hour is *singular*, you answer with the singular verb:

È l'una. (eh looh-nah) (*It's one o'clock.*) **È mezzanotte.** (eh medz-ah-noht-teh) (*It's midnight.*)

È mezzogiorno. (eh medz-oh-johr-noh) (*It's noon.*)

If the time is plural (i.e., more than one), just change your verb from “**è**” (eh) (it is) to “**sono**” (soh-noh) (“they are,” literally, to reflect the plural **ore** [oh-reh] — hours.)

Sono le due. (soh-noh leh dooh-eh). (*It's two o'clock.*)

Sono le diciotto. (soh-noh leh deech-oht-toh) (*It's six p.m.*)

Did you notice the use of military time in the previous example? In Italy, the 24-hour clock is used all the time, from movie times to plane and train schedules.

You can also add on when necessary some specifics, such as the examples that follow:

e un quarto (eh oohn qwahr-toh) (*a quarter past*)

e mezzo (eh *mehdz-oh*) (*half past*)

e tre quarti (eh *treh kwahr-tee*) (*three-quarters past*)

e tredici (eh *treh-dee-chee*) (*thirteen past*)

Asking what time something begins

Of course, sometimes you'd like to take the conversation about time a little farther. Frequently we ask what time something begins. Just add the preposition "a" onto the above questions and answers for telling time. Look here:

A che ora inizia la partita? (ah keh *oh-rah ee-neets-ee-yah lah pahr-tee-tah*)
(*What time does the game begin?*)

And to answer . . .

All'una. (ahl-*loooh-nah*) (*At one.*)

Alle dieci. (ahl-*leh dyeh-chee*) (*At ten.*)

A mezzogiorno. (ah *medz-oh-johr-noh*) (*At noon.*)

(Note that the preposition "a" contracts with the definite article that precedes the number.)

Let's take a look at some of these terms in everyday usage.

Using the 24-hour clock

All schedules and posted time in Italy use a 24-hour clock, from trains and planes, to movies to concerts. It's a good idea to review how the 24-hour clock works, especially when you're at a train or bus station. The word for clock and watch is **orologio** (oh-roh-*loh-joh*). So from midnight to 12:00 noon the hours are the same, but at 1:00 p.m. it becomes 13 hours, or **le tredici** (leh *treh-dee-chee*). 2:00 p.m. becomes **le quattordici** (leh *kwaht-tohr-dee-chee*), and so on.

So let's say you arrive at the train station and want to know what time the trains heading down to Naples are. Here are some options: **6:37 (le sei e trentasette)** (leh sey eh *trehn-tah-seht-teh*) (6:37 a.m.); **17:23 (le diciassette e ventitrè)** (leh *deech-ahs-seht-teh eh vohn-tee-treh*) (5:23 p.m.). And the same system goes for shop and museum hours, buses, and movie and theater times.

Talkin' the Talk

Giancarlo and Daniele, two Roman university students, are in the piazza chatting about a concert tomorrow being held at the Circus Maximus.

Giancarlo: **Sai a che ora c'è il concerto dei Pink Floyd domani?**
sahy ah keh oh-rah cheh eel kon-chehr-toh dehy Pink Floyd doh-mah-nee
Do you know what time the Pink Floyd concert is tomorrow?

Daniele: **Certo! Inizia alle 10 di sera.**
chehr-toh ee-neets-ee-ah ahl-leh dyeh-chee dee seh-rah.
Of course! It starts at 10:00 p.m.

Giancarlo: **A proposito, che ore sono adesso?**
ah proh-poh-zee-toh keh oh-reh soh-noh ah-dehs-soh
By the way, what time is it now?

Daniele: **Sono le due e mezzo in punto.**
soh-noh leh dooh-eh eh medz-oh een poohn-toh
It's 2:30 on the dot.

Giancarlo: **O dio! Sono in ritardo per l'esame!**
oh dee-oh soh-noh een ree-tahr-doh pehr
leh-zah-meh
Oh God! I'm late for the exam!

Chatting about the Weather

Whenever you're in conversational trouble and don't know what to say, you can always talk about the weather: "It's very hot today, isn't it?" Or, you can ask, "Is Spring your rainy season?" Talking about the weather can save your conversation in many situations!

Because the weather is such an important topic, you must be armed with the necessary vocabulary. In this section, we talk about the **quattro stagioni** (*kwaht-troh stah-joh-nee*) (*four seasons*).



Weather wise

Italy is a fortunate country, at least as far as weather is concerned. During at least three of the four seasons, it has a mild climate and gets a lot of sun.

The summers are for the most part warm — sometimes *too* hot. The winters can be very cold, but snow is rare, except for primarily in the mountains of north and central Italy, but as far south as Calabria.

Summer in the cities is generally terribly hot, so most Italians take their vacation in August and flee to cooler places: the sea or the lakes or the mountains. As a matter of fact, in August, it is hard to find actual residents in the big cities. The only people you find there are likely to be tourists and those Italians who have to work.

The fact that both the famous concertos by Antonio Vivaldi (ahn-toh-nee-oh vee-vahl-dee) and an oh-so-good pizza are named Quattro stagioni is no accident. Both are subdivided into four parts, and each part refers to one season.

- ✓ **primavera** (pree-mah-veh-rah) (*spring*)
- ✓ **estate** (ehs-tah-teh) (*summer*)
- ✓ **autunno** (ou-toohn-noh) (*autumn; fall*)
- ✓ **inverno** (in-vehr-noh) (*winter*)

Talkin' the Talk



Mr. Brancato and Ms. Roe, seatmates on a plane, are talking about the weather.

Ms. Roe:

Le piace Milano?
leh pyah-cheh mee-lah-noh
Do you like Milan?

Sig. Brancato:

Sì, ma non il clima.
see mah nohn eel k/ee-mah
Yes, but not its climate.

Ms. Roe: **Fa molto freddo?**
 fah mohl-toh frehd-doh
 Is it very cold?

Sig. Brancato: **In inverno sì.**
 een een-vehr-noh see
 In winter it is.

Ms. Roe: **E piove molto, no?**
 eh pyoh-veh mohl-toh noh
 And it rains a lot, doesn't it?

Sig. Brancato: **Sì, e c'è sempre la nebbia.**
 see eh cheh sehm-preh lah nehb-bee-ah
 Yes, and there is always fog.

Ms. Roe: **Com' è il clima a Palermo?**
 kohm-eh eel klee-mah ah pah-lehr-moh
 What's Palermo's climate like?

Sig. Brancato: **Temperato, mediterraneo.**
 tehm-peh-rah-toh meh-dee-tehr-rah-neh-oh
 Temperate, Mediterranean.

Ms. Roe: **Non fa mai freddo?**
 nohn fah mahy frehd-doh
 Is it never cold?

Sig. Brancato: **Quasi mai.**
 kwah-zee mahy
 Almost never.



An expression that shows a difference between cultures is: **Una rondine non fa primavera** (*ooh-nah-rohn-dee-neh nohn fah pree-mah-veh-rah*) (*One swallow does not a summer make*). Note the difference; in English, the expression refers to summer; in Italian it refers to spring. This difference may be due to the fact that the birds come earlier in Italy and later to other countries.

Talkin' the Talk

Our friends Il signor Brancato and Ms. Roe, airplane seatmates, are still talking about the weather.

Ms. Roe: **E l'estate a Milano com'è?**
 e lehs-tah-teh ah mee-lah-noh coh-m-eh
 What's the summer like in Milan?

Sig. Brancato: **Molto calda e lunga.**
 mohl-toh kahl-dah eh loohn-gah
 Very hot and long.

Ms. Roe: **E la primavera?**
 eh lah pree-mah-veh-rah
 And the spring?

Sig. Brancato: **La mia stagione preferita.**
 lah mee-ah stah-joh-neh preh-feh-ree-tah
 My favorite season.

Ms. Roe: **Davvero?**
 dahn-veh-roh
 Really?

Sig. Brancato: **Sì, perché è mite.**
 see pehr-keh eh mee-teh
 Yes, because it's mild.

Ms. Roe: **Come l'estate in Canada.**
 koh-meh lehs-tah-teh een kah-nah-dah
 Like the fall in Canada.

When you're talking about the weather, the following expressions, which are very idiomatic, will make you sound like a heritage speaker!

- ✓ **Fa un caldo terribile!** (fah oohn kahl-doh tehr-ree-bee-leh) (*It's terribly hot!*)
- ✓ **Oggi il sole spacca le pietre!** (ohj-jee eel soh-leh spahk-kah leh pyeh-treh) (*The sun today is breaking the stones!*)
- ✓ **Fa un freddo cane!** (fah oohn frehd-doh kah-neh) (*It's terribly cold!*)
- ✓ **Fa un freddo/un caldo da morire!** (fah oohn frehd-doh/oon kahl-doh dah moh-ree-reh) (*It's deadly cold/warm!*)



Da morire (dah moh-ree-reh) (*deadly*) is a typical expression used for emphasis in Italian. You can use it in all kinds of situations: For example, **sono stanco da morire** (soh-noh stahn-koh dah moh-ree-reh) (*I'm dead tired*) or **ho una sete da morire** (oh ooh-nah seh-teh dah moh-ree-reh) (*I'm so thirsty I could die*).

Talkin' the Talk

Back in the plane, there is more small talk about the weather as the plane goes in for its landing.

Voice over the loudspeaker: **Signore e Signori!**
see-nyoh-reh eh see-nyoh-ree
Ladies and gentlemen!

Sig. Brancato: **Che succede?**
kee sooh-cheh-deh
What's up?

Voice: **Stiamo atterrando a Milano Malpensa.**
stee-ah-moh aht-tehr-rahn-doh ah mee-lah-noh
mahl-pehn-sah
We're landing now at Milan Malpensa.

Sig. Brancato: **Meno male!**
meh-noh mah-leh
Thank goodness!

Voice: **Il cielo è coperto.**
eel cheh-loh eh koh-pehr-toh
The sky is overcast.

Ms. Roe: **Come al solito!**
koh-meh ahl soh-lee-toh
As usual!

Voice: **E la temperatura è di cinque gradi.**
eh lah tehm-peh-rah-tooh-rah eh dee cheen-kweh
grah-dee
And the temperature is five degrees.

You probably know that in Europe the Celsius scale is used to measure temperature. So, in the preceding dialogue, "five degrees" converts to 41 degrees Fahrenheit.

Words to Know

<i>come al solito</i>	<u>koh-meh ahl</u> <u>soh-lee-toh</u>	as usual
<i>umido</i>	<u>ooh-mee-doh</u>	humid
<i>tempo incerto [m]</i>	<u>tehm-poh</u> <u>een-chehr-toh</u>	uncertain weather
<i>nebbia [f]</i>	<u>nehb-bee-ah</u>	fog
<i>mite</i>	<u>mee-teh</u>	mild
<i>visibilità</i>	<u>vee-zee-bee-lee-tah</u>	visibility
<i>gradi</i>	<u>grah-dee</u>	degrees
<i>piove</i>	<u>pyoh-veh</u>	It's raining



Piove sul bagnato (*pyoh-veh soohl bah-nyah-toh*) (Literally: *it rains on the wet*) is an idiomatic expression that Italians use when something positive happens to someone who doesn't really need it. For example, if a millionaire wins the lottery, you may say **piove sul bagnato** to indicate your feeling that you should have won instead.

There's a lovely song about rain, called "Piove," by Jovanotti. Find the song online, listen to it, and sing along to practice your Italian!!

Familiarizing Yourself with the Metric System

The whole world uses the metric system, with the exception of the United States, Liberia, and Burma, so it's a good idea to review this very common system of measurement. You'll need it to understand directions, order bread and cheese at a market, understand your pharmacy prescription, and even figure out how to make your favorite Italian dishes if you're watching Italianfoodnet.com.

Length and Distance

Measures of length go up incrementally as follows. I'm only putting the main ones in, and you can find scores of conversion sites on-line if you'd like to take this farther:

millimetro (meel-lee-meh-troh) (*millimeter*); **centimetro** (chehn-tee-meh-troh) (*centimeter*); **metro** (meh-troh) (*meter*); **chilometro** (kee-loh-meh-troh) (*kilometer*)

To ask how far something is, you may say, “**Quanto dista il Colosseo?**” (*kwahn-toh dees-tah eel koh-lohs-sey-oh*) (*How far is the Colosseum?*)

A typical response could be: “**Duecento metri a destra.**” (*dooh-eh-chehn-toh meh-tree ah dehs-trah*) (*200 meters on the right.*)

Weight

If you're worried about how much weight you're gaining, you can easily pop into a pharmacy in Italy and weigh yourself on one of their scales. (This usually costs **cinquanta centesimi** (cheen-quahn-tah chehn-teh-zee-mee) (*50 cents*). You will get your weight in **chili** (kee-lee) (*kilos*), which you then have to multiply by 2.2, if you're from the United States and the above-mentioned other two countries. Similarly, if you decide you need to buy some very expensive dried **funghi porcini** (foohn-gee pohr-chee-nee) (*porcini mushrooms*) or **tartufi** (tahr-tooh-fee) (*truffles*), you will ask for those by weight, in this case, **grammi** (grahm-mee) (*grams*).

So, incrementally, measures of weight go as follows:

milligrammo (meel-lee-grahm-moh) (*milligram*); **grammo** (grahm-moh) (*gram*); **ettogrammo** (eht-toh-grahm-moh) (*hectogram*); **chilogrammo** (kee-loh-grahm-moh) (*kilogram*); **quintale** (kwin-tah-leh) (*quintal*); **tonnellata** (tohn-nehl-lah-tah) (*ton*).

Then there are the **millilitro** (meel-lee-lee-troh) (*milliliter*) and **litro** (lee-troh) (*liter*) with **mezzo litro** (medz-zoh lee-troh) (*half liter*) also thrown in here for those individual-serving water bottles.

Talkin' the Talk

Sarah, an American high school student with two years of Italian, is doing a home stay with an Italian family in Castellaneta this year. Here is a piece of her first dinner conversation with her new host family: They are getting to know each other. Is she glad she learned her numbers!

- Host Mom: **Sarah, quanti fratelli hai?**
sah-rah kwahn-tee frah-teh/-lee ahy
Sara, how many brothers and sisters do you have?
- Sarah: **Ho un fratello e due sorelle.**
oh oohn frah-teh-loh eh dooh-eh soh-reh/-leh
I have one brother and two sisters.
- Host Mom: **Quanti anni hanno?**
kwahn-tee ahn-nee ahn-noh
How old are they?
- Sarah: **Mio fratello David ha dodici anni.**
mee-oh frah-teh/-loh David ah doh-dee-chee ahn-nee
My brother David is 12.
Mia sorella Rebecca ne ha diciannove, e mia sorella Naomi ne ha 21.
mee-ah soh-reh/-lah Rebecca neh hah deech-ahn-noh-veh eh mee-ah soh-reh/-lah Naomi neh ah vohn-tooh-noh.
My sister Rebecca is 19 and my sister Naomi is 21.
- Host Mom: **E quando è il tuo compleanno?**
eh kwahn-doh eh eel tooh-oh kohm-pleh-ahn-noh
And when is your birthday?
- Sarah: **Il ventidue maggio.**
eel vohn-tee-dooh-eh mahj-joh
May 22.
- Host Mom: **Quanto dista casa tua da New York?**
kwahn-toh dees-tah cah-sah tooh-ah dah New York?
How far is your house from New York?
- Sarah: **Centoventi chilometri più o meno.**
chehn-toh-vehn-tee kee-loh-meh-tree pyooh oh meh-noh
120 kilometers, more or less.
O che bel cane! Che razza è?
oh keh behl kah-neh. keh rats-tsah eh
Oh, what a beautiful dog! What kind of dog is he?
- Host Mom: **è un pastore maremmano.**
eh oohn pahs-toh-reh mah-rehm-mah-noh
He's a Maremma Shepherd.
- Sarah: **Quanto pesa?**
kwahn-toh peh-zah
How much does he weigh?

Host Mom: **Cinquanta chili.**
cheen-kwahn-tah kee-lee
50 kilos.

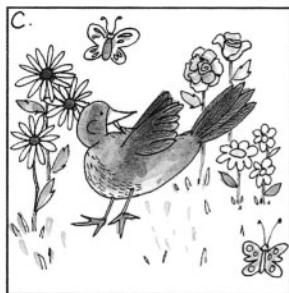
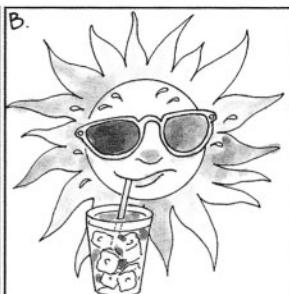
Words to Know

<i>a proposito</i>	<u>ah proh-poh-zee-toh</u>	by the way
<i>anni</i>	<u>ahn-nee</u>	years
<i>chilo</i>	<u>kee-loh</u>	kilo
<i>compleanno</i>	<u>kohm-pleh-ahn-noh</u>	birthday
<i>giorno</i>	<u>johr-noh</u>	day
<i>mese</i>	<u>meh-zeh</u>	month
<i>numero</i>	<u>nooh-mehr-oh</u>	number
<i>pastore</i>	<u>pahs-toh-reh</u>	shepherd
<i>quanti</i>	<u>kwahn-tee</u>	how many
<i>quando</i>	<u>kwahn-doh</u>	when
<i>quanto</i>	<u>kwahn-toh</u>	how much



Fun and Games

Take a look at this picture and name the four seasons. For a more challenging task, name the months that comprise each of the seasons. See Appendix D for the answer key.



Part II

Italian in Action

The 5th Wave

By Rich Tennant



"Honey, can you look in the phrase book and tell me how 'scrambled' is pronounced in Italian?"

In this part . . .

These chapters help you with everyday activities, such as:

- ✓ Doing household chores
- ✓ Asking directions
- ✓ Eating and drinking, Italian style
- ✓ Shopping for clothes and shoes
- ✓ Going to concerts, museums, and other cultural events
- ✓ Making and taking phone calls
- ✓ Enjoying some outdoor recreation

So choose your interest and put your Italian into action!

Chapter 5

Casa dolce casa (Home Sweet Home)

In This Chapter

- Looking for an apartment
- Decorating your home
- Cleaning your house
- Navigating the kitchen

This chapter introduces you to the different vocabulary and situations associated with the house, from renting an apartment to furnishing it to setting the table and eating in it. Just as Italy leads the way in the fashion industry, so too does it enjoy a well-deserved reputation for its fine furnishings and interior spaces.

This chapter walks you through some essential household chores like cleaning and setting the table, and supplies you with the vocabulary for some everyday utensils and appliances. I even give you a quick cooking lesson for some pasta later in the chapter.

Ordering Ordinals

When giving and receiving directions to your home as well as when talking about the different floors of a building, you need a command of **numeri ordinali** (*nooh-meh-ree ohr-dee-nah-lee*) (*ordinal numbers*). Because ordinal numbers are adjectives, they agree with the noun they describe. For example, you use the feminine forms when referring to **via** (*vee-ah*) or **strada** (*strah-dah*) (*street*), which are feminine nouns, and the masculine form when talking about a **piano** (*pyah-noh*) (*floor*). Table 5-1 includes the ordinal numbers in the singular masculine form followed by the singular feminine form.

Table 5-1**Ordinal Numbers**

Italian	Pronunciation	Translation
il primo/la prima	eel pree-moh/lah pree-mah	the first
il secondo/la seconda	eel seh-kohn-doh/lah seh-kohn-dah	the second
il terzo/la terza	eel tehr-tsoh/lah tehr-tsah	the third
il quarto/la quarta	eel kwahr-toh/lah kwahr-tah	the fourth
il quinto/la quinta	eel kween-toh/lah kween-tah	the fifth
il sesto/la sesta	eel sehs-toh/lah sehs-tah	the sixth
il settimo/la settima	eel seht-tee-moh/lah seht-tee-mah	the seventh
l'ottavo/l'ottava	loht-tah-voh/loht-tah-vah	the eighth
il nono/la nona	eel noh-noh/lah noh-nah	the ninth
il decimo/la decima	eel deh-chee-moh/lah deh-chee-mah	the tenth
il tredicesimo/la tredicesima	eel treh-dee-cheh-zee-moh	the thirteenth
il ventesimo/la ventesimo	eel vohn-teh-zee-moh	the twentieth
il quarantottesimo/la quarantottesima	eel qwah-rahn-toht-teh-zee-moh	the forty-eighth



After tenth, you take the whole number, drop the final vowel, and add **esimo/a/e/i** (ehz-ee-moh/ah/eh/ee).

These examples show you how to use ordinal numbers in sentences:

È la terza strada a sinistra. (eh lah tehr-tsah strah-dah ah see-nees-trah) (*It's the third street on the left.*)

Abitiamo al nono piano. (ah-bee-tyah-moh ahl noh-noh pyah-noh) (*We live on the ninth floor.*)

Non so se abitino all'undicesimo o al dodicesimo piano. (nohn soh seh ah-bee-tee-noh ahl-loohn-dee-cheh-zee-moh oh ahl doh-dee-cheh-zee-moh pyah-noh) (*I don't know if they live on the eleventh or twelfth floor.*)



All Italian buildings begin on the **pianterreno** (pyahn-tehr-reh-noh) or ground floor. So the first floor (**il primo piano**) (eel pree-moh pyah-noh) corresponds to a North American second floor, a second floor (**il secondo piano**) (eel seh-kohn-doh pyah-noh) corresponds to a North American third floor, and so on.

Types of Italian housing

In Italy, there are different types of dwellings where people live, the most common being the **appartamento** (ahp-pahr-tah-mehn-toh). An apartment is usually in a **condominio** (kohn-doh-meen-ee-oh) (condominium building) or an old refurbished **palazzo** (pah-lats-soh). A **villa** (veel-lah) is a free-standing house, usually in the country or by the sea. The **villa** is

generally someone's second home. Some people opt to live in **campagna** (een kahm-pahn-yah) (the countryside). This is not the same as living in the suburbs in the United States. As a matter of fact, **periferia** (peh-ree-fehr-ee-ah) (suburbs which are neither country nor city) has a negative connotation in Italy.

Inhabiting Your Home

Italians usually speak of **la casa** (lah kah-zah) (*the house; the home*), even though they often mean **l'appartamento** (lahp-pahr-tah-mehn-toh) (*the apartment*). Italians of all social strata live in apartment buildings in small towns and large cities rather than in single-family dwellings or in the suburbs. Houses can be rented as **monolocali** (moh-noh-loh-kah-lee) (*studio apartments*), **bilocali** (bee-loh-kah-lee) (*two-room apartments*), or as an **appartamento** with a specified number of **camere da letto** (kah-meh-reh dah leht-toh) (*bedrooms*).

Hunting for an apartment



When you're looking for an apartment or a house to rent for the summer, you need to know about the rooms in the house and the size of the apartment. The size is given in square meters.

You can find an apartment or a house on your own through newspaper **annunci** (ahn-noohn-chee) (*advertisements*), or you can turn to **un'agenzia immobiliare** (oohn-ah-jehn-tsee-ah eem-moh-bee-lyah-reh) (*a real estate agency*) for help. You can also find housing by searching online.

You need to know if the **casa** is **ammobiliata** (ah-moh-beel-yah-tah) (*furnished*), as most short-term rentals are. If you're renting for the long term, many times the house will be completely empty, devoid of even a fridge. **L'aria condizionata** (lah-ree-ah kohn-deets-ee-ohn-ah-tah) (*air conditioning*) is an important feature to look for in the summer months, although many places don't have it.

These words can help you specify your wishes concerning the number and types of rooms and as well as location and amenities.

- ✓ **l'ascensore** (lah-shehn-soh-reh) (*the elevator*)
- ✓ **l'angolo cottura** (lahn-goh-loh koht-tooh-rah) (*cooking area, such as in a studio apartment*)
- ✓ **il bagno** (eel bah-nyoh) (*the bathroom*)
- ✓ **il balcone** (eel bahl-koh-neh) (*the balcony*)
- ✓ **la camera da letto** (lah kah-meh-rah dah leht-toh) (*the bedroom*)
- ✓ **la cantina** (lah kahn-tee-nah) (*the cellar*)
- ✓ **la cucina** (lah kooh-chee-nah) (*the kitchen*)
- ✓ **la doccia** (lah doch-chah) (*the shower*)
- ✓ **la finestra** (lah fee-nehs-trah) (*the window*)
- ✓ **il garage** (eel gah-raj) (*the garage*)
- ✓ **la mansarda** (mahn-sahr-dah) (*the attic*)
- ✓ **la piscina** (lah pee-shee-nah) (*the pool*)
- ✓ **il soggiorno** (eel sohj-johr-noh) (*the living room*)
- ✓ **la stanza** (lah stahn-tsah) (*the room*)
- ✓ **la sala da pranzo** (lah sah-lah dah prahn-zoh) (*the dining room*)
- ✓ **lo studio** (loh stooh-dee-oh) (*the office or study*)
- ✓ **la vasca da bagno** (lah vahs-kah dah bahn-yoh) (*the bath tub*)



Using the verb “to rent” may be somewhat confusing. The confusion comes from this: As in English, both **i padroni di casa** (ee pah-droh-nee dee kah-sah) (*landlords*) and **gli inquilini** (lyee een-kwee-lee-nee) (*tenants*) use the verb **affittare** (ahf-feet-tah-reh) (*to rent*). To avoid misunderstandings, landlords sometimes say **dare in affitto** (dah-reh een ahf-feet-toh) and tenants use **prendere in affitto** (prehn-deh-reh een ahf-feet-toh). Other useful verbs for these types of actions might include: **subaffittare** (soohb-ahf-fee-tah-reh) (*to sublet*), **traslocare** (trahs-loh-kah-reh) (*to change houses*), and **trasferirsi** (trahs-feh-reer-see) (*to move from one city to another*).

Talkin' the Talk

Flaminia is looking for an apartment, and Pietro helps her read through the newspaper ads. After a few minutes, Pietro thinks he's found something interesting.

- Pietro: **Affittasi appartamento zona centro.**
ahf-feet-tah-see ahp-pahr-tah-mehn-toh dzoh-nah
chehn-troh
Apartment for rent, central area.
- Flaminia: **Continua!**
kohn-tee-nooh-ah
Go on!
- Pietro: **Due stanze, balcone, garage.**
dooh-eh stahn-tseh bahl-koh-neh gah-rahj
Two rooms, balcony, garage.
- Flaminia: **Perfetto!**
pehr-feht-toh
Perfect!
- Pietro: **Tranquillo, in Via Treviso.**
trahn-kweel-loh een vee-ah treh-vee-zoh
Quiet, on Treviso Street.
- Flaminia: **Chiamo subito. Non è molto centrale.**
kyah-moh sooh-bee-toh nohn eh mohl-toh
chehn-trah-leh
I'll call immediately. It's not very central.
- Pietro: **No, ma costa sicuramente meno.**
noh mah kohs-tah see-kooh-rah-mehn-teh meh-noh
No, but it's surely cheaper.
- Flaminia: **È vero.**
eh veh-roh
It's true!
- Pietro: **Chiama!**
kyah-mah
Call!

When you see a newspaper ad that interests you, reacting immediately is always best — **Chi prima arriva macina** (kee pree-mah ahr-ree-vah mah-chee-nah) (*First come first served.*) You don't want to hear **Mi dispiace**, **è già affittato** (mee dees-pyah-cheh eh jah ahf-feet-tah-toh) (*I'm sorry, it's already rented.*)

You may want to know the following words when searching for an apartment (and any other time you are considering making a purchase). **Caro** (kah-roh) means “expensive,” and **economico** (eh-koh-noh-mee-koh) means “cheap,” although Italians seldom use the word **economico**. Rather, most people say **costa poco** (kohs-tah poh-koh) (*it costs little*) or **non è caro** (nohn eh kah-roh) (*it's not expensive*). When you want to compare costs, you say **costa meno** (kohs-tah meh-noh) (*it costs less*) or **costa di più** (kohs-tah dee pyooh) (*it costs more*). Other questions you might want to ask include: **A che piano è?** (ah keh pyah-noh eh) (*What floor is it on?*) and **C'è l'ascensore?** (cheh lah-shehn-soh-reh) (*Is there an elevator?*)

Talkin' the Talk

Flaminia calls the number given in the ad to find out more about the apartment.

Landlord: **Pronto!**
 prohn-toh
 Hello!

Flaminia: **Buongiorno, chiamo per l' annuncio. Quant'è l'affitto?**
 bwohn-johr-noh kyah-moh pehr lahn-noohn-choh
 kwahn-teh lah-fit-toh
 Good morning! I'm calling about the ad. How much
 is the rent?

Landlord: **600 euro al mese.**
 sehy-chehn-toh eh-ooh-roh ahl meh-zeh
 Six hundred euros per month.

Flaminia: **Riscaldamento e acqua sono compresi?**
 rees-kahl-dah-mehn-toh eh ahk-wah soh-noh
 kohm-preh-zee
 Are heat and water included?

Landlord: **No, sono nelle spese di condominio.**
 noh soh-noh nehl-leh speh-zeh dee
 kohn-doh-mee-nee-oh
 No, they are included in the maintenance.

Flaminia:	Sono alte? <i>soh-noh ahl-teh</i> Are they high?
Landlord:	Dipende dal consumo, come l'elettricità. <i>dee-pehn-deh dahl kohn-sooh-moh koh-meh leh-leht-tree-chee-tah</i> It depends on your consumption, the same as electricity.
Flaminia:	Quando lo posso vedere? <i>kwahn-doh loh pohs-soh veh-deh-reh</i> When can I see it?
Landlord:	Subito, se vuole. <i>sooh-bee-toh seh vwoh-leh</i> Immediately, if you want.

You'll probably have many other questions if you decide to rent an apartment. Table 5-2 lists some of the more common questions, and some possible answers.

Table 5-2 Common House-Hunting Questions and Answers

Questions	Possible Answers
È occupato? eh ohk-kooh-pah-toh <i>Is it occupied?</i>	No, è libero. noh eh <i>lee-beh-roh</i> <i>No, it's vacant.</i> Sì, per il momento. see pehr eel moh-mehn-toh <i>Yes, at the moment.</i> È libero fra sei mesi. eh <i>lee-beh-roh frah say meh-zee.</i> <i>It will be vacant in six months.</i>
Bisogna lasciare un deposito? bee-zoh-nyah lah-shah-reh oohn deh-poh-zee-toh <i>Is it necessary to put down a deposit?</i>	Sì, un mese d'affitto. see oohn meh-zeh dahf-feet-toh <i>Yes, one month's rent.</i> Sì, la cauzione see lah kow-tsee-oh-neh. <i>Yes, we require a security deposit.</i>
Pagli molto per la casa? pah-ghee mohl-toh pehr lah kah-sah <i>Do you pay a lot for your house?</i>	No, l'affitto è veramente basso. noh lah-fet-toh eh veh-rah-mehn-teh bahs-soh <i>No, the rent is really low.</i>
La casa è tua? lah kah-sah eh tooh-ah <i>Do you own your home?</i>	No, sono in affitto. noh soh-noh een ahf-feet-toh <i>No, I rent.</i> Sì, l'ho comprata l'anno scorso. see loh kohm-prah-tah lahn-noh skahr-soh <i>Yes, I bought it last year.</i> Ho fatto un mutuo. oh faht-toh oohn mooh-tooh-oh / <i>I took out a mortgage.</i>

Sprucing up your apartment

When you finally find an apartment, you probably want to furnish it beautifully. The following dialogues show you some Italians talking about their furniture.

Talkin' the Talk

Valerio has found a new, **non ammobiliato** (*nohn ahm-moh-bee-lyah-toh*) (*unfurnished*) apartment. His friend Eugenia is asking him what he needs.

Valerio: **Ho trovato un appartamento! Devo comprare dei mobili.**

oh troh-vah-toh oohn ahp-pahr-tah-mehn-toh
deh-voh kohm-prah-reh deh moh-bee-lee
I just found an apartment! I have to buy
some furniture.

Eugenia: **Tutto?**
tooht-toh
(Do you need) everything?

Valerio: **No, per la camera da letto il letto e l'armadio.**
noh pehr lah kah-meh-rah dah leht-toh eel /leht-toh
eh lahr-mah-dee-oh
No, for the bedroom a bed and a wardrobe.

Eugenia: **Nient'altro?**
nee-ehnt-ahl-troh
Anything else?

Valerio: **Ho due comodini e una cassetiera.**
oh dooh-eh koh-moh-dee-nee eh ooh-nah
kahs-seht-tyeh-rah
I have two bedside tables and a chest of drawers.

Eugenia: **E per il soggiorno?**
eh pehr eel sohj-johr-noh
Do you have furniture for the living room?

Valerio: **Ho una poltrona. Mi mancano ancora il divano e un tavolino.**
oh ooh-nah pohl-troh-nah mee mah-nkah-noh ahn-koh-rah eel dee-vah-noh eh oohn tah-voh-lee-noh
Only one chair. I still need a couch and a coffee table.

La signora Giorgetti wants to buy secondhand furniture. She reads an interesting ad:

Vendesi (*vehn-deh-see*) (*For sale*): **tavolo e due sedie** (*tah-voh-loh eh dooh-eh seh-dee-eh*) (*table and two chairs*) **stile Liberty** (*stee-leh lee-behr-tee*) (*Liberty style*)

“**Quello che cercavo!**” (*kwehl-loh keh chehr-kah-voh*) (“*Just what I was looking for!*”), she exclaims. She immediately calls the number on the ad. Of course, she needs answers to some questions:

Sono autentici? (*soh-noh ou-tehn-tee-chee*) (*Are they authentic?*)

Sì, comprati ad un’ asta. (*see kohm-prah-tee ahd oohn-ahs-tah*) (*Yes, [they were] bought at an auction.*)

Sono in buono stato? (*soh-noh een bwoh-noh stah-toh*) (*Are they in good condition?*)

Venga a vederli! (*vehn-gah ah veh-dehr-lee*) (*Come and see them!*)

Furnishing your new pad

Table 5-3 divides the different pieces of **i mobili** (*ee moh-bee-lee*) (furniture) and other items according to the rooms.

Table 5-3

Room Furniture Translation

<i>il soggiorno/il salotto (eel soj-joh-noh) (eel sah-loht-toh)</i>	<i>the living room</i>	
	<i>il divano (eel dee-vah-noh)</i>	<i>the couch</i>
	<i>la poltrona (lah pohl-troh-nah)</i>	<i>the arm-chair</i>
	<i>il tappeto (eel tahp-peht-toh)</i>	<i>the rug</i>
	<i>lo scaffale (loh skahf-fah-leh)</i>	<i>the book-shelf</i>
<i>la cucina (lah kooh-chee-nah)</i>	<i>the kitchen</i>	
	<i>il frigorifero (eel free-goh-ree-fehr-oh)</i>	<i>the refrigerator</i>
	<i>il grembiule (el grehm-byooh-leh)</i>	<i>apron</i>

(continued)

Table 5-3 (continued)

<i>la cucina (lah kooh-chee-nah)</i>	<i>the kitchen</i>	
	<i>la lavastoviglie (lah lah-vah-stoh-veel-yeh)</i>	<i>the dishwasher</i>
	<i>il lavello (eel lah-vehl-loh)</i>	<i>the sink</i>
	<i>le sedie (leh seh-dee-eh)</i>	<i>the chairs</i>
	<i>il tavolo (eel tah-voh-loh)</i>	<i>the table</i>
	<i>la credenza (lah creh-dehn-zah)</i>	<i>the credenza</i>
	<i>i pensili (ee pehn-see-lee)</i>	<i>cabinets</i>
<i>la camera da letto (lah kah-meh-rah dah leht-toh)</i>	<i>the bedroom</i>	
	<i>il letto (eel leht-toh)</i>	<i>bed</i>
	<i>il comodino (eel koh-moh-dee-noh)</i>	<i>nightstand</i>
	<i>l'armadio (lahr-mah-dee-oh)</i>	<i>armoire</i>
	<i>il comò (eel koh-moh)</i>	<i>dresser</i>
	<i>i cuscini (ee kooh-shee-nee)</i>	<i>pillows</i>
	<i>la lampada (lah /ahm-pah-dah)</i>	<i>lamp</i>
	<i>il lenzuolo/le lenzuola (eel lehn-zwoh-lo/leh lehn-zwoh-lah)</i>	<i>sheet/sheets</i>
	<i>le tende (leh tehn-deh)</i>	<i>curtains</i>
<i>il bagno (eel bahn-yoh)</i>	<i>bathroom</i>	
	<i>Il bidet (eel bee-deh)</i>	<i>bidèt</i>
	<i>la tazza (lah tats-sah)</i>	<i>toilet bowl</i>
	<i>la doccia (lah doch-chah)</i>	<i>shower</i>
	<i>l'asiugamano/gli asci-umagmani (lah-shooh-gah-mah-noh) (lyee ah-shooh-gah-mah-nee)</i>	<i>towel/s</i>
	<i>Il lavandino (eel lah-vahn-dee-noh)</i>	<i>sink</i>
	<i>la doccia (lah doch-chah)</i>	<i>shower</i>
	<i>la vasca da bagno (lah vahs-kah dah bahn-yoh)</i>	<i>bathtub</i>

Words to Know

accanto	ahk- <u>kahn</u> -toh	next to
davanti a	dah- <u>vahn</u> -tee ah	in front of
dietro	dee- <u>eh</u> -troh	behind
sopra	<u>soh</u> -prah	on top of
sotto	<u>soht</u> -toh	under
di lato	dee <u>lah</u> -toh	on its side
dentro	<u>dehn</u> -troh	inside
fuori	<u>fwoh</u> -ree	outside

Housekeeping in style

Italians do love their **elettrodomestici** (eh-leht-troh-doh-mehs-tee-chee) (*household appliances*), and there are many sleek Italian brands for these things. Dryers are very rare in Italy because of the enormous amount of electricity they consume, but many households now have dishwashers. Some essential **elettrodomestici** include:

l'aspirapolvere	lahs-peh-rah-pohl-veh-reh	<i>vacuum cleaner</i>
la lavatrice	lah lah-vah-tree-cheh	<i>washing machine</i>
la lavastoviglie	lah lah-vah-stoh-veel-yeh	<i>the dishwasher</i>
il frullatore	eel froohl-ah-toh-reh	<i>blender</i>
il tostapane	eel tohs-tah-pah-neh	<i>toaster</i>
il frigorifero	eel free-goh-ree-fehr-oh	<i>the refrigerator</i>
i fornelli	ee fohr-nehl-lee	<i>stove-top (burners)</i>
il forno	eel fohr-noh	<i>oven</i>
il microonde	eel mee-kroh-ohn-deh	<i>microwave oven</i>

Talkin' the Talk

A mother and son are preparing for dinner. She asks him to set the table and sweep the floor in the **sala da pranzo** (*sah-lah dah prahn-zoh*) (dining room) before their guests arrive.

Mamma: **Salvatore, per favore, passa la scopa prima che arrivino gli ospiti.**
sahl-vah-toh-reh pehr fah-voh-reh pahs-sah lah skoh-pah pree-mah keh ahr-ree-vee-noh lyee ohs-pee-tee
Salvatore, please sweep before the guests arrive.

Salvatore: **Va bene, mamma.**
vah beh-neh mahm-mah
Okay, Mom.

Che altro?
keh ahl-troh
What else?

Mamma: **Apparecchia il tavolo, caro.**
ahp-pah-rek-kyah eel tah-voh-loh kah-roh
Set the table, dear.

Salvatore: **Cosa ci metto?**
koh-zah chee meht-toh
What should I put out?

Mamma: **Metti la tovaglia con i limoni con i suoi tovaglioli.**
meht-tee lah toh-vah-lyah kohn ee lee-moh-nee kohn ee swoi toh-vahl-yoh-lee
Put out the tablecloth with the lemons and the matching napkins.

Salvatore: **Quali piatti?**
kwah-lee pyaht-tee
What dishes?

Mamma: **Quelli di Faenza, il piano e il fondo.**
kwehl-lee dee fahy-enz-ah eel pyah-noh eh eel fohn-doh
The ones from Faenza, the flat ones and the bowls.

Non dimenticare forchette, coltelli, e cucchiai per il brodetto.
nohn dee-mehn-tee-kah-reh fohr-keht-teh kohl-tehl-lee eh koohk-kyahy pehr eel broh-deht-toh
Don't forget forks, knives and spoons for the fish stew.

- Salvatore: **Mamma, Non bastano i bicchieri per l'acqua.**
*mahm-mah nohn bahs-tah-noh ee beek-kyeh-ree
pehr lahk-wah
Mom, there aren't enough water glasses.*
- Mamma: **Non importa, li ho qui nella lavastoviglie.**
*nohn eem-pohr-tah lee oh kwee nehl-lah
lah-vah-stoh-veel-yeh
That's okay. I have them here in the dishwasher.*
- Aggiungiamo anche i bicchieri da vino. Grazie.**
*aj-joohn-jah-moh ahn-keh ee beek-kyeh-ree dah
vee-noh grah-tssee-eh
Let's add wine glasses, too. Thanks.*

Words to Know

apparecchiare	ahp-pahr-ehk- <u>kyah</u> -reh	to set the table
bicchiere/i	beek- <u>kyeh</u> -reh/ee	glass/glasses
coltello/i	kohl-tehl-loh/ee	knife/knives
cucchiaio/chucchiai	koohk- <u>kyahy</u> -oh/ee	spoon/s
il (piatto) fondo	eel <u>fohn</u> -doh	bowl (for soup or pasta)
forchetta/e	fahr-keht-tah/eh	fork/s
il (il piatto) piano	eel <u>pyah</u> -noh	flat dish
piatto/i	<u>pyaht</u> -toh/ee	dish/dishes
scopa	<u>skoh</u> -pah	broom
sparecchiare	spah-rehk- <u>kyah</u> -reh	to clear the table
tovaglia	toh-vahl-yah	table-cloth
tovagliolo/i	toh-vahl-yoh-loh/lee	napkin/s



Did you know that some of the most beautiful ceramics are produced all over Italy? Many are hand-painted works of art unto themselves. Some towns well-known for their ceramics include Faenza (Emilia Romagna), Deruta (Umbria), Vietri (Amalfi Coast), and Caltagirone (Sicily). It might be hard to go into one of these towns and not buy some ceramics to bring back home.

Cooking and cleaning

If you love to **cucinare** (kooh-chee-nah-reh) (*cook*) you will certainly have fun buying your ingredients in an Italian market or supermarket. Maybe you're enrolled in an Italian cooking school in Tuscany this summer. But even if you're not in Italy and like to practice your Italian by listening to Italian cooking channels, you're going to need some essential kitchen words.

Talkin' the Talk



Listen to the following recipe by Amedeo, chef for the **Italiani in cucina** food network. This is only part of the recipe, but enough to get you started on some important kitchen terminology.

Amedeo: **Buongiorno e benvenuti a "Italiani in cucina."** Oggi prepariamo le penne all'arrabbiata per quattro persone.
bwohn johr-noh eh behn-veh-nooh-tee a ee-tahl-ee-ah-nee een kooh-chee-nah ohj-jee preh-pah-ree-ah-moh leh pehn-neh ahl-lahr-rahb-byah-tah pehr kwaht-troh pehr-soh-neh
Hello, and welcome to Italians in the Kitchen.
Today we will be preparing penne all'arrabbiata for four people.

Gli ingredienti sono:
lyee een-greh-dee-ehn-tee soh-noh
The ingredients are:

500 grammi di pomodoro
cheen-kweh-chehn-toh graham-mee dee
poh-moh-doh-roh
500 grams of tomatoes

Mezzo chilo di penne
medz-oh kee-loh dee pehn-neh
Half a kilo of penne

Un cucchiaio di peperoncino
ohn koohk-kyahy-oh dee pe-pehr-ohn-chee-noh
One tablespoon of hot pepper

Olio d'oliva extra vergine
ohl-yoh doh-/ee-vah ehxs-trah vehr-jee-neh
Extra-virgin olive oil

Quattro spicchi di aglio
kwaht-troh speek-kee dee ahl-yoh
Four cloves of garlic

Un mazzetto di prezzemolo
ohn mats-tseht-toh dee prehts-ehm-oh-loh
A small bunch of parsley

Inoltre, avrete bisogno di:
een-ohl-treh ah-vreh-teh bee-zoh-nyoh dee
Furthermore, you will need:

una pentola grande per la pasta
ooh-nah pehn-toh-lah grahn-dah pehr lah pahs-tah
A large pot for the pasta

una padella grande per la salsa
ooh-nah pah-dehl-lah pehr lah sahl-sah
A large pan for the sauce

Sale e pepe
sah-leh eh peh-peh
Salt and pepper

**Inanzitutto fai bollire una pentola grande di acqua
per la pasta.**
*een-ahn-zee-tooh-toh fahy bohl-ee-reh ooh-nah
pehn-toh-lah grahn-deh dee ahk-wah pehr lah
pahs-tah*
First of all, put a large pot of water for the pasta
on to boil.

Doing household chores

Italians do like to keep a spic and span house. I don't know anyone who likes to clean house, but if you've found an Italian roommate and you're going to be dividing the chores, you may as well know how to say some of these things.

Talkin' the Talk

Jenny and Lucia are two new roommates who have just moved in together while attending the University of Bologna. They are dividing the household chores, or **faccende di casa** (fahch-chehn-deh dee kah-za).

Jenny: **Allora, come vogliamo dividere le faccende di casa?**
ahl-loh-rah koh-meh vohl-yah-moh dee-vee-deh-reh leh fach-chehn-deh dee kah-za
So how should we divide the chores?

Lucia: **Facciamo a settimane alternate.**
fach-chah-moh ah seht-tee-mah-neh ahl-tehr-nah-teh
Let's do alternating weeks.

Jenny: **Una buon'idea.**
ooh-nah bwohn-ee-dey-ah
Good idea.

Questa settimana io porto fuori la spazzatura e pulisco il bagno e la cucina.
kwehs-tah seht-tee-mah-nah ee-oh pohr-toh
fwoh-ree lah spats-ah-tooh-rah eh pooh-lees-koh
eel bahn-yoh
This week I'll bring out the garbage and clean
the bathroom and kitchen.

Lucia: **Ed io passo la scopa e l'aspirapolvere e spolvero tutta la casa.**
ehd ee-oh pahs-soh lah skoh-pah eh lahs-peh-rah-pohl-veh-reh eh spohl-veh-roh tooht-tah lah kah-zah
And I'll sweep, vacuum, and dust the whole house.

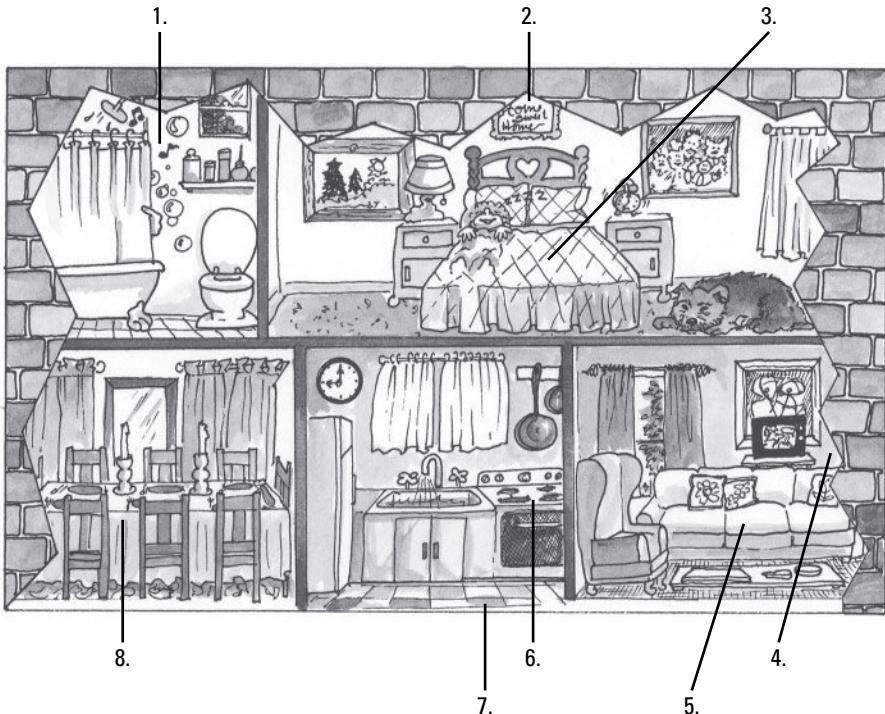
Words to Know

camera	<u>kah-meh-rah</u>	room
lavare i pavimenti	<u>lah-vah-reh ee</u> <u>pah-vee-mehn-tee</u>	to wash the floors
mettere in ordine	<u>meht-teh-reh een</u> <u>ohr-dee-neh</u>	to straighten up
ognuno	<u>ohn-yooh-noh</u>	each person
passare l'aspirapolvere	<u>pahs-sah-reh lahs-pee-</u> <u>rah-pohl-veh-reh</u>	to vacuum
passare la scopa	<u>pahs-sah-reh lah</u> <u>skoh-pah</u>	to sweep
portare fuori la spazzatura	<u>pohr-tah-reh fwoh-ree</u> <u>lah spats-ah-tooh-rah</u>	to take out the garbage
pulire	<u>pooh-lee-reh</u>	to clean
spolverare	<u>spohl-veh-rah-reh</u>	to dust



Fun & Games

This is an easy one! Identify the various rooms and items marked with a solid, numbered line with their Italian names. For extra credit, keep on naming as many items as you can! See Appendix D for the answer key.



Chapter 6

Where Is the Colosseum? Asking Directions

In This Chapter

- Asking for directions
 - Giving directions
 - Understanding directions
-

Have you ever been lost in a foreign city or country? If so, you realize how helpful it is when you know enough of the native language to be able to ask for directions. Knowing the language also enables you to understand the answer. In this chapter, we give you some helpful conversational tips that make it easier to find your way around.

Finding Your Way: Asking for Specific Places

When asking for directions, it's always polite to start your question with one of the following expressions (which are friendly forms of the imperative or command tense):

Mi scusi. (mee skooh-zee) (*Excuse me, you singular, formal*)

Scusi. (skooh-zee) (*Excuse me, you singular, formal*)

Mi scusino. (mee skooh-zee-noh) (*Excuse me, you plural, formal*)

Scusa. (skooh-zah) (*Excuse me, you singular, informal*)

Scusate. (skooh-zah-teh) (*Excuse me, you plural, informal*)

or

Per favore. (pehr fah-voh-reh) (*Please.*)

Un'informazione. (oohn een-fohr-mahts-yoh-neh) (*I need some information.*)

Then you can continue with your questions, something like the following:

- ✓ **Dov'è il Colosseo?** (doh-veh eel koh-lohs-seh-oh) (*Where is the Colosseum?*)
- ✓ **È questa via Garibaldi?** (eh kwehs-tah vee-ah gah-ree-bahl-dee) (*Is this via Garibaldi?*)
- ✓ **Per la stazione?** (pehr lah stah-tsyoh-neh) (*How do I get to the station?*)
- ✓ **Può indicarmi la strada per il centro?** (pwoh een-dee-kahr-mee lah strah-dah pehr eel chehn-troh) (*Can you show me the way downtown?*)
- ✓ **Dove siamo adesso?** (doh-veh see-ah-moh ah-dehs-soh) (*Where are we now?*)
- ✓ **Mi sono perso. Dov'è il duomo?** (mee soh-noh pehr-soh. doh-veh eel dwoh-moh) (*I'm lost; where is the cathedral?*)
- ✓ **È qui vicino La Fontana di Tevi ?** (Eh kwee vee-chee-noh lah fohn-tah-nah dee treh-vee) (*Is the Fountain of Trevi nearby?*)

Some possible answers, and not in any particular order (mix and match according to context!), to the preceding questions are:

- ✓ **Si è proprio qui vicino!** (see eh proh-pree-oh kwee vee-chee-noh) (*Yes, it is very close!*)
- ✓ **Segua la strada principale fino al centro.** (seh-gwah lah strah-dah preen-chee-pah-leh fee-noh ahl chehn-troh) (*Follow the main street to the center of the city.*)
- ✓ **Vada sempre dritto.** (vah-dah sehm-preh dreet-toh) (*Go straight ahead.*)
- ✓ **Dopo il semaforo giri a destra.** (doh-poh eel seh-mah-foh-roh jee-ree ah dehs-trah) (*After the traffic light, turn right.*)
- ✓ **È in fondo a sinistra.** (eh een fohn-doh ah see-nees-trah) (*It's at the end, on the left side.*)
- ✓ **È vicino alla posta.** (eh vee-chee-noh ahl-lah pohs-tah) (*It's next to the post office.*)
- ✓ **Attraversi il ponte, poi c'è una piazza e lì lo vede.** (aht-trah-vehr-see eel pohn-teh poi cheh ooh-nah pyahts-tsah eh lee loh veh-deh) (*Cross the bridge, then there's a square and there you see it.*)
- ✓ **È la terza strada a sinistra.** (eh lah tehr-tsah strah-dah ah see-nees-trah) (*It's the third street on the left.*)
- ✓ **È dopo il terzo semaforo a destra.** (eh doh-poh eel tehr-tsoh seh-mah-foh-roh ah dehs-trah) (*It's after the third light, on the right.*)
- ✓ **Ha sbagliato strada.** (ah sbah-lyah-toh strah-dah) (*You're on the wrong road.*)

Talkin' the Talk

Anna Maria and Robert are looking for the Trevi Fountain. They are on Rome's via del Corso, and stop to ask a Carabiniere (a type of police officer) for directions. Note that here the Carabiniere has used the Loro polite imperative form because he is speaking to two other adults whom he doesn't know.

Anna Maria: **Scusi, è qui vicino La Fontana di Trevi?**
skooh-zee eh kwee vee-chee-noh lah fohn-tah-nah dee treh-vee
 Excuse, me, is the Fountain of Trevi nearby?

Carabiniere: **Sì, è proprio qui vicino! Si girino a destra in Via delle Muratte e proseguano per all'incirca 200 metri.**
see eh proh-pree-oh kwee vee-chee-noh. see gee-re-noh ah dehs-trah een vee-ah dehl-leh mooh-raht-teh eh proh-seh-gwah-noh pehr ahl-leen-cehr-cah dooh-eh chehn-toh meh-tree
 Why yes, it's very close. Take a right at via delle Muratte and then keep going for about 200 meters.

Anna Maria: **Molte grazie.**
mohl-teh grah-tsee-eh
 Many thanks.

Carabiniere: **Non c'e di che.**
nohn cheh dee keh
 Don't mention it.

Mapping the quarters and following directions

Four orientations you already know are the cardinal points of the compass: north, south, east, and west. The four directions are especially helpful to know when you use a map. The following are **i quattro punti cardinali** (*ee kwaht-troh poohn-tee kahr-dee-nah-lee*) (*the four cardinal points*):

➤ **nord** (nohrd) (*north*)

➤ **est** (ehst) (*east*)

- ✓ **sud** (soohd) (*south*)
- ✓ **ovest** (oh-vehst) (*west*)

You may hear the directions used in sentences like the following:

- ✓ **Trieste è a nord-est.** (tree-ehs-teh eh ah nohrd-ehst) (*Trieste is to the northeast.*)
- ✓ **Napoli è a sud.** (nah-poh-lee eh ah soohd) (*Naples is to the south.*)
- ✓ **Roma è a ovest.** (roh-mah eh ah oh-vehst) (*Rome is to the west.*)
- ✓ **Bari è a sud-est.** (bah-ree eh ah soohd-ehst) (*Bari is to the southeast.*)

Some lovely city centers, such as the ones in Verona and Ravenna, are closed off to traffic, so you really need to go around by foot. You need to know how to orient yourself in relation to people and buildings when following or giving directions. Italians also frequently use meters to describe distances on foot:

- ✓ **davanti a** (dah-vahn-tee ah) (*in front of*)
- ✓ **dietro a** (dee-eh-troh ah) (*behind*)
- ✓ **vicino a** (vee-chee-noh ah) (*beside; next to*)
- ✓ **di fronte a** (dee-frohn-teh ah) (*opposite*)
- ✓ **dentro** (dehn-troh) (*inside*)
- ✓ **fuori** (fwoh-ree) (*outside*)
- ✓ **sotto** (soht-toh) (*under; below*)
- ✓ **sopra** (soh-prah) (*above*)

You also need to know relationships between distance and **la direzione** (lah dee-reh-tsyoh-neh) (*the direction*):

- ✓ **dritto** (dreet-toh) (*straight*)
- ✓ **sempre dritto** (sehm-preh dreet-toh) (*straight ahead*)
- ✓ **fino a** (fee-noh ah) (*to; up to*)
- ✓ **prima** (pree-mah) (*before*)
- ✓ **dopo** (doh-poh) (*after*)
- ✓ **a destra** (ah dehs-trah) (*on the right*)
- ✓ **a sinistra** (ah see-nees-trah) (*on the left*)
- ✓ **dietro l'angolo** (dee-eh-troh lahn-goh-loh) (*around the corner*)
- ✓ **all'angolo** (ahl-lahn-goh-loh) (*at the corner*)
- ✓ **all'incrocio** (ahl-leen-kroh-choh) (*at the intersection*)

More vocabulary you can use for giving and receiving directions:

- ✓ **la calle** (lah *kahl-leh*) (*narrow Venetian street*; term found only in Venice)
- ✓ **il largo** (eel *lahr-goh*) (*wide square*)
- ✓ **il marciapiede** (eel *mahr-chah-pyeh-deh*) (*sidewalk*)
- ✓ **la piazza** (lah *pyahts-tsah*) (*square*)
- ✓ **il ponte** (eel *pohn-teh*) (*bridge*)
- ✓ **il sottopassaggio** (eel *soht-toh-pahs-sahj-joh*) (*underpass*)
- ✓ **la strada** (lah *strah-dah*) (*road; street*)
- ✓ **la via** (lah *vee-ah*) (*road; street*)
- ✓ **la via principale** (lah *vee-ah preen-chee-pah-leh*) (*main street*)
- ✓ **il viale** (eel *vee-ah-leh*) (*parkway; avenue*)
- ✓ **il vicolo** (eel *vee-koh-loh*) (*alley; lane*)

Talkin' the Talk

Laurie is visiting Florence from Oregon and has just finished a mid-morning coffee break in Piazza della Repubblica. She asks the man standing near her how to get to the post office.

- | | |
|---------|---|
| Laurie: | Scusi, dov'è l'ufficio postale?
<i>skooh-zee doh-veh loohf-fee-ch-oh poh-stah-leh</i>
Excuse me, where is the post office? |
| Enzo: | È dietro l'angolo, là, sotto i portici. L'accompagno?
<i>eh dee-eh-troh lahn-goh-loh lah soht-toh ee pohr-tee-chee. lah-kohm-pahn-yoh</i>
It's around the corner, over there there, underneath the porticoes. Shall I accompany you? |
| Laurie: | Grazie, No Grazie, vado da sola.
<i>grah-tssee-eh. noh grants-ee-eh vah-doh dah soh-lah</i>
Thank you. No thank you, I can go by myself. |



La strada and **la via** are synonymous, but you always use **via** when the name is specified:

- ✓ **È una strada molto lunga.** (eh *ooh-nah strah-dah mohl-toh loohn-gah*)
(It's a very long road.)
- ✓ **Abito in via Merulana.** (ah-bee-toh een *vee-ah meh-rooh-lah-nah*)
(I live in Via Merulana.)

I thought you might want to know the translation and pronunciation of a famous Italian proverb you may have heard:

Tutte le strade portano a Roma. (*tooh-teh leh strah-deh pohr-tah-noh ah roh-mah*) (*All roads lead to Rome.*)

Talkin' the Talk



Mary is in **Bologna** (*boh-loh-nyah*) for the first time. She has visited the city and walked a lot, and now she wants to go back to the train station. Because she can't remember the way, she asks an elderly man.

Mary: **Scusi?**
 skooh-zee
 Excuse me?

Man: **Sì?**
 see
 Yes?

Mary: **Dov'è la stazione centrale?**
 doh-veh lah stah-tsyoh-neh chehn-trah-leh
 Where is the central station?

Man: **Prenda la prima a destra.**
 prehn-dah lah pree-mah ah dehs-trah
 Take the first right.

Mary: **Poi?**
 poi
 Then?

Man: **Poi la terza a sinistra.**
 poi lah tehr-tsah ah see-nees-trah
 Then the third left.

Mary: **Sì?**
 see
 Yes?

Man: **Poi la seconda, no la prima . . .**
 poi lah seh-kohn-dah noh lah pree-mah
 Then the second, no the first . . .

Mary:

Grazie: Prendo un taxi!*grah-tsee-eh prehn-doh oohn tah-ksee*

Thank you: I'll take a taxi!

Words to Know

<i>la strada principale [f]</i>	<i>lah strah-dah preen-chee-pah-leh</i>	main street
<i>il semaforo [m]</i>	<i>eel seh-mah-foh-roh</i>	traffic light
<i>il ponte [m]</i>	<i>eel pohn-teh</i>	bridge
<i>la piazza [f]</i>	<i>lah pyah-ts-tsa</i>	square
<i>il centro [m]</i>	<i>eel chehn-troh</i>	downtown; city center
<i>la stazione [f]</i>	<i>lah stah-tsyoh-neh</i>	station
<i>il duomo [m]</i>	<i>eel dwoh-moh</i>	cathedral
<i>l'ufficio postale [f]</i>	<i>loh-fee-choh pohs-tah-leh</i>	post office
<i>la rotonda (f)</i>	<i>lah roh-tohn-dah</i>	rotary

Verbs on the Move

You need to know certain verbs when trying to understand directions. Some of the verbs you'll find handy for finding your way include:

- ✓ **andare** (ahn-dah-reh) (*to go*)
- ✓ **girare a destra/a sinistra** (jee-rah-reh ah dehs-trah/ah see-nees-trah) (*to turn right/left*)



- ✓ **prendere** (*prehn-deh-reh*) (*to take*)
- ✓ **proseguire** (*proh-seh-gwee-reh*) (*to go on*)
- ✓ **seguire** (*seh-gwee-reh*) (*to follow*)
- ✓ **tornare/indietro** (*tohr-nah-reh/een-dee-eh-troh*) (*to go back*)

Imperatives are useful verb forms to know in a variety of situations, including when you’re trying to get around in unfamiliar territory. This list shows the informal verb form (**tu**), the formal verb form (**Lei**), the informal pl. form (**voi**) and the formal plural form (**Loro**). Check out Chapter 2 for help on deciding to use formal or informal forms.

Appendix A provides you with the conjugations of some regular and irregular verbs.

- ✓ **Va/Vada/Andate/Vadano!** (*vah/vah-dah/ahn-dah-teh/vah-dah-noh*) (*Go!*)
- ✓ **Gira/Giri/Girate/Girino!** (*jee-rah/jee-ree/ jee-rah-teh/ jee-ree-noh*) (*Turn!*)
- ✓ **Prendi/Prenda/Prendete/Prendano!** (*prehn-dee/prehn-dah/prehn-deh-teh/prehn-dah-noh*) (*Take!*)
- ✓ **Prosegui/Proseguia/Proseguite/Proseguano!** (*proh-seh-gwee/proh-seh-gwah/ proh-seh-gwee-teh/ proh-seh-gwah-noh*) (*Go on!*)
- ✓ **Segui/Segua/Seguite/Seguano!** (*seh-gwee/seh-gwah/ seh-gwee-teh/seh-gwah-noh*) (*Follow!*)
- ✓ **Torna/Torni/Tornate/Tornino!** (*tohr-nah/tohr-nee/tohr-nan-teh/tohr-nee-noh*) (*Go back!*)
- ✓ **Attraversa/Attraversi/Attraversate/Attraversino!** (*aht-trah-vehr-sah/aht-trah-vehr-see/aht-trah-vehr-sah-teh/ aht-trah-vehr-see-noh*) (*Cross!*)



Notice that the endings of these verbs vary, apparently without any consistent pattern. These aren’t typing mistakes — they’re determined by the ending of the infinitive form of the verb (-are, -ere, or -ire), and also whether or not these verbs are regular or irregular. The easiest way about this is to simply believe us and memorize the verbs and their endings. You may want to know how near or far you are from your destination. Some typical questions and responses are:

- ✓ **Quant’è lontano?** (*kwahn-teh lohn-tah-noh*) (*How far is it?*)
- ✓ **È molto lontano?** (*eh mohl-toh lohn-tah-noh*) (*Is it very far?*)
- ✓ **Quanto dista?** (*kwahn-toh dees-tah*) (*How far is it?*)
- ✓ **Saranno cinque minuti.** (*sah-rahn-noh cheen-kweh mee-nooh-tee*) (*About five minutes.*)

- ✓ **Circa un chilometro.** (*cheer-kah oohn kee-loh-meh-troh*) (*About one kilometer.*)
- ✓ **Non saranno più di 150 metri.** (*Nohn sah-rahn-noh pyooh dee chehn-toh-cheen-qwahn-tah meh-tree*). (*It's no more than 150 meters away.*)
- ✓ **No, un paio di minuti.** (*noh oohn pah-yoh dee mee-nooh-tee*) (*No, a couple of minutes.*)
- ✓ **Posso arrivarci a piedi?** (*pohs-soh ahr-ree-vahr-chee ah pyeh-dee*) (*Can I walk there?*)
- ✓ **Certo, è molto vicino.** (*chehr-toh eh mohl-toh vee-chee-noh*) (*Sure, it's very close.*)
- ✓ **È un po' lontano.** (*eh oohn poh lohn-tah-noh*) (*It's a bit far away.*)
- ✓ **È proprio a due passi.** (*eh proh-pree-oh ah dooh-eh pahs-see*) (*It's very close.* Literally: Just a couple of steps away.)
- ✓ **È all'incirca 20 metri di distanza.** (*eh ahl-leen-cheerkah vehn-tee meh-tree dee dees-tahn-zah*) (*It's about 20 meters away.*)

Talkin' the Talk

Jenny and Lucy are visiting Rome and would like to walk to their favorite pizzeria in Trastevere from the converted monastery where they are staying. They ask the woman at the front desk how to get there.

Jenny: **Scusi, un'informazione, per favore.**
 skooh-zee oohn een-fohr-mah-tsyoh-neh pehr fah-voh-reh
 Excuse me, we'd like some information, please.

Woman: **Prego!**
 preh-goh
 How can I help you?

Jenny: **Quanto dista la pizzeria Ai marmi?**
 kwahn-toh dees-tah lah peets-tseh-ree-ah ahy mahr-mee
 How far is the pizzeria Ai marmi?

Woman: **È vicino, potete andarci a piedi facilmente.**
 eh vee-chee-noh poh-teh-teh ahn-dahr-chee ah pyeh-dee fah-cheel-mehn-teh
 It's close, you can get there easily on foot.

- Woman: Quando uscite dall'albergo girate a destra, e all'incrocio girate ancora a destra. Proseguite in Viale Trastevere per all'incirca 100 metri e vedrete la pizzeria a sinistra.
qwahn-doh ooh-shee-teh dahl-lahl-behr-goh gee-raht-teh ah deh-strah eh ahl-leen-kroh-choh gee-raht-teh ahn-koh-rah ah deh-strah. proh-seh-gwee-teh in vee-ah-leh trah-steh-veh-reh pehr ahl-leen-cheerkah chehn-toh meh-tree eh veh-dreh-teh lah peets-tsehr-ee-ah ah see-nee-strah
 When you leave the hotel take a right and then at the intersection take another right. Go down viale Trastevere for about 150 meters and you'll see the pizzeria on the left.
- Lucy: Scusi, non ho capito, può ripetere più lentamente, per favore?
skooh-zee nohn oh kah-peh-toh. pwoh ree-peh-teh-reh pyooh lehn-tah-mehn-teh pehr fah-voh-reh
 I'm sorry, but I didn't understand. Would you please repeat a bit more slowly?
- Woman: Certo! Allora, esci dall'albergo e giri a destra. Va bene?
chehr-toh ahl-lohr-ah ehsh-ee dahl-lahl-behr-goh eh gee-raah dehs-trah vah beh-neh
 Of course. You leave the hotel and turn right. Okay?

What to say when you don't understand

Occasionally, maybe frequently, you may not understand the directions someone gives you. For those times, you need some useful polite expressions to ask the other person to repeat their directions.

- ✓ **Come, scusi?** (*koh-meh skooh-zee*) (*I beg your pardon?*) (formal)
- ✓ **Come, scusa?** (*koh-meh skooh-zah*) (*I beg your pardon?*) (informal)

✓ **Mi scusi, non ho capito.** (*mee skooh-zee nohn oh kah-peh-toh*) (*I'm sorry, I didn't understand.*)

✓ **Può ripetere più lentamente, per favore?** (*pwoh ree-peh-teh-reh pyooh lehn-tah-mehn-teh pehr fah-voh-reh*) (*Can you please repeat it more slowly?*)

When someone does you a favor — explaining the way or giving you directions — you probably want to thank him or her, and that's the easiest task: **Mille grazie!** (*meel-leh gragh-tsee-eh*) (*Thank you very much!*)

Words to Know

numero [m]	<u>nooh-meh-roh</u>	number
minuto [m]	<u>mee-nooh-toh</u>	minute
lentamente	<u>lehn-tah-mehn-teh</u>	slowly
autobus [m]	<u>ou-toh-boohs</u>	bus
fermata [f]	<u>fehr-mah-tah</u>	bus stop
macchina [f]	<u>mahk-kee-nah</u>	car

Locations You May Be Looking For

When you're searching for a specific place, these sentences can help you ask the right questions.

- ✓ **Mi sa dire dov'è la stazione?** (mee sah *dee-reh doh-veh lah stah-tsyoh-neh*) (*Can you tell me where the station is?*)
- ✓ **Devo andare all'aeroporto. Quale strada devo prendere?** (deh-voh ahn-dah-reh *ahl-lah-eh-roh-pohr-toh. kwah-leh strah-dah dey-voh prehn-deh-reh*) (*I have to go to the airport. What road should I take?*)
- ✓ **Sto cercando il teatroValle.** (stoh chehr-kahn-doh eel teh-ah-troh *vahl-leh*) (*I'm looking for the Valle theater.*)
- ✓ **Dov'è il cinema Astoria, per favore?** (doh-veh eel *chee-neh-mah ahs-toh-ree-ah pehr fah-voh-reh*) (*Where is the Astoria cinema, please?*)
- ✓ **Come posso arrivare al Museo Etrusco?** (koh-meh pohs-soh ahr-ree-vah-reh ahl mooh-zeh-oh eh-trooh-skoh) (*How can I get to the Etruscan Museum?*)
- ✓ **La strada migliore per il centro, per favore?** (lah strah-dah mee-lyoh-reh pehr eel *chehn-troh pehr fah-voh-reh*) (*The best way to downtown, please?*)
- ✓ **Che chiesa è questa?** (keh kyeh-zah eh kwehs-tah) (*What church is this?*)

✓ **Quale autobus va all'ospedale?** (*kwah-leh ou-toh-boohs vah ahl-lohs-peh-dah-leh*) (*Which bus goes to the hospital?*)

✓ **Come faccio ad arrivare all'università?** (*koh-meh fach-choh ahd ahr-ree-vah-reh ahl-looh-nee-vehr-see-tah*) (*How can I get to the university?*)

Talkin' the Talk



Peter wants to meet with a friend at a restaurant on via Torino. After getting off the bus, he asks a girl for directions.

Peter: **Scusa?**
skooh-zah
 Excuse me?

Girl: **Dimmi.**
deem-mee
 Yes, can I help you?.

Peter: **Sto cercando via Torino.**
stoh chehr-kahn-doh vee-ah toh-ree-noh
 I'm looking for via Torino.

Girl: **Via Torino!?**
vee-ah toh-ree-noh
 Via Torino!?

Peter: **È qui vicino, no?**
eh kwee vee-chee-noh noh
 It's close to here, isn't it?

Girl: **No, è lontanissimo.**
noh eh lohn-tah-nees-see-moh
 No, it's very far away.

Peter: **Oddio, ho sbagliato strada!**
ohd-dee-oh oh sbah-lyah-toh strah-dah
 Oh, heavens, I went the wrong way!

Girl: **Devi prendere il 20 verso il centro.**
deh-vee prehn-deh-reh eel vahn-tee vehr-soh
eel chehn-troh
 You have to take the [bus number] 20 to the city center.

Talkin' the Talk

Amy Jo is spending her junior year abroad in Florence, and living with a family near the Boboli Gardens. She is at the Piazza Duomo and has to meet her roommate Oona at the Uffizi Gallery, but she is a little disoriented. (See Figure 6-1.) She asks a young street musician how to get there.

Amy Jo: **Scusa, un'informazione, per favore. Sono un po' persa.**
skooh-za oohn-een-fohr-mah-tsyoh-neh perh fah-voh-reh. soh-noh oohn poh pehr-sah
Excuse me, I need some information please: I'm a little lost.

Musician: **Dimmi!**
dee-mee
Shoot!

Amy Jo: **Come posso arrivare alla Galleria degli Uffizi?**
koh-meh pohs-soh ahr-ree-vah-reh ahl-lah gahl-lehr-ee-ah deh-lyee ooh-fee-tsee
How can I get to the Uffizi Gallery?

Musician: **Non è lontano. Vai sempre dritto in Via dei Calzaiuoli finchè arrivi alla Piazza della Signoria. Guarda un po' in giro quando arrivi.**
nohn eh lohn-tah-noh. vahy sehm-preh dreet-toh een vee-ah dey kahl-tsahy-woh-lee feen-keh ahr-ree-vee ahl-lah pyahts-sah dehl-lah see-nyoh-ree-ah. gwahr-dah oohn poh in gee-roh qwahn-doh ahr-ree-vee
It's not far. Just go straight down Via dei Calzaiuoli until you get to the Piazza della Signoria. Look around when you get there.

Amy Jo: **Quanti minuti ci vogliono a piedi?**
kwahn-tee mee-nooh-tee chee vohl-yoh-noh ah pyeh-dee
How many minutes away is it on foot?

Musician: **Una decina.**
oohn-ah dech-ee-nah
About 10.

Amy Jo:

Grazie!
grah-tsee-eh
Thank you!

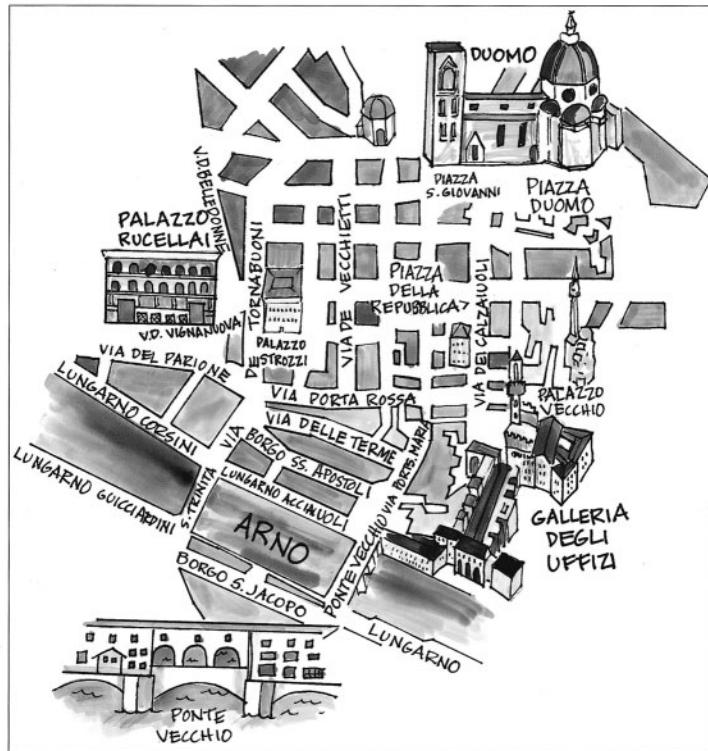


Figure 6-1:
Map of the
historic
district of
Florence,
Italy.

Words to Know

a destra	ah <u>dehs</u> -trah	to the right
a sinistra	ah <u>see-nees</u> -trah	to the left
stazione [f]	stah- <u>tsyoh</u> -neh	station
aeroporto [m]	ah-eh-roh- <u>pohr</u> -toh	airport
teatro [m]	teh- <u>ah</u> -troh	theater
cinema [m]	<u>chee</u> -neh-mah	cinema
chiesa [f]	kyeh-zah	church
ospedale [m]	ohs-peh- <u>dah</u> -leh	hospital
ponte (m)	<u>pohn</u> -teh	bridge



Fun & Games 1

Take a look at Figure 6.1, the map of Florence's city center, and provide the following information. See Appendix D for the answer key.

1. Palazzo Rucellai is in via _____.
 2. Two bridges on this map are the _____ and the _____.
 3. The river that runs through Florence is called the _____.
 4. A building that is attached to the Galleria degli Uffizi is the _____.
 5. The Duomo sits on what two piazzas? _____.
 6. The roads running alongside the Arno have what word in common in their names? _____
 7. _____ looks like the main piazza in Florence's center.

Chapter 7

Food Glorious Food — and Don't Forget the Drink

In This Chapter

- Eating, Italian style
- Ordering at the bar
- Reserving a table and paying for your meal
- Getting three meals a day (at least)
- Shopping for food

You are probably familiar with a good amount of Italian food, such as spaghetti, ravioli, espresso, pizza, and pasta. Reading the sections in this chapter, you'll find a lot of information about food and drink, from marketing to dining out. This chapter invites you to take a closer look at some of the variations that make Italian food so famous. "Buon appetito!" (bwohn ahp-peh-tee-toh)! (*Enjoy!*)

Eating, Italian Style

Italians have three main meals: **la (prima) colazione** (lah pree-mah koh-lah-tsyoh-neh) (*breakfast*), **il pranzo** (eel prahn-zoh) (*lunch*), and **la cena** (lah cheh-nah) (*dinner*). **Uno spuntino** (ooh-noh spoohn-tee-noh) (*a snack*) is taken when you're hungry between main meals. **La merenda** (lah meh-rehn-dah) is snack-time that most children enjoy daily.

Drinking, Italian Style

This section talks about many sorts of drink, starting, obviously, with good Italian coffee, but covering also water, tea, and some spirits.

Expressing your love for espresso

You may have to order an espresso at your favorite coffee emporium back home, but in Italy, you get the same drink by asking the **barista** (bah-rees-tah) or **il cameriere** (eel kah-meh-ryeh-reh) (*the waiter*) for just **un caffè** (oohn kahf-feh) (*a coffee*).

Italy's national drink: Espresso

Use the following terms exactly as you see them when ordering your coffee at the **bar** (caffè), and you will definitely be understood!

- ✓ **Un Caffè Hag** (oohn kahf-feh ahg) is a popular brand of instant decaffeinated coffee — every Italian knows it.
- ✓ **Un caffè** (kahf-feh): When you order **caffè**, you automatically get an espresso.
- ✓ **Un caffè ristretto** (ree-streht-toh): Very strong and concentrated espresso.
- ✓ **un caffè doppio** (dohp-pyoh): Double espresso.
- ✓ **Un caffè lungo** (loohn-goh): Espresso with more water to make it less concentrated.
- ✓ **Un caffè corretto** (kohr-reht-toh): Espresso with a bit of cognac or other liquor.
- ✓ **Un cappuccino** (kahp-pooh-chee-noh): Espresso with frothed milk.
- ✓ **Un caffelatte** (kahf-feh-laht-teh): Espresso with plenty of milk.
- ✓ **Un caffè macchiato** (mahk-kyah-toh): Espresso with a touch of milk.
- ✓ **Un latte macchiato** (laht-teh mahk-kyah-toh): Hot milk with just a touch of espresso.
- ✓ **Un caffè americano** (kahf-feh ah-meh-ree-kah-noh): American coffee but stronger — this type of coffee has become a new fashion.
- ✓ **Un caffè decaffeinato** (deh-kahf-feh-ee-nah-toh): Decaffeinated coffee.
- ✓ **Un caffè d'orzo** (kahf-feh dohr-zoh): Coffee substitute made from germinated, dried, and roasted barley. You can have it strong or light.
- ✓ **caffè freddo/shakerato** (kahf-feh frehd-doh/sheh-keh-rah-toh): Iced espresso shaken like a martini with cane syrup and ice

And here are some tips to help you order your Italian coffee.

- ✓ Super-size coffee portions don't exist in Italy, and there is one size for a cappuccino and a caffelatte.
- ✓ Italians generally have their coffee while standing at the bar. The concept of coffee "to go" is one used primarily by tourists.
- ✓ Italians don't drink cappuccino after breakfast (11ish at the latest)
- ✓ And beware! A latte is precisely what it says — milk. If you're hankering for a glass of warm milk, say "Un bicchiere di latte tiepido" (oohn bee-kyeh-reh dee laht-teh tyeh-pee-doh).

In addition to **caffè**, you can enjoy a nice cup of **cioccolata calda** (chohk-koh-lah-tah kahl-dah) (*hot cocoa; cold chocolate milk doesn't exist in Italy*); **tè or tè freddo** (the frehd-doh) (*cold or iced tea*); **infusi** (een-fooh-zee) (*herbal teas*) with a **camomilla** (kah-moh-mee-lah), the perfect bed-time infusion; **succhi di frutta** (soohk-kee dee frooh-tah) (*fruit juices*); **spremute** (spreh-mooh-teh) (*fresh-squeezed fruit juice*); and a wide selection of water (*ah-kqwah*).



Not many Italians anywhere in Italy drink tap water. Most Italians drink **acqua minerale** (ah-kwah mee-neh-rah-leh) (*mineral water*), which can be **acqua gassata/gasata** (ah-kwah gas-sah-tah/gah-zah-tah) (*sparkling water*) also called **acqua frizzante** (ah-kwah freez-zahn-teh), or **acqua liscia** or **naturale** (ah-kwah lee-shah or nah-tooh-rah-leh) (*still water*).



In **estate** (ehs-tah-teh) (*summer*), you will seek **ghiaccio** (gyahch-choh) (*ice*) wherever you go because most bars will part with only one small piece.

When you order a drink in Italy, you may need to specify how much you want, such as a whole bottle, a carafe, or just a glass. Use the following words:

- ✓ **Una bottiglia di . . .** (ooh-nah boht-tee-lyah dee) (*A bottle of . . .*)
- ✓ **Un bicchiere di . . .** (oohn beek-kyeh-reh dee) (*A glass of . . .*)
- ✓ **Una caraffa di . . .** (ooh-nah kah-rahf-fah dee) (*A carafe of . . .*)
- ✓ **Mezzo litro di . . .** (mehdz-oh lee-troh dee) (*half a liter of . . .*)
- ✓ **Un quartinodi . . .** (oohn kwahr-tee-noh dee) (*a quarter of a liter*)

The last three terms are generally reserved for the house wine and beer.

When do you pay for your drinks in an Italian coffee bar? It depends. Normally, you have your coffee or whatever first and pay afterward. In little Italian bars, where just one or two people work behind the bar, you simply tell the cashier what you had and pay then. In bigger bars, and especially in large cities with many tourists, you first pay at the register, get a sales slip called a **scontrino** (skohn-tree-noh), and take that sales slip over to the **barista**.

Beverages with even more of a kick

Italy is also famous for its **vini** (vee-nee) (*wines*) and other fermented beverages, like the popular after-dinner drinks limoncello (lee-mohn-chehl-loh) and grappa (grahp-pah). Each region has its own many varieties of wine, so make certain you try some of the wines of the regions you visit.

Talkin' the Talk

Friends eating a casual meal in a trattoria (traht-tohr-ee-ah) are ordering wine to have with their meal. They are in Tuscany and have ordered **pappa al pomodoro** (*pahp-pah ahl poh-moh-doh-roh*) (a Tuscan bread soup) and one **bistecca alla fiorentina** (bee-stehk-kah ahl-lah fyohr-ehn-tee-nah) (a huge steak) for two or more people.

Server: **Ecco la lista dei vini.**
ehk-koh lah /ees-tah dey vee-nee
Here's the wine list.

Laura: **Che cosa ci consiglia?**
keh koh-za chee kohn-see-lyah
What do you recommend?

Server: **Abbiamo un ottimo Chianti della casa.**
ahb-byah-moh oohn oht-tee-moh kee-ahn-tee
dehl-lah kah-sah
We have some great house Chianti.

Silvio: **Prendiamo un po' di vino rosso, allora, con la bistecca.**
prehn-dyah-moh oohn poh dee vee-noh rohs-soh
ahl-loh-rah kohn lah bee-stehk-kah
Let's get some red wine, then, to have with our steak.

Laura: **Si, Quello della casa?**
see. kwehl-loh dehl-lah kah-sah
Yes. The house wine?

Silvio: **Perfetto!**
pehr-feht-toh
Perfect!

In Italy, the **aperitivo** (ah-pehr-ah-tee-voh), or before-dinner drink, is usually taken at the bar, either standing or seated at a **tavolino** (tah-voh-lee-noh) (*small table*). **Campari** and **prosecco** (*a dry sparkling wine*) are two major aperitivi, but you can also get alcohol-free aperitivi like **un Crodino** or **un Sanbitter**. The aperitivo is frequently served with a delectable assortment of free munchies.

Talkin' the Talk

Teresa and Laura are meeting around 7:00 p.m. before going out to dinner. They are at a table outdoors.

Server (Remo): **Ditemi!**
dee-teh-mee
How can I help you?

Teresa: **Io prendo un Bitter Campari con una fetta di arancia.**
ee-oh prehn-doh oohn bee-tehr kahm-pah-ree
kohn ooh-nah feht-tah dee ah-rahn-chah
I'll have a Campari with a slice of orange

Laura: **Per me un prosecco, grazie.**
pehr meh oohn proh-sehk-koh grah-tsee-eh
For me a prosecco, thank you.

Remo: **Altro?**
ahl-troh
Anything else?

Teresa: **Avete delle noccioline?**
ah-veh-teh dehl-leh noch-choh-/ee-neh
Do you have any peanuts?

Remo: **No, mi dispiace, sono finite.**
noh mee dees-pyah-cheh soh-noh fee-nee-teh
I'm sorry, we're all out.

You may prefer to get a birra (*beer-rah*) (*beer*) grande or piccola (*grahn-deh* or *peeh-koh-lah*), either in a bottiglia (*boht-tee-lyah*) (*bottle*) or alla spina (*ahl-lah spee-nah*) (*draft beer*).

The Start and End of Dining Out

One of the more enjoyable (if potentially fattening) ways to explore a new culture is to sample the native cuisine. People interested in Italian cuisine are lucky — Italian-style restaurants are plentiful in North America. You can eat in a pizza joint, or enjoy a traditional, multi-course meal in a classy

restaurant. And, if you're fortunate enough to actually travel to Italy, your taste buds are in for a real treat! Just be aware that pizza and pasta are different in Italy than in the United States.

This section discusses the beginning and endings of meals — from making reservations to paying the tab.

Making reservations

Unless you're going to a pizzeria or the **trattoria** (traht-toh-ree-ah) (*little restaurant*) down the street, you may need to reserve a table in a nice Italian restaurant.

Talkin' the Talk



Mr. Di Leo calls for reservations at his favorite restaurant.

Waiter: **Pronto. Ristorante Roma.**
prohn-toh rees-toh-rahn-teh roh-mah
Hello! Roma Restaurant.

Sig. Di Leo: **Buonasera. Vorrei prenotare un tavolo.**
bwoh-nah-seh-rah vohr-rey preh-noh-tah-reh oohn
tah-voh-loh
Good evening! I would like to reserve a table.

Waiter: **Per stasera?**
pehr stah-seh-rah
For this evening?

Sig. Di Leo: **No, per domani.**
noh pehr doh-mah-nee
No, for tomorrow.

Waiter: **Per quante persone?**
pehr kwahn-teh pehr-soh-neh
For how many people?

Sig. Di Leo: **Per due.**
pehr dooh-eh
For two.

Waiter: **A che ora?**
ah keh oh-rah
At what time?

Sig. Di Leo: **Alle nove.**
ahl-leh noh-veh
 At nine.

Waiter: **A che nome?**
ah keh noh-meh
 In whose name?

Sig. Di Leo: **Di Leo.**
dee leh-oh
 Di Leo.

Words to Know

<i>tavolo</i> [m]	<i>tah-voh-loh</i>	table
<i>cameriere</i> [m]	<i>kah-meh-ryeh-reh</i>	waiter
<i>domani</i> [m]	<i>doh-mah-nee</i>	tomorrow
<i>prenotazione</i> [f]	<i>preh-noh-tah-tsyoh-neh</i>	reservation
<i>stasera</i> [f]	<i>stah-seh-rah</i>	this evening

Paying for your meal

You don't need to use cash in all restaurants. There are many, mostly higher-end ones, where you can pay with your credit card, too.



No one tips in Italy; truly, not even in an elegant restaurant. You always pay **pane e coperto**, (*pah-neh eh koh-pehr-toh*), a cover or service charge, just to sit down,

When you want the bill **il conto** (eel *kohn-toh*) you ask the server "to bring" it to you. She will never bring it to you unless you ask for it. Use the verbs **portare** (pohr-tah-reh) or **fare** (fah-reh) and say:

Ci porta/fa il conto, per favore? (chee pohr-tah eel *kohn-toh* perh fah-voh-reh) (*Will you please bring us the bill?*) (formal)

Or simply

Il conto, per favore! (eel *kohn-toh* pehr fah-voh-reh) (*The bill please.*)



Save that sales slip

Be sure to keep **lo scontrino** (loh skohn-tree-noh) (*the sales slip*), at least until you leave an Italian bar or any kind of shop or restaurant. This is important in Italy because **la Guardia di**

Finanza (lah gwahr-dee-ah dee fee-nahn-tsah) (*Financial Guard*) often checks. If you leave without a sales slip and are caught, you and the owner of the establishment have to pay a fine.

Having Breakfast

Your first meal of the day is always **la prima colazione** (lah pree-mah koh-lah-tyoh-neh) (*breakfast*).

Some Italians begin the day with **un caffè** (oohn kahf-feh) (*espresso*) at home, but many stop for breakfast in **un bar** (oohn bahr) on their way to work. Breakfast consists of coffee and **una pasta** (ooh-nah pahs-tah) (*a pastry*), which can be **salata** (sah-lah-tah) (*savory*), **semplice** (sehm-plee-cheh) (*plain*) or filled with **marmellata** (mahr-mehl-lah-tah) (*jam*), **crema** (kreh-mah) (*custard*), or **cioccolato** (chohk-koh-lah-toh) (*chocolate*).

Talkin' the Talk

The man behind the counter in a coffee bar in Italy is called **il barista** (eel bah-rees-tah) (*the barman*).

Barista: **Buongiorno!**
 bwohn-johr-noh
 Good morning!

Sig. Zampieri: **Buongiorno! Un caffè e una pasta alla crema per favore.**
 bwohn-johr-noh oohn kahf-feh eh ooh-nah
 pahs-tah ahl-lah kreh-mah pehr fah-voh-reh
 Good morning! One espresso and a custard
 pastry please.

Barista: **Qualcos'altro?**
 qwahl-kohs-ahl-troh
 Anything else?

Sig. Zampieri: **Una spremuta d'arancia, per favore.**
*ooh-nah spreh-mooh-tah dah-rahn-chah pehr
fah-voh-reh*
One fresh-squeezed orange juice, please.

Barista: **Ecco la spremuta. Prego.**
ehk-koh lah spreh-mooh-tah preh-goh
Here's the juice. Here you go.

Eating Lunch

Italians do **il pranzo** (*eel prahn-zoh*) lunch differently from many other countries. The traditional courses are:

- ✓ **antipasto** (*ahn-tee-pahs-toh*) (*appetizer*): Usually served hot and cold, **antipasti** vary from region to region.
- ✓ **primo piatto** (*pree-moh pyaht-toh*) (*first course*): Although this comes after the antipasto, it is still called a first course): The **primo** consists of all kinds of **pasta** (*pahs-tah*) (*pasta*), **risotto** (*ree-zoht-toh*) (*risotto*), (or **minestra** (*mee-nehs-trah*) (*soup*)).
- ✓ **il secondo** (*eel seh-kohn-doh*) (*the second course*): This generally consists of **carne** (*kahr-neh*) (*meat*) or **pesce** (*peh-sheh*) (*fish*), prepared in a wide variety of ways.
- ✓ **contorni** (*kohn-tohr-nee*) (*side dishes*): Vegetables may be ordered separately.
- ✓ **il dolce** (*eel dohl-cheh*) (*the dessert*): Last, but certainly not least, dessert may be **un dolce** (*oohn dohl-cheh*) (*a sweet*), **frutta fresca** (*froot-tah frehs-kah*) (*fresh fruit*), or **una macedonia** (*ooh-nah mah-cheh-doh-nee-ah*) (*fruit salad*).

Figure 7-1 shows a typical Italian lunch menu.

The verb **prendere** (*prehn-deh-reh*) (literally: to take, but here, to have) is the verb to use when talking about food and drinks.

Conjugation

io prendo
tu prendi
lui/lei prende
noi prendiamo
voi prendete
loro prendono

Pronunciation

<i>ee-oh prehn-doh</i>
<i>tooh prehn-dee</i>
<i>loo-h-ee/ley prehn-deh</i>
<i>noi prehn-dee-ah-moh</i>
<i>voi prehn-deh-teh</i>
<i>loh-roh prehn-doh-noh</i>



Figure 7-1:
A typical
Italian lunch
menu, from
antipasti to
il dolce.

Pasta usually means durum wheat made with flour and water. The different types include: **spaghetti** (spah-geht-tee) (*spaghetti*), **bucatini** (booh-kah-tee-nee) (*thick, tube-like spaghetti*), **penne** (pehn-neh) (*short, cylinder-shaped pasta shaped to a point at each end*), **fusilli** (fooh-zeel-lee) (*spiral-shaped pasta*), **rigatoni** (ree-gah-toh-nee) (*short, cylinder-shaped, and grooved pasta*), and so on.

On the other hand, **pasta fresca** (pahs-tah frehs-kah) (*fresh pasta*) means **pasta all'uovo** (pahs-tah ahl-lwoh-voh) (*egg noodles*), also called **pasta fatta in casa** (pahs-tah faht-tah een kah-sah) (*home made pasta*). These are **tagliatelle** (tah-lyah-teh-leh) (*flat noodles*), **fettuccine** (feht-toohch-chee-neh) (*narrow, flat noodles*), and **tonnarelli** (tohn-nah-rehl-lee) (*tubular noodles*), to mention just a few.

Incidentally, when you have a bite of pasta, you should make sure that it is **al dente** (ahl dehn-teh) (*Literally: to the tooth*. It means that the pasta is a little hard so that you really need to use your teeth!)



The many meanings of “prego”

Prego (*preh-goh*) has several meanings. When you say it in response to grazie (*grah-tsee-eh*) (*thank you*), it means “you’re welcome.” But clerks and servers also use it to ask you what you would like or if they can help you. You often hear prego when you enter a public office or shop. You also use prego when you give something to someone. In this case, the word is translated as “here you are.” Prego is also a very formal answer when you ask for permission. Following are a few examples of how prego is used:

- ✓ Grazie. (*grah-tsee-eh*) (*Thank you.*)
- Prego. (*preh-goh*) (*You're welcome.*)
- ✓ Prego? (*preh-goh*) (*Can I help you?*)
- Posso entrare? (*pohs-soh ehn-trah-reh*)
(*May I come in?*)
- Prego. (*preh-goh*) (*Please.*)
- ✓ Prego, signore. (*preh-goh see-nyoh-reh*)
(*Here you are, sir.*)
- Grazie. (*grah-tsee-eh*) (*Thank you.*)

The following conjugation shows you the polite form of the verb **volere** (*voh-leh-reh*) (*to want*). You have another verb for when you’re being polite: “to like.” Italian, however, uses a conditional to express politeness.

Conjugation

io vorrei
tu vorresti
lui/lei vorrebbe
noi vorremmo
voi vorreste
loro vorrebbero

Pronunciation

<i>ee-oh vohr-ray</i>
<i>too vohr-rehs-tee</i>
<i>loo-ee/ley vohr-rehb-beh</i>
<i>noi vohr-rehm-moh</i>
<i>voi vohr-rehs-teh</i>
<i>loh-roh vohr-rehb-beh-roh</i>

Enjoying Dinner

Italians often have **la cena** (*lah cheh-nah*) (*supper*) at home, but they also eat out. In this chapter, you are also introduced to the different types of eateries available to you. Supper time varies throughout the peninsula; for example, restaurants in Venice stop serving dinner earlier than those in Rome, where you can go as late as 9 or 10 p.m.

Talkin' the Talk



A group of friends gather at a local pizzeria for dinner. Their exchanges are quite informal.

Sandra: **Che cosa prendiamo?**
keh koh-zah prehn-dee-ah-moh
What should we have?

Laura: **Non lo so! Guardiamo il menù.**
nohn loh soh gwahr-dee-ah-moh eel meh-nooh
I don't know! Let's look at the menu.

Silvio: **Avete fame?**
ah-veh-teh fah-meh
Are you hungry?

Laura: **Ho fame; prendo una pizza margherita.**
oh fah-meh prehn-doh ooh-nah peet-tsah
mahr-gehr-ee-tah
I'm hungry; I'm getting a pizza margherita.

Sandra: **Io non tanto.**
ee-oh nohn tahn-toh
I'm not so hungry.

Silvio: **Allora cosa prendi Sandra?**
ahl-loh-rah koh-zah prehn-dee sahn-drah
So what are you going to have, Sandra?

Sandra: **Vorrei qualcosa di leggero.**
vohr-rey kwahl-koh-zah dee lehj-jeh-roh
I'd like something light.

Un'insalatona.
onn-een-sah-lah-toh-nah
A big salad.

Silvio: **Poco originale . . .**
pohk-koh oh-ree-jee-nah-leh
Kind of boring . . .

Most Italian pizzerias have a wide range of pizzas. They are individual servings. You can also get pasta and salads there, and afterwards a dessert.

You have certainly heard of Italian **gelato** (jeh-lah-toh) (*ice cream*). Go for the **gelato artigianale** (jeh-lah-tee ahr-tee-jah-nah-lee) (*homemade ice cream — made in a gelateria* (jeh-lah-teh-ree-ah)). You can have it in a **cono** (koh-noh) (*cone*) or a **coppetta** (kohp-peht-tah) (*cup*). You also have to decide on the **gusto** (goohs-toh) (*flavor*) and size, which usually goes according to euros or according to **palline** (pahl-lee-neh) (*scoops*).

Talkin' the Talk



Laura and Silvio stop for some ice cream.

Server: **Prego?**
preh-goh
What would you like?

Laura: **Due coni, per favore.**
dooh-eh koh-nee pehr fah-voh-reh
Two ice cream cones, please.

Server: **Da quanto?**
dah kwahn-toh
What size?

Silvio: **Uno da due euro, e l'altro da 1 euro e 50.**
oohn-oh dah dooh-eh eh-ooh-roh eh lahl-troh
dah oohn eh-ooh-roh eh cheen-qwahn-tah
One two-euro size and one for 1½ euros.

Server: **Che gusti?**
keh goohs-tee
Which flavors?

Silvio: **Fragola e limone.**
frah-goh-lah eh lee-moh-neh
Strawberry and lemon.

Server: **Prego. E Lei?**
preh-goh eh ley
Here you are. And you?

Laura: **Crema, cioccolato, cocco, e noce.**
kreh-mah chohk-koh-lah-toh kohk-koh eh noh-cheh
Custard, chocolate, coconut, and walnut.

Silvio: **3 euro e 50?**
treh eh-ooh-roh eh cheen-qwahn-tah
Three and a half euros?

Server: **Sì, grazie. Ecco lo scontrino.**
See, grats-ee-eh ehk-koh loh skohn-tree-noh
Yes, thanks. Here's the receipt.

In a **gelateria**, you can also find **frullati** (froohl-lah-tee) (*mixed fruit juice*), **frappé** (frahp-peh) (which can be a *fruit milk shake* or a *frozen fruit shake*), and **lo yogurt** (frozen yogurt).

Shopping for Food

Many people do their marketing in a **supermercato** (sooh-pehr-mehr-kah-toh) (*supermarket*) even if there are other places to get it. But most Italian cities have specialty shops, starting with the **alimentari** (ah-lee-mehn-tah-ree), where you can get many items . . . everything from **latte** (laht-teh) (*milk*) to toilet paper (kahr-tah ee-jeh-nee-kah) **carta igienica**. These shops, with their specific selection of goods, provide the personal attention often lacking in supermarkets.

Al macellaio (ahl mah-chehl-lahy-oh) (at the butcher's)

From the butcher shop you might select items like the following:

- ✓ **agnello** (ah-nyehl-loh) (*lamb*)
- ✓ **coniglio** (koh-nee-lyoh) (*rabbit*)
- ✓ **maiale** (mah-yah-leh) (*pork*)
- ✓ **manzo** (mahn-zoh) (*beef*)
- ✓ **pollo** (pohl-loh) (*chicken*)
- ✓ **vitello** (vee-tehl-loh) (*veal*)
- ✓ **bistecca** (bees-tehk-kah) (*steak*)

Pesce (fish) (peh-sheh)

Not all restaurants serve fresh fish. To be sure, the better restaurants offer fresh (not frozen) fish, and this is usually listed as a special of the day. Getting fresh fish certainly depends on the region, such as if you're close to the sea or not. If you are in doubt about the fish a restaurant offers, it's better to ask someone local for a recommendation. Better safe than sorry!

Dove si può mangiare il pesce fresco? (doh-veh see pwoh mahn-jah-reh eel peh-sheh frehs-koh) (*Where can we eat fresh fish?*)

Some common types of fish, depending on the region, include:

- ✓ **acciughe fresche** (ahch-chooh-geh frehs-keh) (*fresh anchovies*)
- ✓ **calamari** (kah-lah-mah-ree) (*squid*)
- ✓ **seppia** (sehp-pee-ah) (*cuttlefish*)
- ✓ **branzino** (brahn-zee-noh) (*sea bass*)
- ✓ **orata** (oh-rah-tah) (*sea bream*)
- ✓ **merluzzo** (mehr-loot-tsoh) (*cod*)
- ✓ **polpo/polipo** (pohl-poh poh-lee-poh) (*octopus*)
- ✓ **pesce spada** (peh-sheh spah-dah) (*swordfish*)
- ✓ **sogliola** (soh-lyoh-lah) (*sole*)
- ✓ **spigola** (spee-goh-lah) (*snapper*)
- ✓ **tonno fresco** (tohn-noh frehs-koh) (*fresh tuna*)
- ✓ **frutti di mare** (frooht-tee dee mah-reh) (*shell fish*)
- ✓ **cozze** (koht-tseh) (*mussels*)
- ✓ **vongole** (vohn-goh-leh) (*clams*)
- ✓ **gamberetti** (gahm-beh-reht-tee) (*small shrimp*)
- ✓ **gamberi** (gahm-beh-ree) (*prawns*)

Common simple preparations are **al forno** (ahl-for-noh) (*baked*), **alla griglia** (ahl-lah greel-yah) (*grilled*), and **in padella** (een pah-dehl-lah) (*in the skillet*).

At the panetteria (breadshop)

In a **panetteria** (pah-neht-teh-ree-ah) (*breadshop*), you can try all sorts of different kinds of **pane** (pah-neh) (*bread*), as well as some oven-baked **dolci** (dohl-chee) (*sweets*).



In some Italian breadshops, you can also find **pizza al taglio** (peet-tsah ahl tah-lyoh) (*slices of pizza*) and **focaccia** (foh-ka-chah), and pay according to weight.

Talkin' the Talk

- | | |
|---------------|--|
| Sig.ra Belli: | Ha del pane biologico?
ah dehl pah-neh bee-oh-loh-jee-koh
Do you have any organic bread? |
| Baker: | Ho dei panini, o questo tipo Matera, tutti cotti nel forno a legna.
oh dey pah-nee-nee oh kwehs-toh tee-poh mah-teh-rah tooht-tee kot-tee nehl fohr-noh ah lehn-yah
I have these rolls or this Matera-style one all baked in our wood-burning oven. |
| Aig.ra Belli | Mi dà quello rustico per favore.
mee dah kwehl-loh rooh-stee-koh peh fah-voh-reh
I'll take that hard-crust one please. |
| | Quant'è?
kwahn-teh
How much is it? |
| Baker: | 3 euro e 50 centesimi.
treh eh-ooh-roh eh cheen-qwahn-tah
chehn-tehz-ee-mee
Three euros and 50 cents. |
| Sig.ra Belli | Grazie e arrivederla.
grats-ee-eh eh ahr-ree-veh-dehr-lah
Thank you, and good-bye. |

- Baker: **Desidera?**
to another
customer: deh-zee-deh-rah
What would you like?
- Paolo: **Un pezzo di pizza al pomodoro.**
oohn peht-tsoh dee peet-tsah ahl poh-moh-doh-roh
A piece of pizza with tomatoes.
- Baker: **Così va bene?**
koh-zee vah beh-neh
Is this okay?
- Paolo **Un po' più grande, per favore.**
oohn poh pyooh grahn-deh pehr fah-voh-reh
A little bigger please.
- Baker **Così?**
koh-zee
Like this?



Items are priced according to weight, usually by **chilo** (*kee-loh*) (*kilo*). You know that when you hear **un etto** (*oohn eht-toh*), it means 100 grams. **Mezz'etto** (*meht-tseht-toh*) is 50 grams, because **mezzo** (*meht-tsoh*) means “half.” Likewise, a **mezzo chilo** (*meht-tsoh kee-loh*) is half a kilo. Meat, fish, fruits, cheese, cold cuts and vegetables are sold by weight.

Table 7-1 lists common fruits and vegetables that you might find at an open-air farmer's market.

Table 7-1 Fruits and Vegetables

<i>Italian/Plural</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>	<i>Translation</i>
albicocca/albicocche [f]	ahl-bee-kohk-kah/-keh	<i>apricot/s</i>
ananas [m]	ah-nah-nahs	<i>pineapple</i>
arancia/arance [f]	ah-rahn-chah/-cheh	<i>orange/s</i>
asparago/i [m]	ah-spah-rah-goh/-jee	<i>asparagus</i>
banana/e [f]	bah-nah-nah/-neh	<i>banana/s</i>
broccoli [m]	brohk-koh-lee	<i>broccoli</i>
carota/e [f]	kah-roh-tah/-teh	<i>carrot/s</i>

(continued)

Table 7-1 (continued)

<i>Italian/Plural</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>	<i>Translation</i>
cavolo/i [m]	kah-voh-loh/-lee	cabbage/s
ciliegia/e [f]	chee-lee-eh-jah/-jeh	cherry/cherries
cocomero/i [m]	koh-koh-meh-roh/-ree	watermelon/s
fico/fichi [m]	fee-koh/-kee	fig/s
fragola/e [f]	frah-goh-lah/-leh	strawberry/strawberries
fungo/funghi [m]	foohn-goh/-gee	mushroom/s
limone/i [m]	lee-moh-neh/-nee	lemon/s
mela/e [f]	meh-lah/-leh	apple/s
melanzana/e [f]	meh-lahn-zah-nah/-neh	eggplant/s
melone/i [m]	meh-loh-neh/-nee	melon/s
peperone/i [m]	peh-peh-roh-neh/-nee	pepper/s
pera/e [f]	peh-rah/-reh	pear/s
pesca/pesche [f]	pehs-kah/-keh	peach/es
pomodoro/i [m]	poh-moh-doh-roh/-ree	tomato/es
pompelmo/i [m]	pohm-pehl-moh/-mee	grapefruit/s
prugna/e [f]	prooh-nyah/-nyeh	plum/s
spinaci [m]	spee-nah-chee	spinach
uva [f]	ooh-vah	grapes
zucchino/i [f/m]	dzoohk-kee-noh/-nee	zucchini



The typical Italian market

You may recognize typical Italian markets from a vacation or maybe from watching a film. Some of them seem to be made exclusively for tourists, but Italians themselves use them. You may think that haggling and bargaining are

common at Italian markets, but this is not true. You can certainly try it with a leather jacket at the market in a big city like Florence, but it's better to leave it alone when buying food items.



Fun & Games

We talk a lot about food in this chapter. To reward ourselves at the end, we allow ourselves a really good fruit shake. Fill in the Italian for the following various fruits. See Appendix D for the answer key. Have fun!

1. pineapple _____
 2. cherry _____
 3. grape _____
 4. pear _____
 5. watermelon _____
 6. strawberry _____
-

Chapter 8

Shopping, Italian Style

In This Chapter

- Shopping at department stores and boutiques
- Getting the right size
- Finding colors, materials, and accessories to suit you
- Trying on shoes

Italy is famous throughout the world for its fashion, **la moda** (lah *moh-dah*), as well as for its **stilisti** (stee-*lees-tee*) (*designers*) — such as **Armani** (ahr-*mah-nee*) and **Valentino** (vah-*lehn-tee-noh*). You might suddenly feel inspired to shop, and what better place to shop than in Italy! In Italian, a famous brand is called **la griffe** (lah *greef*) (a French word) or **la firma** (lah *feer-mah*) that means literally “the signature.” So to say that a good is “signed” (designed) by a famous stylist we say that it is **griffato** (greet-*fah-toh*) or **firmato** (feer-*mah-toh*) — “signed.”

Clothing Yourself

Shopping can be an informative and fun way to learn about a culture because of the ways that colors and fabrics differ. For example, you can always tell what color is in fashion and how careful Italians are about wearing ironed clothes just by walking down a city street. In Italy, you can explore lots of boutiques and designer shops, as well as numerous department stores.

Deciding between department stores and boutiques

North Americans have access to huge **centri commerciali** (*chehn-tree kohm-mehr-chah-lee*) (*shopping malls*), where you really can find everything. In Italy, people shop in **grandi magazzini** (*graahn-dee mah-gaht-dzee-nee*) (*department stores*), which are tiny compared to American ones. The biggest Italian department stores are **Coin** (koh-*ehn*), **Upim** (*ooh-peem*), and **Rinascente** (ree-nah-shehn-teh). All three carry a variety of items; however,

many Italians prefer to shop in smaller, privately owned stores where service is key (and where there is little to no browsing and self-service).

Incidentally, what's shopping in Italian? They say **fare la spesa** (*fah-reh la speh-zah*) when you buy food, and **fare spese** and **fare lo shopping** (*fah-reh loh shohp-peeng*) for everything else. Good news is that you only have to conjugate the verb **fare**. (See Chapter 2 and Appendix A for this verb conjugated).

In some places, you will notice some elementary signs — like the one over the door reading **uscita di sicurezza** (*ooh-shee-tah dee see-kooh-reht-tsah*) (*emergency exit*) — can be very useful. Some of these are:

- ✓ **entrata** (*ehn-trah-tah*) (*entrance*)
- ✓ **uscita** (*ooh-shee-tah*) (*exit*)
- ✓ **spingere** (*speen-jeh-reh*) (*to push*)
- ✓ **tirare** (*tee-rah-reh*) (*to pull*)
- ✓ **orario di apertura** (*oh-rah-ree-oh dee ah-pehr-tooh-rah*) (*business hours*)
- ✓ **aperto** (*ah-pehr-toh*) (*open*)
- ✓ **chiuso** (*kyoooh-zoh*) (*closed*)
- ✓ **la scala mobile** (*lah skah-lah moh-bee-leh*) (*escalator*)
- ✓ **l'ascensore** (*lah-shehn-soh-reh*) (*elevator*)
- ✓ **la cassa** (*lah kahs-sah*) (*cash register*)

Italian stores offer a great variety of products and still maintain an air of typical Italian style. Prices are clearly labeled in euros. Often, during **saldi** (*sahl-dee*) and **svendite** (*zvehn-dee-teh*) (*sales*), the **il prezzo** (*eel preht-tsoh*) (*price*) on the label is already reduced, but you may find tags reading **saldi alla cassa** (*sahl-dee ahl-lah kahs-sah*) (*reduction at the cash register*).

Following are some signs pointing to the various **reparti** (*reh-pahr-tee*) (*departments*) or individual boutiques.

- ✓ **abbigliamento da donna/ da uomo** (*ahb-bee-lyah-mehn-toh dah dohn-nah/woh-moh*) (*women's/men's wear*)
- ✓ **intimo donna** (*een-tee-moh dohn-nah*) (*ladies' intimate apparel*)
- ✓ **intimo uomo** (*een-tee-moh woh-moh*) (*men's intimate apparel*)
- ✓ **accessori** (*ahch-chehs-soh-ree*) (*accessories*)
- ✓ **profumeria** (*proh-fooh-meh-ree-ah*) (*perfumery; here you can buy shampoo, barrettes, creams, makeup, and other related items*).
- ✓ **casalinghi** (*kah-sah-leen-gee*) (*housewares*)
- ✓ **biancheria per la casa** (*byahn-keh-ree-ah pehr lah kah-sah*) (*household linens and towels*)

Talkin' the Talk

Here, a clerk is kept busy giving directions for various departments.

Sig.ra Verdi: **Sto cercando l'abbigliamento da bambino.**
 stoh chehr-kahn-doh lah-bbee-lyah-mehn-toh
 dah bahm-bee-noh
I'm looking for children's wear.

Clerk: **Al secondo piano.**
 ahl seh-kohn-doh pyah-noh
On the second floor.

Sig. Marchi: **Dove devo andare per ritirare un paio di pantaloni?**
 doh-veh deh-voh ahn-dah-reh pehr ree-tee-rah-reh
 oohn pah-yoh dee pahn-tah-loh-nee
Where should I go to pick up a pair of trousers?

Clerk: **Deve rivolgersi al commesso del reparto uomo.**
 deh-veh ree-vohl-jehr-see ahl kohm-mebs-soh dehl
 reh-pahr-toh woh-moh
You need to see the clerk in the men's department.

Anna: **Dove sono i camerini, per favore?**
 doh-veh soh-noh ee kah-meh-ree-nee pehr
 fah-voh-reh
Where are the fitting rooms, please?

Clerk: **Vede l'uscita di sicurezza? I camerini sono sulla sinistra.**
 veh-deh looh-shee-tah dee see-kooh-reht-tsah ee
 kah-meh-ree-nee soh-noh soohl-lah see-nees-trah
Do you see the emergency exit there? The fitting rooms are to the left.



Avere bisogno di (ah-veh-reh bee-zoh-nyoh dee) (*to need*) is a frequent expression in Italian. You use it in any kind of store. See Chapter 2 and Appendix A for the common verb **avere** (*to have*). The form that you use as a speaker goes like this:

Ho bisogno di . . . (oh bee-zoh-nyoh dee) (*I need . . .*)

When you're in a store and have a question or need some advice, you turn to **la commessa** [f] (lah kohm-mebs-sah) or **il commesso** [m] (eel kohm-mebs-soh) (*the sales clerk*) and say, **Mi può aiutare, per favore** (mee pwoh ah-yooh-tah-reh pehr fah-voh-reh) (*Can you help me, please?*) Of course, if you're just looking and a salesperson asks, "**Desidera?**" (deh-zee-deh-rah) (*Can I be of help? Can I help you?*), you can answer, "**Posso dare un'occhiata?**" (pohs-soh dah-reh oohn-ohk-kyah-tah) (*Is it all right if I just look?*)

Words to Know

vestiti [m]	veh <u>s</u> -tee-tee	clothes
abito [m]	ah-bee-toh	suit
camicetta [f]	kah-mee- <u>cheht</u> -tah	blouse
camicia [f]	kah-mee-chah	shirt
cappotto [m]	kahp- <u>poh</u> -toh	coat
completo [m]	kohm- <u>pleht</u> -oh	outfit
costume da bagno [m]	kohs-tooh-meh dah bahn -yoh	bathing suit
giacca [f]	jah <u>k</u> -kah	jacket; sports jacket
gonna [f]	go <u>hn</u> -nah	skirt
impermeabile [m]	eem-pehr-meh- <u>ah-bee-leh</u>	raincoat
jeans [m]	jeen <u>z</u>	jeans
maglia [f]	ma <u>h</u> -lyah	sweater
maglietta [f];	mahl-yeht-tah	T-shirt
pantaloni [m]	pahn-tah- <u>loh</u> -nee	pants
tailleur [m]	tah- <u>lyehr</u>	skirt or pants and jacket
vestito [m]	veh <u>s</u> -tee-tah	dress
piccolo	pee <u>-koh</u> -loh	small
grande	gra <u>hn</u> -deh	large

Sizing up Italian sizes

You know the problem: Whenever you go to another country, and this is particularly true in Europe, the sizes — called **taglie** (*tah-lyeh*) or **misure** (*mee-zoooh-reh*) in Italy — change and you never know which one corresponds to yours. Table 8-1 helps you with this problem by giving you the most common sizes.

Table 8-1**Clothing Sizes**

Italian Size	American Size	Canadian Size
Women's dress sizes		
40	4	6
42	6	8
44	8	10
46	10	12
48	12	14
Men's suit sizes		
48	38	40
50	40	42
52	42	44
54	44	46
56	46	48

In Italy you won't have any difficulties with sizes like S, M, L, and XL because they are used the same way: S for small, M for medium, L for large, and XL for extra large. Beware, though, that an Italian L seems to correspond to a North American S.

Talkin' the Talk



Giovanna has found the skirt she's been looking for. She asks the saleswoman if she can try it on.

Giovanna: **Posso provare questa gonna?**
pohs-soh proh-vah-reh kwehs-tah gohn-nah
May I try on this skirt?

Saleswoman: **Certo. Che taglia porta?**
chehr-toh keh tah-lyah pohr-tah
Sure. What size do you wear?

Giovanna: **La quarantadue.**
 lah kwah-rah-n-tah-doo-h-eh
Forty-two.

Saleswoman: **Forse è un po' piccola.**
 fohr-seh eh oohn poh peek-koh-lah
Perhaps it's a little bit too small.

Giovanna: **Me la provo.**
 meh lah proh-voh
I'll try it on.

Giovanna returns from the dressing room.

Saleswoman: **Va bene?**
 vah beh-neh
Does it fit?

Giovanna: **È troppo stretta. Ha una taglia più grande?**
 eh trohp-poh streht-tah ah ooh-nah tah-lyah
 pyooh grahn-deh
It's too tight. Do you have it in a larger size?

Saleswoman: **Nella sua taglia solo blu.**
 nehl-lah sooh-ah tah-lyah soh-loh blooh
In your size, only in blue.

Talking definitely and indefinitely

When you're shopping for something, even if you're looking for something as specific as a blue skirt, you don't say, "I'm looking for the blue skirt." Instead, you say that you're looking for a blue skirt, where the a is an indefinite article showing that you don't have a specific object in mind.

You use exactly the same construction in Italian: I'm looking for a blue skirt becomes "**Sto cercando una gonna blu.**" (stoh cher-kahn-doh ooh-nah gohn-nah blooh), and **una** here is your indefinite article: the indefinite articles correspond to the English a and an. In Italian the article has to match the gender of the word: Feminine words, which usually end with -a, use **una** and **un'** and masculine words (which usually end with o) use **un or uno**.



Coloring your words

Of course, knowing some **colori** (koh-loh-ree) (*colors*) is important. We want to make life a little easier for you, so we put the most common colors in Table 8-2. Some colors agree in number and gender, some agree only in number, and some are invariable! The following table is organized accordingly (with the first set agreeing in number and gender).

Table 8-2**Colors**

Italian	Pronunciation	Translation
<i>Color adjectives that agree in number and gender (o/a/i/e/i)</i>		
rosso	<i>rohs-soh</i>	<i>red</i>
giallo	<i>jahl-loh</i>	<i>yellow</i>
azzurro	<i>ahd-dzoohr-roh</i>	<i>sky blue</i>
bianco	<i>byahn-koh</i>	<i>white</i>
grigio	<i>gree-joh</i>	<i>gray</i>
nero	<i>neh-roh</i>	<i>black</i>
<i>Color adjectives that agree only in number (e/i)</i>		
verde	<i>vehr-deh</i>	<i>green</i>
<i>Color adjectives that never change, invariable!</i>		
marrone	<i>mahr-roh-neh</i>	<i>brown</i>
rosa	<i>roh-zah</i>	<i>pink</i>
beige	<i>beh-jeh</i>	<i>beige</i>
blu	<i>blooh</i>	<i>blue</i>
arancione	<i>ah-rahn-choh-neh</i>	<i>orange</i>
viola	<i>vee-oh-lah</i>	<i>purple</i>

Talkin' the Talk



Matteo is looking for a new suit for the summer.

Salesman: **La posso aiutare?**
lah pohs-soh ah-yooh-tah-reh
May I help you?

Matteo: **Sì. Cerco una giacca sportiva blu . . .**
 see chehr-koh ooh-nah jak-kah spohr-tee-vah blooh
 Yes. I'm looking for a casual blue jacket . . .

. . . con i pantaloni bianchi di lino
 kohn ee pahn-tah-loh-nee biahn-kee dee lee-noh
 . . . and also some white linen pants.

Salesman: **Benissimo. Ecco . . . Provi questi**
 behn-ees-see-moh ehk-koh proh-vee kwehs-tee
 Very well. Here you are . . . try these on.

Matteo returns with a smile on his face.

Salesman: **Va bene?**
 vah beh-neh
 Okay?

Matteo: **Sì, mi vanno bene. Li prendo.**
 see mee vahn-noh beh-neh lee prehn-doh
 Yes, they fit me well. I'll take them.

Words to Know

camoscio [m]	kah- <u>moh</u> -shoh	suede
cotone [m]	koh- <u>toh</u> -neh	cotton
fodera [f]	<u>foh</u> -deh-rah	lining
lana [f]	<u>lah</u> -nah	wool
lino [m]	<u>lee</u> -noh	linen
pelle [f]	<u>pehl</u> -leh	leather
seta [f]	<u>seh</u> -tah	silk
velluto [m]	<u>vehl</u> - <u>looh</u> -toh	velvet
viscosa [f]	<u>vees</u> - <u>koh</u> -zah	rayon

Accessorizing

Of course, you want to complement your outfit with beautiful **accessori** (ahch-chehs-soh-ree) (*accessories*) to give it that final touch. We list some of them to give you an impression of the variety:

- ✓ **berretto** (behr-reht-toh) (*cap*)
 - ✓ **borsa** (bohr-sah) (*bag*)
 - ✓ **calze** (kahl-tseh) (*stockings*)
 - ✓ **cappello** (kahp-pehl-loh) (*hat*)
 - ✓ **cintura** (cheen-too-rah) (*belt*)
 - ✓ **collant** (kohl-lahn) (*tights/pantyhose*)
 - ✓ **cravatta** (krah-vaht-tah) (*tie*)
 - ✓ **guanti** (gwahn-tee) (*gloves*)
 - ✓ **ombrella** (ohm-brehl-loh) (*umbrella*)
 - ✓ **sciarpa** (shahr-pah) (*scarf*)

If you want to go shopping and ask for one of these accessories, you could do it like this:

Talkin' the Talk

Giovanni wants to buy a scarf for his wife. He asks the sales clerk for help.

Giovanni: Vorrei una sciarpa rossa.
vohr-ray ooh-nah shahr-pah rohs-sah
I'd like a red scarf.

Sales clerk: **Ne abbiamo una bellissima, di cachemire.**
neh ahb-bee-ah-moh ooh-nah behl-lees-see-mah
dee kahsh-meer
We have a very beautiful cashmere one.

È in saldo.
eh een *sahl-doh*
It's on sale.

Giovanni: **Sono scontati questi guanti viola?**
soh-noh skohn-tah-tee kwehs-tee gwahn-tee
vee-oh-lah
Are these purple gloves on sale?

Sales clerk: **Si.**
see
Yes.

Stepping out in style

Oh yes, this is important stuff. You know that Italy is the leader in the shoe industry. You won't believe what good taste Italians have in **scarpe** (*skahr-peh*) (*shoes*). You may just find the shoes of your dreams, whether they be a regular **paio di scarpe** (*pah-yoh dee skahr-peh*) (*pair of shoes*), **pantofole** (*pahn-toh-foh-leh*) (*slippers*), **sandali** (*sahn-dah-lee*) (*sandals*), or **stivali** (*stee-vah-lee*) (*boots*).

When you try on footwear, some words you may need to use are:

- ✓ **stretta/e/o/i** (*streht-tah/teh/toh/tee*) (*tight*)
- ✓ **larga/ghe/go/ghi** (*lahr-gah/geh/goh/gee*) (*loose*)
- ✓ **corta/e/o/i** (*kohr-tah/the/ teh/toh/tee*) (*short*)
- ✓ **lunga/ghe/go/ghi** (*looohn-gah/ge goh/gee*) (*long*)



You may notice that Italian uses **numero** (*nooh-meh-roh*) (*number*) to talk about shoes, but **taglia** (*tah-lyah*) or **misura** (*mee-sooh-rah*) (*size*) to talk about clothes.

Table 8-3 shows women's shoe sizes and their conversions.

Table 8-3 **Women's Shoe Sizes**

US and Canada	European	United Kingdom
5	35	2.5
5.5	35.5	3
6	36	3.5
6.5	36.5	4
7	37	4.5
7.5	37.5	5
8	38	5.5
8.5	38.5	6
9	39	6.5
9.5	39.5	7
10	40	7.5
10.5	40.5	8

Talkin' the Talk



If you have seen the pair of shoes of your dreams **in vetrina** (een veh-tree-nah) (*in the shop window*) and you'd like to try them on, you can follow Michela's example:

Michela: **Posso provare le scarpe esposte in vetrina?**
 pohs-soh proh-vah-reh leh skahr-peh ehs-pohs-teh een veh-tree-nah
May I try on a pair of shoes in the window?

Saleswoman: **Quali sono?**
 kwah-lee soh-noh
Which ones?

Michela: **Quelle blu, a destra.**
 kwehl-leh blooh ah dehs-trah
Those blue ones there, on the right.

Saleswoman: **Che numero porta?**
 keh nooh-meh-roh pohr-tah
Which size do you wear?

Michela: **Trentasette.**
 trehn-tah-seht-teh
Thirty-seven.

Saleswoman: **Ecco qua. Un trentasette . . . sono strette?**
 ehk-koh kwah oohn trehn-tah-seht-teh soh-noh streht-teh
Here we are. A 37 . . . Are they tight?

Michela: **No. Sono comodissime.**
 noh soh-noh koh-moh-dees-see-meh
No. They are very comfortable.

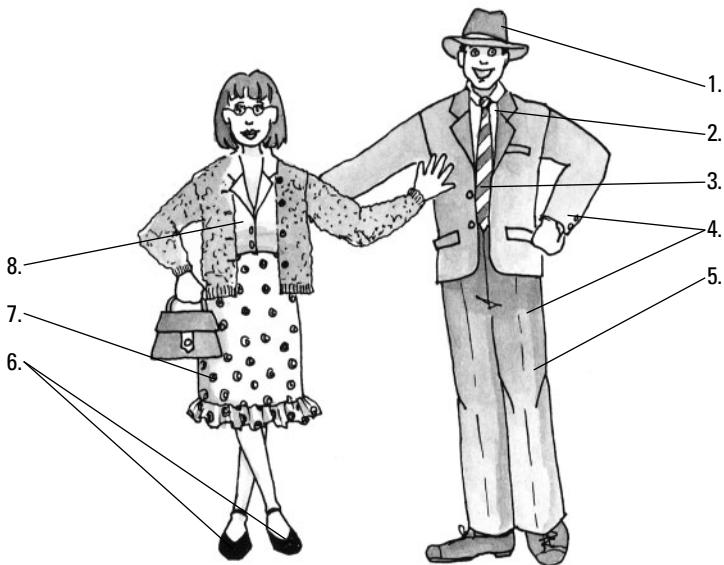
Michela: **Quanto vengono?**
 kwahn-toh vehn-goh-noh
How much do they cost?

Saleswoman: **Novanta euro.**
 noh-vahn-tah eh-ooh-roh
Ninety euros.



Fun & Games

I give you a lot of information and vocabulary about clothes shopping in this chapter. See how many articles of clothing you can identify on the following couple. See Appendix D for the answer key.



Chapter 9

Having Fun Out on the Town

In This Chapter

- Having fun in Italy
- Enjoying movies, art, theater, and other forms of entertainment
- Giving and receiving invitations

Doing the town is always fun. In general, Italians are sociable people who enjoy having a good time. You see them having espressos together at a **bar** (ahl bahr) (*in the bar*) or drinks at night at **piazza** (een pyah-tsa) (*on the public square*). Most Italians love to go out in the evening, crowding the streets until late at night.

Italy is a popular vacation destination, and Italian cities have a great variety of cultural offerings, from the numerous local fairs and **sagre** (sah-greh) (*town celebrations relating to harvest, wild boar, or saints*, for example) to open-air festivals and music events to city-wide celebrations. The variety is endless, and fun is guaranteed. The festivals relating to saints are for the **santo patrono** (sahn-toh pah-troh-noh) (*patron saint*). The **sagre** are to celebrate agricultural products. These two things are different.

In this chapter, I give you a lot of information you need to take in cultural attractions and socialize.

Acquiring Culture

No matter where you live or where you travel, most major cities have a weekly **pubblicazione** (poohb-blee-kah-tsoh-neh) (*publication*) listing information about upcoming events. These publications include dates, descriptions, and time schedules for theaters, exhibitions, festivals, films, and so on. They also provide tips for shopping and restaurants.



In smaller towns without weekly magazines, you may see events announced on posters. You can also find information in the local newspapers.

Of course, newspapers aren't your only source of information about things to do and see. Asking the following questions can get you answers you want.

- ✓ **Cosa c'è da fare di sera?** (*koh-zah cheh dah fah-reh dee seh-rah*) (*Are there any events in the evenings?*)
- ✓ **Può suggerirmi qualcosa?** (*pwoh soohj-jeh-reer-mee kwahl-koh-zah*) (*Can you recommend something to me?*)
- ✓ **C'è un concerto stasera?** (*cheh oohn kohn-chehr-toh stah-seh-rah*) (*Is there a concert tonight?*)
- ✓ **Ci sono ancora posti?** (*chee soh-noh ahn-koh-rah pohs-tee*) (*Are there any seats left?*)
- ✓ **Dove si comprano i biglietti?** (*doh-veh see kohm-prah-noh ee bee-lyeht-tee*) (*Where can we get tickets?*)
- ✓ **Quanto vengono i biglietti?** (*kwahn-toh vehn-goh-noh ee bee-lyeht-tee*) (*How much are the tickets?*)
- ✓ **A che ora comincia lo spettacolo?** (*ah keh oh-rah koh-meen-chah loh speht-tahk-koh-loh*) (*What time does the show begin?*)
- ✓ **Non c'è niente di più economico?** (*nohn cheh nee-ehn-teh dee pyooh eh-koh-noh-mee-koh*) (*Isn't there anything cheaper?*)

Talkin' the Talk

Arturo works at a theater. He is bombarded with questions from patrons before the show.

Sig. Paoli: **Quando comincia lo spettacolo?**
kwahn-doh koh-meen-chah loh speht-tah-koh-loh
 When does the show start?

Arturo: **Alle sette e mezza.**
ahl-leh seht-teh eh mehd-dzah
 At half past seven.

Erika: **A che ora finisce lo spettacolo?**
ah keh oh-rah fee-nee-sheh loh speht-tah-koh-loh
 What time is the show going to end?

Arturo: **Verso le dieci.**
vehr-soh leh dyeh-chee
 About ten p.m.

Erika: **C'è un intervallo?**
cheh oohn een-tehr-vah/-loh
 Is there an intermission?

Arturo: **Sì, tra il secondo e il terzo atto.**
 see trah eel seh-kohn-doh eh eel tehr-tsoh aht-toh
 Yes, between the second and third acts.

Words to Know

a che ora?	ah keh <u>oh</u> -rah	what time?
quando?	<u>k</u> wahn-doh	when?
dove?	<u>d</u> oh-veh	where?
divertente	dee-vehr- <u>tehn</u> -teh	fun
biglietto [m]	bee-lyeht-toh	ticket
spettacolo [m]	speht- <u>tah</u> -koh-loh	show
cominciare	koh-meen- <u>chah</u> -reh	to start
finire	fee- <u>nee</u> -reh	to end

Italian films

It's well known that Italy produces a great number of films, and there are many Italian directors who are famous throughout the world: Fellini, Rossellini, Bertolucci, De Sica, and Nanni Moretti, to name a few. Some of their works are considered classics of Italian culture, and I highly recommend them to you. Other contemporary directors to look for include Giuseppe Tornatore, Gabriele Salvatores, Francesca Archibugi, and Emanuele Crialese.

La dolce vita and **La strada** are among Fellini's masterpieces. The dramatic and moving **Roma, città aperta** (*Open City*) is one of Rossellini's

most significant movies. To complete the image of the Italian cinema between 1948 and 1957, you need to include De Sica's **Ladri di biciclette** (*The Bicycle Thief*). Bertolucci belongs to a subsequent period and is known for his **Il conformista** (*The Conformist*) whereas Moretti's **Caro diario** and **La stanza del figlio** made big contributions to disseminating Italian culture abroad in the 1990s.

Then we have Roberto Benigni, who not only directed one of the most successful "foreign" films of modern times but won an Academy Award for acting in **La vita è bella** — *Life is Beautiful*.

Going to the movies

Going **al cinema** (ahl *chee-neh-mah*) (*to the movies*) is a popular activity almost everywhere. In Italy, American films usually are **doppiati** (dohp-*pyah-tee*) (*dubbed*) into Italian. On the other hand, why not go to an original Italian film? Doing so provides you with a good opportunity to polish your Italian.

Some special questions for the movies include:

- ✓ **Andiamo al cinema?** (ahn-dyah-moh ahl *chee-neh-mah*) (*Shall we go to the movies?*)
- ✓ **Cosa danno?** (koh-zah *dahn-noh*) (*What's playing?*)
- ✓ **Dove lo danno?** (doh-veh loh *dahn-noh*) (*Where is [the movie] being shown?*)
- ✓ **È in lingua (versione) originale?** (eh in *leen-gwah* [vehr-see-ohn-neh] oh-ree-jee-nah-leh) (*Is the film in the original language?*)
- ✓ **Dov'è il cinema Trianon?** (doh-veh eel *chee-neh-mah tree-ah-nohn*) (*Where is the Trianon cinema?*)

Often saying the name of the movie theater is sufficient, for example, **Dov'è il Trianon?** (doh-veh eel *tree-ah-nohn*) (*Where is the Trianon?*)

Talkin' the Talk



Ugo and Bianca are two Fellini fans. Ugo wants to go to the movies and asks his girlfriend Bianca if she feels like going with him.

- | | |
|---------|--|
| Ugo: | Andiamo al cinema?
ahn-dyah-moh ahl <i>chee-neh-mah</i>
Shall we go to the movies? |
| Bianca: | Che film vuoi vedere?
keh feelm vwoi veh-deh-reh
Which movie would you like to see? |
| Ugo: | La dolce vita, naturalmente.
lah dohl-cheh vee-tah nah-tooh-rahl-mehn-teh
La dolce vita, of course. |
| Bianca: | Oh, l'ho visto solo tre volte!
oh loh vees-toh soh-loh treh vohl-teh
Oh, I've only seen it three times! |
| | Dove lo danno?
doh-veh loh <i>dahn-noh</i>
Where is it being shown? |

- Ugo: **Al Tiziano, qui vicino.**
 ahl tee-tsee-ah-noh kwee vee-chee-noh
 At the Tiziano, nearby.
- Bianca: **A che ora comincia?**
 ah keh oh-rah koh-meen-chah
 What time does it start?
- Ugo: **Esattamente fra cinque minuti!**
 eh-zaht-tah-mehn-teh frah cheen-kweh
 mee-nooh-tee
 In exactly five minutes!
- Bianca: **Cosa aspettiamo?**
 koh-zah ahs-peht-tyah-moh
 What are we waiting for?



Italian movie theaters used to be rather small, showing only one movie at a time. Now virtually all large Italian cities have big **multisala** (moohl-tee-sah-lah) (*multiplex*) cinemas, with many screens.

Talkin' the Talk

Films are an interesting topic of conversation. Here is a typical dialogue between two friends, Chiara and Alberto.

- Chiara: **Hai visto l'ultimo film di Salvatores?**
 ahy vees-toh loohl-tee-moh feelm dee
 sahl-vah-toh-rez
 Have you seen the new Salvatores film?
- Alberto: **Ancora no, e tu?**
 ahn-koh-rah noh eh tooh
 Not yet, and you?
- Chiara: **Sì, ieri sera.**
 see yeh-ree seh-rah
 Yes, last night.
- Alberto: **Com'è?**
 koh-meh
 How is it?
- Chiara: **L'attore principale è bravissimo!**
 laht-toh-reh preen-chee-pah-leh eh
 brah-vees-see-moh
 The lead actor is really good!

Alberto: **Ma dai! Lo dici perché è bello!**
 mah dahy loh dee-chee pehr-keh eh behl-loh
 Come on! You say that because he's good looking!

Chiara: **E allora? E il film è così divertente!**
 eh ahl-loh-rah eh eel feelm eh koh-zee
 dee-vehr-tehn-teh
 So what? And the movie is so amusing!

Alberto: **L'ultimo film di Salvatores era così serio.**
 /oohl-tee-moh feelm dee sahl-vah-toh-rez eh-rah
 koh-zee seh-ree-oh
 Salvatores' last film was so serious.

Words to Know

Chi è il regista? *kee eh eel
reh-jees-tah* Who is the
director?

Chi sono gli attori? *kee soh-noh lyee
aht-toh-ree* Who's starring?

attore [m] *aht-toh-reh* actor

regista [f/m] *reh-jees-tah* director

trama [f] *trah-mah* plot

scena [f] *sheh-nah* scene

Going to the theater

The language of the theater and the cinema is very similar. Of course, when you attend a play, opera, or symphony performance, there is a variety of seats. For example, you can sit in the **platea** (plah-teh-ah) (*orchestra*) **i palchi** (pahl-kee) (*box seats*) or **il loggione** (eel lohj-joh-neh) (*the gallery*), which used to be called **la piccionaia** (lah pee-choh-nah-yah) (*Literally: the pigeonhouse*) because it is high up.

Talkin' the Talk

In the following dialogue, Eugenio wants to know whether seats are available for a certain performance of a play he wants to see. He's speaking on the phone with the person at the theater box office.

- | | |
|---------------|---|
| Ticket Agent: | Pronto?
<i>prohn-toh</i>
Hello? |
| Eugenio: | Buongiorno. È il Teatro Valle?
<i>bwohn-johr-noh eh eel teh-ah-tro vahl-leh</i>
Good morning. Is this the Valle Theater? |
| Ticket Agent: | Sì. Mi dica.
<i>see mee dee-kah</i>
Yes. Can I help you? (Literally: Tell me.) |
| Eugenio: | Vorrei prenotare dei posti.
<i>vohr-rey preh-noh-tah-reh dey pohs-tee</i>
I'd like to reserve some seats. |
| Ticket Agent: | Per quale spettacolo?
<i>pehr kwah-leh speht-tah-koh-loh</i>
For which performance? |
| Eugenio: | Aspettando Godot, domani sera.
<i>ahs-peht-tahn-doh goh-doh doh-mah-nee seh-rah</i>
Waiting for Godot, tomorrow evening. |
| Ticket Agent: | Mi dispiace: È tutto esaurito.
<i>mee dees-pyah-cheh eh tooht-toh eh-zou-ree-toh</i>
I'm sorry: It's sold out. |
| Eugenio: | Ci sono repliche?
<i>chee soh-noh reh-plee-keh</i>
Are there other performances? |
| Ticket Agent: | L'ultima è dopodomani.
<i>loohl-tee-mah eh doh-poh-doh-mah-nee</i>
The last one is the day after tomorrow. |



Did you notice that the title of the play, *Waiting for Godot*, has no preposition in Italian? In English, you wait for someone, but Italians say “waiting somebody” — **aspettare qualcuno** (ahs-peht-tah-reh kwahl-kooh-noh). You may also hear **ti aspetto** (tee ahs-peht-toh) (*I'm waiting for you*).

Talkin' the Talk

Eugenio asks his friends about changing the date they see the play and then calls the box office again.

- | | |
|----------|--|
| Voice: | Pronto?
prohn-toh
Hello? |
| Eugenio: | Ho telefonato due minuti fa.
oh teh-leh-foh-nah-toh dooh-eh mee-nooh-tee fah
I called two minutes ago. |
| Voice: | Sì, mi dica!
See mee dee-kah
Yes, how can I help you? |
| Eugenio: | Sì, vorrei prenotare tre posti per dopodomani
see vohr-rey preh-noh-tah-reh treh pohs-tee pehr
<i>doh-poh-doh-mah-nee</i>
Yes, I'd like to reserve three seats for day after tomorrow. |
| Voice: | Che posti desidera?
keh pohs-tee deh-zee-deh-rah
Which seats would you like? |
| Eugenio: | Non troppo cari.
nohn trohp-poh kah-ree
Not too expensive. |
| Voice: | La platea costa trentadue Euro.
lah plah-teh-ah kohs-tah trehn-tah-dooh-eh
eh-ooh-roh
The orchestra is thirty-two euros. |

Eugenio: **Ci sono tre posti centrali?**
 chee soh-noh treh pohs-tee chehn-trah-lee
 Are there three middle seats?

Voice: **Un momento . . . sì, tre posti nella quindicesima fila.**
 oohn moh-mehn-toh see tre pohs-tee nehl-lah
 kween-dee-cheh-zee-mah fee-lah
Just a moment . . . yes, three seats in row 15.

Paga con Bancomat o con carta di credito?
 pah-gah kohn bahn-koh-maht oh kohn kahr-tah
 dee kreh-dee-toh
 Will you pay with an debit card or a credit card?

Eugenio: **Bancomat, per favore.**
 bahn-koh-maht pehr fah-voh-reh
 Debit card, thank you.

If you come to Italy, you can catch an opera by Verdi, Puccini, or Rossini in wonderful theaters such as Milan's **La Scala** (lah skah-lah), Naples's **San Carlo** (sahn kahr-loh), and the theaters of Florence and Palermo. In the summer months, try to check out theater festivals (which include a wide variety of repertoires and venues citywide), like the famous Ravenna Festival. You can also see outdoor operas in Verona, at the old Roman **Arena** (ah-reh-nah). Following are some phrases concerning performances:

- ✓ **la danza classica/moderna/contemporanea** (lah dahn-zah klahs-see-kah/moh-dehr-nah/kohn-tehm-poh-rah-neh-ah) (*classical/modern/contemporary dance*)
- ✓ **lo spettacolo** (loh speht-tah-koh-loh) (*the show; the performance*)
- ✓ **la prova generale pubblica** (lah proh-vah jeh-neh-rah-leh poohb-blee-kah) (*public dress rehearsals*)
- ✓ **la replica** (lah reh-plee-kah) (*repeat performance*)
- ✓ **il matinée** (eel mah-tee-neh) (*matinee*)
- ✓ **lo spettacolo pomeridiano** (loh speht-tah-koh-loh poh-meh-ree-dyah-noh) (*afternoon performance*)



Some theaters don't accept telephone reservations; you can only "reserve at the box office" — **prenotazione al botteghino** (preh-noh-tah-tsyoh-neh ahl boht-teh-gee-noh). You can pay for the tickets and either pick them up immediately or before the performance begins.

Going to a museum

Here are some of the most frequented museums with the richest collections: the **Uffizi** (oohf-fee-tsee) Gallery in Florence; **La Galleria Borghese** (lah gahl-leh-ree-ah bohr-geh-seh) and the **Musei Vaticani** (mooh-zeh-ee vah-tee-kah-nee) in Rome; the Peggy Guggenheim Collection in Venice; and **Il Museo della Scienza e della Tecnica** (eel mooh-zeh-oh dehl-lah shehn-zah eh dehl-lah tehk-nee-kah) in Milan. Every two years there is also the **Biennale di Venezia** (bee-ehn-nah-leh dee veh-nets-ee-ah) where you can view the work of many well-known contemporary international artists.

Talkin' the Talk

Take a look at this dialogue between two friends who are about to go **al museo** (ahl mooh-zeh-oh) (*to the museum*).

- Luisa: **Ciao, Flavia, dove vai?**
chou flah-vee-ah doh-veh vahy
Hello, Flavia, where are you going?
- Flavia: **Ciao! Alla mostra di Caravaggio.**
chou ahl-lah mohs-trah dee kah-rah-vaj-joh
Hello! To the Caravaggio exhibit.
- Luisa: **Ma dai: ci vado anch'io!**
mah dahy chee vah-doh ahn-kee-oh
You don't say! I'm going there too!
- Flavia: **Allora andiamo insieme!**
ahl-loh-rah ahn-dyah-moh een-syeh-meh
In that case, let's go together!
- Luisa: **Certo! Viene anche Janet.**
chehr-toh vyeh-neh ahn-keh jah-neht
Sure! Janet is coming also.
- Flavia: **La conosco?**
lah koh-nohs-koh
Do I know her?
- Luisa: **Sì, la mia amica americana.**
see lah mee-ah ah-mee-kah ah-meh-ree-kah-nah
Yes, my American friend.

Flavia: **Dove avete appuntamento?**
doh-veh ah-veh-teh ahp-poohn-tah-mehn-toh
 Where are you meeting?

Luisa: **Davanti al museo.**
dah-vahn-tee ahl mooh-zeh-oh
 In front of the museum.

Going to a local festival

In this chapter's introduction I refer to the many local **sagre** (*sah-greh*) (*fairs*) and festivals you can find in Italy especially during the spring, summer, and fall. The themes of these fairs vary, ranging from the ones that are political in origin such as **La festa di l'Unità** (*lah fehs-tah dee looh-nee-tah*) (*a left-leaning newspaper*) to the ones that are nature-related: **La sagra del cinghiale** (*lah sah-grah dehl cheen-gyah-leh*) (*the wild-boar festival*) and **La sagra del pesce azzurro** (*lah sah-grah dehl peh-sheh adz-zooth-roh*) (*the Blue Fish Fair*) are two that come to mind. Do drop in if you find one because these are often the perfect venues for experiencing local culture and homemade food.

Talkin' the Talk

Paola tries to convince Martino to visit the cathedral.

Paola: **Lo sai che oggi c'è la Sagra dell'uva a Bertinoro?**
*loh sahy keh oj-jee cheh lah sah-grah dehl-looh-vah
 ah behr-teen-oh-roh*
 Did you know that today there is the grape festival
 in Bertinoro?

Martino: **Divertente! O facciamoci un salto!**
*dee-vehr-tehn-teh oh fahch-chah-moh-chee oohn
 sahl-toh*
 What fun! Oh, Let's stop by!

Paola: **Partiamo subito?**
pahr-tyah-moh sooh-bee-toh
 Shall we leave right away?

Martino: **Sì, perché no?**
see pehr-keh noh
 Yes, why not?

Paola: **In quel paese fanno anche degli ottimi cappelletti!**
in kwehl pah-eh-zeh fahn-noh dehl-yee oht-tee-mee
kahp-pehl-leht-tee
They make great cappelletti in that town.

Martino: **Ottimo, così ci fermiamo a cena.**
oht-tee-moh koh-zee chee fehr-mee-ah-moh ah
cheh-nah
Great! This way we can stay for supper.

Going to a concert

If you're interested in music, you will certainly be able to hear some in Italy, from the **Umbria** (*oohm-bree-ah*) **Jazz Festival** to the **Festival dei due mondi** (*fehs-tee-vahl dey dooh-eh mohn-dee*) in Spoleto to your favorite Italian **cantautore** (*kahn-tou-toh-reh*) (*singer-songwriter*).

Italy is full of old and beautiful churches and cathedrals where **musicisti** (*mooh-zee-chees-tee*) (*musicians*) often present classical music concerts. You can also hear concerts in other places — sometimes in the center of a city in a piazza.

Talkin' the Talk

La signora and il signor Tiberi are reading the morning paper. Suddenly, la signora Tiberi cries out:

Sig.ra Tiberi: **Guarda qui!**
gwahr-dah kwee
Look here!

Sig. Tiberi: **Che c'è?**
keh cheh
What's up?

Sig.ra Tiberi: **Martedì c'è Pollini a Roma!**
mahr-teh-dee cheh pohl-lee-nee ah roh-mah
Pollini is in Rome on Tuesday!

Sig. Tiberi: **Tiene un concerto?**
tyeh-neh oohn kohn-chehr-toh
Is he going to give a concert?

Sig.ra Tiberi: **Sì, al Conservatorio.**
 see ahl kohn-sehr-vah-toh-ree-oh
 Yes, at the Conservatory.

Sig. Tiberi: **Sarà tutto esaurito?**
 sah-rah tooht-toh eh-zou-ree-toh
 Will it already be sold out?

Sig.ra Tiberi: **Forse no!**
 fohr-seh noh
 Maybe not!

Sig. Tiberi: **Vai al botteghino?**
 vahy ahl boht-teh-ghee-noh
 Are you going to the box office?

Sig.ra Tiberi: **Prima telefono.**
 pree-mah teh-leh-foh-noh
 I'm going to call first.



Maurizio Pollini is an internationally famous Italian pianist. We do hope that signor and signora Tiberi find two tickets for this event. **Buona fortuna!**
 (bwoh-nah fohr-tooh-nah) (Good luck!)

Words to Know

musica [f]	<u>moo</u> h-zee-kah	music
concerto [m]	<u>kohn</u> -chehr-toh	concert
esaurito	eh-zou- <u>ree</u> -toh	sold out
piano(forte) [m]	<u>pee</u> -ah-noh(<u>fohr</u> -teh)	piano
museo [m]	<u>mooh</u> -zeh-oh	museum
insieme	<u>een</u> -syeh-meh	together

Maybe you know a musician or someone who plays an instrument in his or her leisure time. You are probably curious about some things, such as:

- ✓ **Che strumento suoni?** (keh strooh-mehn-toh swoh-nee) (*Which instrument do you play?*)
- Suono il violino.** (swoh-noh eel vee-oh-lee-noh) (*I play the violin.*)
- ✓ **Dove suonate stasera?** (doh-veh swoh-nah-teh stah-seh-rah) (*Where are you playing tonight?*)
- Suoniamo al Blu Notte.** (swoh-nyah-moh ahl blooh noht-teh) (*We play/ We're playing at the Blu Notte.*)
- ✓ **Chi suona in famiglia?** (kee swoh-nah in fah-mee-lyah) (*Who in the family plays?*)
- Suonano tutti.** (swoh-nah-noh tooht-tee) (*All of them play.*)

Inviting Fun

Getting or giving **un invito** (oohn een-vee-toh) (*an invitation*) is always a pleasurable experience. A party (**una festa**) (ooh-nah fehs-tah) is a good opportunity to meet new people. In Italian, the verb **invitare** (een-vee-tah-reh) frequently means to treat someone to something. For example, if someone says “**Penso invitarti a teatro?**” (pohs-soh een-vee-tahr-tee ah teh-ah-troh) (*May I invite you to the theater?*), it means that the person is going to make the arrangements and pay for you.

The following expressions are other ways to suggest an activity:

- ✓ **Che ne pensa di andare a Roma?** (formal) (keh neh pehn-sah dee ahn-dah-reh ah roh-mah) (*What do you think of going to Rome?*)
- ✓ **Che ne dici di uscire stasera?** (informal) (keh neh dee-chee dee ooh-shee-reh stah-seh-rah) (*What do you say about going out tonight?*)
- ✓ **Andiamo in piscina!** (ahn-dyah-moh in pee-shee-nah) (*Let's go to the swimming pool!*)
- ✓ **Mangiamo una pizza!** (mahn-jah-moh ooh-nah peet-tsah) (*Let's eat a pizza!*)
- ✓ **Perché non andiamo a teatro?** (pehr-keh nohn ahn-dyah-moh ah teh-ah-troh) (*Why don't we go to the theater?*)

You can see that suggesting an activity in Italian is not so different from the way you do it in English. You can ask **Perché non . . .** (pehr-keh nohn) (*Why don't we . . .*) or **Che ne pensi . . .** (keh neh pehn-see) (*What do you think about . . .*).



The word **perché** is special. I use it in this chapter to ask the question “why.” However, it can also mean “because.” A dialogue can go like this:

Perché non mangi? (pehr-keh nohn mahn-jee) (*Why aren’t you eating?*)

Perché non ho fame. (pehr-keh nohn oh fah-meh) (*Because I’m not hungry.*)

Talkin’ the Talk

Guido has a new job. He’s very happy and wants to share his happiness with a couple of friends. He decides to **dare una festa** (dah-reh ooh-nah fehs-tah) (*have a party*) and tells his friend Caterina about it.

Guido: **Ho deciso!**
 oh deh-chee-zoh
 I’ve decided!

Caterina: **Cosa?**
 koh-zah
 What?

Guido: **Faccio una festa!**
 fahch-choh ooh-nah fehs-tah
 I’m giving a party!

Caterina: **Perchè? Quando?**
 pehr-keh kwahn-doh
 Why? When?

Guido: **Per il mio nuovo lavoro. Sabato sera.**
 pehr il mee-oh nwoh-voh lah-voh-roh sah-bah-toh seh-rah
 For my new job. Saturday night.

Caterina: **Una festa con musica, ballo, birra??**
 ooh-nah fehs-tah kohn mooh-zee-kah bahl-loh
 beer-rah
 A party with music, dancing, and beer?

Guido: **Certo. Mi aiuti?**
 chehr-toh mee ah-yooh-tee
 Certainly. Will you help me?

Caterina: **Come no!**
 koh-meh noh
 Of course!

Nowadays, you can issue and receive invitations any number of ways. You can receive an invitation by phone, by fax, via e-mail, or you may be asked by your **ospite** (*ohs-peeh-teh*) (*host*) face to face.

Talkin' the Talk



Guido will have a party at his house next Saturday. He calls Sara to invite her.

Sara: **Ciao Guido, come va?**
chou gwee-doh koh-meh vah
Hi Guido, how are you?

Guido: **Molto bene! Sei libera sabato sera?**
mohl-toh beh-neh sey lee-beh-rah sah-bah-toh
seh-rah
Very well. Are you free Saturday night?

Sara: **È un invito?**
eh oohn een-vee-toh
Is this an invitation?

Guido: **Sì, alla mia festa.**
see ahl-lah mee-ah fehs-tah
Yes, to my party.

Sara: **Fantastico! A che ora?**
fahn-tahs-tee-koh ah keh oh-rah
Great! What time?

Guido: **Verso le nove.**
vehr-soh leh noh-veh
About nine.

Sara: **Cosa posso portare? Il gelato va bene?**
koh-zah pohs-soh pohr-tahr-eh eel jeh-lah-toh
vah beh-neh
What can I bring? Is ice cream okay?

Guido: **Ottimo. Quello piace a tutti.**
oht-tee-moh qwehl-loh pyah-cheh ah tooht-tee
Great. Everyone likes ice cream.

Sara: **Allora, d'accordo.Grazie!**
ahl-loh-rah dahk-kohr-doh grah-tsee-eh
Okay then. Thanks!

Figure 9-1 shows the fax Guido sent to friends he couldn't reach by phone.



Figure 9-1:
A casual
invitation,
suitable for
faxing.

Talkin' the Talk

Both Franco and Emma have received Guido's invitation. They are now talking about whether or not they will go to the party.

Franco: **Vieni alla festa di Guido?**
vyeh-nee ahl-lah fehs-tah dee gwee-doh
Are you going to Guido's party?

Emma: **No, mi annoio alle feste.**
noh mee ahn-noi-oh ahl-leh fehs-teh
No, I get bored at parties.

Franco: **Ti annoi?**
tee ahn-noi
You get bored?

Emma: **Sì, non ballo e non bevo.**
see nohn bah-loh eh nohn beh-voh
Yes, I don't dance and don't drink.

Non mi diverto
nohn mee dee-vehr-toh
I don't have fun.

Franco: **Ma chiacchieri!**
mah kyahk-kyeh-ree
But you do chat!

Emma: **Sì, ma senza musica di sottofondo.**
see mah sehn-zah mooh-zee-kah dee
soht-toh-fohn-doh
Yes, but without background music.

Figure 9-2 is an example of a formal invitation to an opening of an exhibition by artist Elisa Catalini.



Figure 9-2:
The classic
formal,
engraved
invitation.

Words to Know

invito [m]	<i>een-vee-toh</i>	invitation
festa [f]	<i>fehs-tah</i>	party
suonare	<i>swoh-nah-reh</i>	to play (a musical instrument)
perché	<i>pehr-keh</i>	why; because
bere	<i>beh-reh</i>	to drink
ballare	<i>bahl-lah-reh</i>	to dance



Fun & Games

Now it's your turn to invite an Italian friend to your party. Use the following words to fill in the blanks in this invitation. See Appendix D for answer key.

aspetto, dove, festa, invitato, ora, perche, sabato, verso

C'è una (1) _____ **e tu sei** (2) _____. (There's a party and you're invited.)

Quando? (3) _____ **24 luglio** (When? Saturday, July 24.)

A che (4) _____? (5) _____ **le 9.** (What time? About 9 o'clock.)

(6) _____? **A casa mia.** (Where? At my place.)

(7) _____? **Per festeggiare insieme!** (Why? To celebrate together!)

Ti (8) _____. (I'll be waiting for you.)

Buon divertimento! (Have a nice time!)

Chapter 10

Taking Care of Business and Telecommunicating

In This Chapter

- ▶ Phoning and texting
- ▶ Making reservations and appointments over the phone
- ▶ Getting through to the person you want and leaving messages
- ▶ Using the past tense

In this chapter you encounter expressions and phrases that relate to telephones and telecommunication — for example, how to behave when someone calls you and how to leave a message. In addition, I show you some samples of common phone dialogues.

Phoning Made Simple

Pronto! (*prohn-toh*) (*Hello!*) is the first thing you hear when you talk to an Italian on the phone. In most languages, you answer the phone with the same word you use for saying hello in person, but in Italian, you use **pronto** to say hello only on the phone.

You can answer the phone and say “**Pronto. Chi parla?**” (*prohn-toh kee pahr-lah*) (*Hello, who’s speaking?*)

And a typical response might be “**Pronto! Sono Sabrina. C’è Stefano?**” (*prohn-toh soh-noh sah-bree-nah cheh steh-fah-noh*). (*Hello! This is Sabrina. Is Stefano there?*)

You can also say, “**Sono Susanna. Posso parlare con Michele per favore?**” (*soh-noh sooh-sahn-nah pohs-soh pahr-lah-reh kohn mee-keh-leh pehr fah-voh-reh*) (*This is Susan. May I please speak with Michael?*)

Connecting via cellphones, texts, and Skype

Italians love their **cellulari** (*chehl-looh-lah-ree*) (*cellphones*), there's no doubt about that. They were one of the first cultures to embrace full force the **telefonino** (*teh-leh-foh-nee-noh*) (*little phone*) back in the eighties, when they adopted this useful accessory as a fashion.

Cellphones

When you're in Italy you need to have your own cell phone because public phones are hard to find and hotel phones are very expensive to use. If you take your phone with you from, say, the United States, make certain that it will work in Italy and that calls won't cost you a mint. Of course, you can buy a phone when you get there. If you buy one, phone time can be purchased two ways at the local **tabaccaio** (*tah-bahk-kahy-oh*) (*tobacconist*). You can either purchase **una scheda telefonica** (*ooh-nah skeh-dah teh-leh-foh-nee-kah*) (*phone card*), or you can ask the salesperson to charge your phone for you by putting on a specific number of minutes or euros. You can do the same thing at any branch of the phone store where you bought your cell phone.

Text messaging

Because Italians tend to text more frequently than make phone calls these days (because it is so much cheaper and also trendy), you should know how to say a couple of important things, such as “**messaggino**” (*mehs-sahj-jee-noh*) or “**sms**” (*ehs-seh-ehm-meh-ehs-seh*) (*text message*), and “**mandami un messaggino**” (*mahn-dah-mee oohn mehs-sahj-jee-noh*) (“*Text me.*” Literally: “*Send me a text message.*”)

Using the Internet to connect

All cities have their share of Internet stations, where you can pay a per-minute fee to use the Internet. All you have to ask is “**Penso usare l'Internet?**” (*pohs-soh ooh-zah-reh leen-tehr-neht*) (*May I use the Internet?*) whereupon you will be asked for **un documento** (*oohn dohk-ooh-mehn-toh*) (*identification*) and assigned to a computer station. There, you can Skype or e-mail to your heart's content.

Here are a couple more useful phone phrases:

- ✓ **Avete un telefono?** (*ah-veh-teh oohn teh-leh-foh-noh*) (*Is there/Do you have a [public] telephone?*)
- ✓ **Avete schede telefoniche?** (*ah-veh-teh skeh-deh teh-leh-foh-nee-keh*) (*Do you sell phone cards?*)

- ✓ **Ha un recapito telefonico?** (ah oohn reh-kah-pee-toh teh-leh-foh-nee-koh) (*Do you have a contact phone number?*) (You might hear this when you go to change money at the bank.)
- ✓ **Qual è il suo/tuo numero di telefono?** (kwahl eh eel sooh-oh nooh-meh-roh dee teh-leh-foh-noh) (*What is your phone number?*)

Talkin' the Talk



Giorgio is back in Naples again and decides to give an old friend of his a call.

Simona: **Pronto!**
 prohn-toh
 Hello!

Giorgio: **Pronto, Simona?**
 prohn-toh see-moh-nah
 Hello, Simona?

Simona: **Sì, chi parla?**
 see kee pahr-lah
 Yes, who's speaking?

Giorgio: **Sono Giorgio.**
 soh-noh johr-joh
 It's Giorgio.

Simona: **Che bella sorpresa!**
 keh beh-lah sohr-preh-zah
 What a nice surprise!

Sei di nuovo a Napoli?
sey dee nwoh-voh ah nah-poh-lee
Are you in Naples again?

Giorgio: **Sì, sono arrivato stamattina.**
 see soh-noh ahr-ree-vah-toh stah-maht-tee-nah
 Yes, I arrived this morning.

Simona: **Ci vediamo stasera?**
 chee veh-dyah-moh stah-seh-rah
 Are we going to meet tonight?

Giorgio: **Ti chiamo per questo!**
 tee kyah-moh pehr kwehs-toh
 That's why I'm calling!



In Italy, when you don't know a **numero di telefono** (*nooh-meh-roh dee teh-leh-foh-noh*) (*phone number*), look it up in the **elenco telefonico** (*eh-lehn-koh teh-leh-foh-nee-koh*) (*phone book*). If it's a business number you can also look in the **pagine gialle** (*pah-jee-neh jahl-leh*) (*yellow pages*).

Calling for business or pleasure

Whether you want to find out what time a show starts, make a dental appointment, or just chat with a friend, the easiest way to accomplish any of these tasks is usually to pick up the telephone. This section takes you through the nuts and bolts of talking on the telephone.

Talkin' the Talk

The following is a formal dialogue between two **signori** (*see-nyoh-ree*) (*gentlemen*) who have met only once.

Sig. Palladino: **Pronto?**
prohn-toh
 Hello?

Sig. Nieddu: **Pronto, il signor Palladino?**
prohn-toh eel see-nyohr pahl-lah-dee-noh
 Hello, Mr. Palladino?

Sig. Palladino: **Sì. Con chi parlo?**
see kohn kee pahr-loh
 Yes. Who am I speaking to?

Sig. Nieddu: **Sono Carlo Nieddu.**
soh-noh kahr-loh nee-ehd-dooh
 This is Carlo Nieddu.

Sig. Nieddu: **Si ricorda di me?**
see ree-kohr-dah dee meh
 Do you remember me?

Sig. Palladino: **No, mi dispiace.**
noh mee dees-pyah-cheh
 I don't, I'm sorry.

Sig. Nieddu: **Il cugino di Enza.**
eel kooh-jee-noh dee ehn-zah
 Enza's cousin.

Sig. Palladino: **Ma certo, mi scusi tanto!**
 mah chehr-toh mee skooh-zee tahn-toh
 Why, of course! Excuse me!

Sometimes you call just to chat on the phone — **fare due chiacchiere al telefono** (*fah-reh dooh-eh kyahk-kyeh-reh ahl teh-leh-foh-noh*). But the person on the other end of the line may not be prepared for a lengthy chat.

When you are really busy and don't even have one second to speak, you may need the following phrases. The first is informal, and the second is one you might use at work.

Ti posso richiamare più tardi? (*tee pohs-soh ree-kyah-mah-reh pyooh tahr-dee*) (*Can I call you back later?*)

or

La posso richiamare fra mezz'ora? (*lah pohs-soh ree-kyah-mah-reh frah mehd-dzoh-rah*) (*Can I call you back in half an hour?*)

Talkin' the Talk

On other occasions your call may be quite welcome, as Monica's is this time:

Monica: **Ciao, mamma, ti disturbo?**
 chou mahm-mah tee dees-toohr-boh
 Hello, Mom. Am I disturbing you?

Lucia: **No, assolutamente.**
 noh ahs-soh-looh-tah-mehn-teh
 Not at all.

Monica: **Volevo sentire cosa fate per Pasqua.**
 voh-leh-voh sehn-tee-reh koh-sah fah-teh pehr
 pahs-qwah
 I wanted to hear what you were doing for Easter.

Lucia: **Andiamo tutti dalla nonna.**
 ahn-dyah-moh tooht-tee dahl-lah nohn-nah
 We're all going to Grandma's.

Monica: **Ottimo! Buon'idea.**
 oht-tee-moh bwohn-ee-dee-ah
 Great! Good idea!

Words to Know

<i>cellulare</i>	<i>chehl-looh-lah-reh</i>	cellular phone
<i>telefonino [m] telefonica [f]</i>	<i>teh-leh-foh-nee-noh/ teh-leh-foh-nee-kah</i>	telephone
<i>telefono pubblico [m]</i>	<i>teh-leh-foh-noh poohb-blee-koh</i>	public phone
<i>scheda telefonica</i>	<i>skeh-dah teh-leh-foh-nee-kah</i>	phone card
<i>messaggino</i>	<i>mehs-sahj-jee-noh</i>	text message

Making Arrangements over the Phone

Making an appointment, reserving a table at a restaurant, ordering tickets for a concert are all activities you usually do by phone. In this section I introduce you to the Italian way to handle these matters.

Talkin' the Talk



Mrs. Elmi calls her doctor's office to make an appointment. She is speaking with the doctor's nurse.

Sig.ra Elmi: **Buongiorno, sono la signora Elmi. Vorrei prendere un appuntamento.**
*bwohn-jahr-noh soh-noh lah see-nyoh-rah ehl-mee
 vohr-rehy prehn-deh-reh oohn
 ahp-poohn-tah-mehn-toh*
 Good morning, this is Ms. Elmi. I'd like to make an appointment.

Nurse: **È urgente?**
eh oohr-jehn-teh
 Is it urgent?

Sig.ra Elmi: **Purtroppo sì.**
 poohr-trohp-poh see
 Unfortunately, it is.

Nurse: **Va bene alle quattro e mezza?**
 vah beh-neh ahl-leh kwaht-troh eh mehd-dzah
 Today at four-thirty?

Sig.ra Elmi: **Va benissimo, grazie.**
 vah beh-nees-see-moh grah-tsee-eh
 That's great, thank you.

Nurse: **Prego. Ci vediamo più tardi.**
 preh-goh chee veh-dyah-moh pyooh tahr-dee
 You're welcome. See you later.



The expression **a domani** (ah doh-mah-nee) (*see you tomorrow*) is a bit different in Italian, in that it doesn't have a verb. In English, the verb see indicates that you will see the other person tomorrow. Italian is more concise; you say a **domani** — literally, “until tomorrow.”

Asking for People and Getting the Message

This section offers useful terminology about asking to speak to people and leaving messages. You know how often the person you want isn't available, so you need to be comfortable getting a message across.

You're familiar with the situation: You're waiting for a call, but the telephone doesn't ring. Then, you have to go out. When you get back, you want to know whether anyone called for you. You can ask that question several ways:

- ✓ **Ha chiamato qualcuno per me?** (ah kyah-mah-toh kwahl-kooh-noh pehr meh) (*Has anybody called for me?*)
- ✓ **Mi ha chiamato qualcuno?** (mee ah kyah-mah-toh kwahl-kooh-noh) (*Did anybody call me?*)
- ✓ **Mi ha cercato nessuno?** (mee ah chehr-kah-toh nehs-sooh-noh) (*Has anybody looked for me?*)

Talkin' the Talk

Leo wants to give Camilla a call, but she's not home. Therefore, he leaves a message for her.

Leo: **Buongiorno, sono Leo.**
bwohn-johr-noh soh-noh leh-oh
Good morning, this is Leo.

Voice: **Ciao Leo.**
chou leh-oh
Hello, Leo.

Leo: **C'è Camilla?**
cheh kah-mee-lah
Is Camilla in?

Voice: **No, è appena uscita.**
noh eh ahp-peh-nah ooh-shee-tah
No, she's just gone out.

Leo: **Quando la trovo?**
kwahn-doh lah troh-voh
When can I reach her?

Voice: **Verso le nove.**
vehr-soh leh noh-veh
Around nine.

Leo: **Le posso lasciare un messaggio?**
leh pohs-soh lah-shah-reh oohn mehs-sahj-joh
Can I leave her a message?

Voice: **Come no, dimmi.**
koh-meh noh deem-mee
Of course, tell me.

As you can see, there are different ways for asking for people as well as for saying that they're not in and asking if you can leave a message. The informal dialogue above gives you one way of saying these things, and the dialogue that follows recasts the situation into a formal exchange.

Talkin' the Talk



Mr. Marchi calls Mr. Trevi's office to talk about an upcoming meeting. Mr. Trevi's secretary picks up the phone.

Secretary: **Pronto?**
prohn-toh
Hello?

Sig. Marchi: **Buongiorno, sono Ennio Marchi.**
bwohn-johr-noh soh-noh ehn-nee-oh mahr-kee
Good morning, this is Ennio Marchi.

Secretary: **Buongiorno, dica.**
bwohn-johr-noh dee-kah
Good morning, can I help you?

Sig. Marchi: **Potrei parlare con il signor Trevi?**
poh-trehy pahr-lah-reh kohn eel see-nyoh-reh treh-vee
Can I speak to Mr. Trevi?

Secretary: **Mi dispiace, è in riunione.**
mee dees-pyah-cheh eh een ree-oohn-yoh-neh
I'm sorry, he's in a meeting.

Sig. Marchi: **Potrei lasciargli un messaggio?**
poh-trehy lah-shahr-lyee oohn mehs-sahj-joh
May I leave him a message?

Secretary: **Certo. Prego.**
chehr-toh preh-goh
Of course. Go on . . .

Sometimes you don't understand the name of the person you're talking to and you have to ask for the spelling. If someone needs you to spell your name, you may hear either of the following questions:

- ✓ **Come si scrive?** (*koh-meh-see skree-veh*) (*How do you write it?*)
- ✓ **Può fare lo spelling?** (*pwoh fah-reh loh spelling*) (*Can you spell it?*)

Don't worry too much about this; as long as you know the basic Italian alphabet in Chapter 1, you'll be able to spell your name and town to anyone!

Words to Know

pronto	<u>prohn</u> -toh	hello
chiacchierare	kyahk-kyeh-rah-reh	to chat
Attenda in linea!	aht- <u>tehn</u> -dah een <u>lee</u> -neh-ah	Please hold!
chiamare	kyah- <u>mah</u> -reh	to call
chiamata [f]	kyah- <u>mah</u> -tah	call
informazione [f]	een-fohr-mah- <u>tsyoh</u> -neh	information
sorpresa [f]	sohr- <u>preh</u> -zah	surprise

What Did You Do Last Weekend? — Talking about the Past

Not all phone calls have to do with leaving messages, of course. One age-old reason for a phone conversation is so friends can catch up on each other's lives. Imagine you had such a great time at the beach last weekend that you can't wait to call and tell your best friend all about it. But to be able to communicate what you did, who you saw, and where you went, you first need to understand the Italian equivalent of the present perfect and simple past.



When you speak about something that happened in the past — for example, I have spoken — you mostly use the **passato prossimo** (pahs-sah-toh prohs-see-moh) in Italian, which corresponds to both the English present perfect and the simple past (*I spoke*).

The **passato prossimo** is a compound tense: It consists of more than one word, as in "I have heard." Take a look at how it works in these examples:

- ✓ **Ho ascoltato un CD.** (oh ahs-kohl-tah-toh oohn chee-dee) (*I have listened/listened to a CD.*)
- ✓ **Sono andata alla spiaggia.** (soh-noh ahn-dah-tah ahl-lah spyahj-jah) (*I went to the beach.*)

The structure of the **passato prossimo** is similar to the present perfect. It is composed of the present tense of either the verb **avere** (ah-veh-reh) (*to have*) or **essere** (ehs-ser-reh) (*to be*) plus the past participle of the verb that describes what happened. In the preceding examples, **ascoltato** (ahs-kohl-tah-toh) (*listened*) is the past participle of **ascoltare** (ahs-kohl-tah-reh) (*to listen*), and **andata** (ahn-dah-tah) (*spoken*) is the past participle of **andare** (ahn-dah-reh) (*to go*).

In sum: helping verb **essere** or **avere** + past participle of verb (generally ending in **-ato**, **-uto**, **-ito** (ah-toh, ooh-toh ee-toh)). To form past participles, you take the infinitive of the verb, keep the stem, and add the ending.



Lei (ley) is the formal way of saying “you.” Use **lei** to address someone you don’t know well, or to whom you want to be polite.

So how do you know when to use **essere** or **avere** as your helping verb in the **passato prossimo**? Transitive verbs take **avere** and intransitive verbs take **essere**. Usage will be your guide, but basically all verbs like: to come, to go, to go in, to go out, to stay, to return, to be born and to die take **essere**.

Let’s start with transitive verbs, as shown in Table 10-1:

Table 10-1 Passato Prossimo with Avere

Avere +Past Participle	Translation
ho chiamato (oh kyah-mah-toh)	<i>I called/have called/I did call</i>
hai chiamato (ahy kyah-mah-toh)	<i>you called/have called/you did call</i>
ha chiamato (ah kyah-mah-toh)	<i>he/she called/ has called</i>
abbiamo chiamato (ahb-byah-moh kyah-mah-toh)	<i>we called /have called</i>
avete chiamato (ah-veh-teh kyah-mah-toh)	<i>you (pl.) called/have called</i>
hanno chiamato (ahn-noh kyah-mah-toh)	<i>they called/have called</i>

Some past participles are irregular and will come at the end of this section: They follow no rule, and simply have to be memorized. See Appendix A for more examples.

Table 10-2 provides you with some common regular past participles and also some very common irregular past participles of verbs that are conjugated with avere.

Table 10-2 Past Participles Using “Avere” — To Have

<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Past Participle</i>
ascoltare (ahs-kohl-tah-reh) (<i>to listen</i>)	ascoltato (ahs-kohl-tah-toh) (<i>listened</i>)
comprare (kohm-prah-reh) (<i>to buy</i>)	comprato (kohm-prah-toh) (<i>bought</i>)
telefonare (teh-leh-foh-nah-reh) (<i>to phone</i>)	telefonato (teh-leh-foh-nah-toh) (<i>called</i>)
conoscere (koh-noh-sheh-reh) (<i>to meet, the first time</i>)	conosciuto (koh-noh-shooh-toh) (<i>met</i>)
ricevere (ree-cheh-veh-reh) (<i>to receive</i>)	ricevuto (ree-cheh-vooh-toh) (<i>received</i>)
partire (pahr-tee-reh) (<i>to leave/depart</i>)	partito (pahr-tee-toh) (<i>left/departed</i>)
dire (dee-reh) (<i>to say</i>)	detto (deht-toh) (<i>said</i>)
fare (fah-reh) (<i>to do</i>)	fatto (faht-toh) (<i>done</i>)
leggere (lehj-jeh-reh) (<i>to read</i>)	letto (leht-toh) (<i>read</i>)
scrivere (skree-veh-reh) (<i>to write</i>)	scritto (skreet-toh) (<i>written</i>)
vedere (veh-deh-reh) (<i>to see</i>)	visto (vees-toh) (<i>seen</i>)

Asking about last weekend is always a reason to call your friend to hear what he or she did.

Talkin' the Talk

Rosa calls her best friend Tiziana to catch up on her weekend.

Rosa: **Che cosa hai fatto questo fine settimana?**
 keh koh-zah ahy faht-toh kwehs-toh fee-neh
 seht-tee-mah-nah
 What did you do last weekend?

Tiziana: **Ho conosciuto un uomo meraviglioso!**
 oh koh-noh-shooh-toh oohn woh-moh
 meh-rah-vee-lyoh-zoh
 I met a wonderful man!

- Rosa: **Racconta tutto!**
 rahk-kohn-tah tooht-toh
 Tell me everything!
- Tiziana: **Sabato sono andata al mare.**
 sah-bah-toh soh-noh ahn-dah-tah ahl mah-reh
 Saturday I went to the beach.
- Rosa: **Da sola?**
 dah soh-lah
 Alone?
- Tiziana: **Sì, e lì ho incontrato Enrico.**
 see eh lee oh een-kohn-trah-toh ehn-ree-koh
 Yes, and I met Enrico there.
- Rosa: **Per caso?**
 pehr kah-zoh
 By chance?
- Tiziana: **No, me l'ha presentato Davide.**
 noh meh lah preh-zehn-tah-toh dah-vee-deh
 No, David introduced me to him.

Now take a look at some intransitive verbs that take **essere** as their helping verb.

When the **passato prossimo** is compounded with the present tense of **essere** (to be), the past participle ends according to the subject: feminine singular **-a**, masculine singular **-o**, feminine plural **-e**, or masculine plural **-i**. Note the endings of the past participles in Table 10-3.

Table 10-3 Passato Prossimo with Essere

<i>Essere + Past participle</i>		<i>Translation</i>
io sono uscita/o	(ee-oh soh-noh ooh-shee-tah/oh)	<i>I went out.</i>
tu sei uscita/o	(tooh sey ooh-shee-tah/oh)	<i>You went out.</i>
lei/lui è uscita/o	(ley looh-ee eh ooh-shee-tah/oh)	<i>He/she went out.</i>
noi siamo uscite/i	(noi see-ah-moh ooh-shee-teh/ee)	<i>We went out.</i>
voi siete uscite/i	(voi see-eh-teh ooh-shee-teh/ee)	<i>You went out.</i>
loro sono uscite/i	(loh-roh soh-noh ooh-shee-teh/ee)	<i>They went out.</i>

Do familiarize yourself well with the intransitive verbs in Table 10-4 that are always conjugated with **essere**, not only in the present perfect tense, but in any other compound tense in Italian.

Table 10-4**Past Participles Using “Essere” — To Be**

Infinitive	Past Participle	Translation
andare (ahn-dah-reh) (<i>to go</i>)	andata/-o/-e/-i (ahn-dah-tah/toh/teh/tee)	<i>gone</i>
arrivare (ahr-ree-vah-reh) (<i>to arrive</i>)	arrivata/-o/-e/-i (ahr-ree-vah-tah/toh/teh/tee)	<i>arrived</i>
entrare (ehn-trah-reh) (<i>to enter</i>)	entrata/-o/-e/-i (ehn-trah-tah/toh/teh/tee)	<i>entered</i>
partire (pahr-tee-reh) (<i>to leave</i>)	partita/-o/-e/-i (pahr-tee-tah/toh/teh/tee)	<i>left</i>
venire (veh-nee-reh) (<i>to come</i>)	venuta/o/e/l (veh-nooh-tah/toh/teh/tee)	<i>came</i>
tornare (tohr-nah-reh) (<i>to return</i>)	tornata/-o/-e/-i (tohr-nah-tah/toh/teh/tee)	<i>returned</i>

Discussing Your Job

The world is getting smaller, and business contact with people in other countries is getting more common. Whether by phone, fax, or e-mail, it's becoming more and more important to know how to communicate to business colleagues around the world. If you happen to have business contacts with Italian companies, knowing some basic Italian business vocabulary may be useful.

Italian has at least four words for "company" — **la compagnia** (lah kohm-pah-nyee-ah), **la ditta** (lah deet-tah) (which also means *the firm*), **l'azienda** (lah-dzehn-dah) and **la società** (lah soh-cheh-tah). These words are virtually interchangeable.

L'ufficio (loohf-fee-choh) is Italian for "office." The following sentences give you a taste of the phrases you hear in **uffici** (oohf-fee-chee) (*offices*) everywhere:



✓ **La mia scrivania è troppo piccola.** (lah mee-ah skree-vah-nee-ah eh trohp-poh peek-koh-lah) (*My desk is too small.*)

✓ **È una grande società?** (eh oo-hnah grahn-deh soh-cheh-tah) (*Is it a big company?*)

- ✓ **Lavora per una piccola agenzia.** (lah-voh-rah pehr ooh-nah peek-koh-lah ah-jehn-tsee-ah) (*He works for a small agency.*)
- ✓ **Amo il mio lavoro.** (ah-moh eel mee-oh lah-voh-roh) (*I like my job.*)

The human element

Even if you are **libero professionista** (lee-beh-roh proh-fehs-see-oh-nees-tah) (*self-employed*), chances are that your **lavoro** (lah-voh-roh) (*job*) puts you in contact with other people. All those people have titles and names, as the following short exchanges show:

- ✓ **Il mio capo è una donna.** (eel mee-oh kah-poh eh ooh-nah dohn-nah) (*My boss is a woman.*)
- ✓ **Hai un'assistente personale?** (ahy ooh-nahs-sees-tehn-teh pehr-soh-nah-leh) (*Do you have a personal assistant?*)
- No, il nostro team ha un segretario.** (noh eel nohs-troh team ah oohn seh-greh-tah-ree-oh) (*No, our team has a secretary.*)
- ✓ **Dov'è il direttore?** (doh-veh eel dee-reht-toh-reh) (*Where is the director?*)
- Nel suo ufficio.** (nehl sooh-oh ooiff-fee-choh) (*In her office.*)

Office equipment

Even the smallest offices today utilize a wide variety of equipment. Many of these “technology” words are the same in Italian as they are in English: computer, fax, and e-mail are used and pronounced as they are in English, and the Italian for “photocopy” and “photocopier” are fairly intuitive — **fotocopia** (foh-toh-koh-pee-ah) and **fotocopiatrice** (foh-toh-koh-pee-ah-tree-cheh), respectively.

The following sentences can help you develop your Italian office vocabulary to a respectable level.

- ✓ **Posso usare la stampante, per favore?** (pohs-soh ooh-zah-reh lah stahm-pahn-teh pehr fah-voh-reh) (*May I use the printer, please?*)
- ✓ **Il lavoro non va bene.** (eel lah-voh-roh nohn vah beh-neh) (*Work isn't going well.*)
- ✓ **Il fax è arrivato.** (eel fahks eh ahr-ree-vah-toh) (*The fax arrived.*)
- ✓ **Quando ha spedito l'e-mail?** (kwahn-doh ah speh-dee-toh lee-mail) (*When did you send the e-mail?*)

Talkin' the Talk

Mr. Miller, an American businessman, has been trying unsuccessfully to send his Italian associate, il signor Tosi, some important information.

Mr. Miller: **Ha ricevuto la mia raccomandata?**
*ah ree-cheh-vooh-toh lah mee-ah
rahk-koh-mahn-dah-tah*
Have you received the express letter I sent?

Sig. Tosi: **No, oggi non è arrivato niente.**
noh ohj-jee nohn eh ahr-ree-vah-toh nee-ehn-teh
No, nothing has arrived yet today.

Mr. Miller: **Le mando subito un fax.**
leh mahm-doh sooh-bee-toh oohn fahks
I'll send you a fax immediately.

Sig. Tosi: **Purtroppo è rotto.**
poohr-trohp-poh eh roht-toh
Unfortunately, it's broken

Mr. Miller: **Le invio un'e-mail allora.**
leh een-vee-oh oohn e-mail ahl-loh-rah
I'll send you an e-mail then.

Sig. Tosi: **Va bene. E può mandarmi il documento?**
*vah beh-neh eh pwoh mahn-dahr-mee eel
doh-kooh-mechn-toh*
Yes. And can you send me the document?

Mr. Miller: **Certo, glielo mando come allegato, ma avrò bisogno di più tempo.**
chehr-toh lyee-loh mahn-doh koh-meh ahl-leh-gah-toh mah ah-vroh bee-zoh-nyoh dee pyooh tehm-poh
Of course, I'll send it as an attachment, but I'll need a bit more time.

Sig. Tosi: **Va benissimo. Oggi lavoro fino a tardi.**
*vah beh-nees-see-moh ohj-jee lah-voh-roh fee-noh
ah tahr-dee*
That's great. I'm working late today.

Words to Know

messaggio [m]	mehs-sahj-joh	message
lavoro [m]	lah-voh-roh	work
È rotto.	eh roht-toh	It's broken.
macchina [f]	mahk-kee-nah	machine
tempo [m]	tehm-poh	time
tardi	tahr-dee	late



In Italy, want ads often request information on an applicant's personality. Also, job advertisements do not usually contain mailing addresses. Instead, ads list fax or e-mail addresses. You send your **domanda d'assunzione** (doh-mahn-dah dahs-soohn-tsyoh-neh) (*job application*) and/or your curriculum vitae or resume via fax or e-mail.

Words to Know

colloquio [m]	kohl-loh-kwee-oh	interview
assistente [f/m]	ahs-sees-tehn-teh	assistant
annuncio [m]	ahn-noohn-choh	advertisement
responsabile	reh-spohn-sah-bee-leh	responsible
affidabile	ahf-fee-dah-bee-leh	dependable



Fun & Games

You're Mario's guest, but he's gone out for a moment. The telephone rings and you have to answer it. Fill the gaps in this incomplete phone conversation. See Appendix D for answer key.

You: (1) _____! (Hello!)

Caller: Ciao, sono Chiara. Con chi (2) _____? (Hello, I'm Chiara. Who am I talking to?)

You: Sono un (3) _____ di Mario. (I'm a friend of Mario's.)

Caller: (4) _____ Mario? (Is Mario in?)

You: No, è (5) _____ uscito. (No, he's just gone out.)

Caller: Gli posso (6) _____? (Can I leave him a message?)

You: Certo (7) _____. (Of course. Please.)

Mario returns and asks:

Mario: Ha (8) _____ qualcuno per me? (Has anybody called for me?)

Chapter 11

Recreation and the Outdoors

In This Chapter

- ▶ Discovering the great outdoors through animals and plants
- ▶ Enjoying yourself with reflexive verbs and **piacere**
- ▶ Exploring sports and other hobbies

In this chapter, we talk about the fun stuff — playing sports, pastimes, and generally enjoying yourself. Plus, we throw in a section about reflexive verbs so that you can talk correctly about enjoying yourself.

Maybe you use your **fine settimana** (*fee-neh seht-tee-mah-nah*) (*weekends*) as a chance to play sports like **calcio** (*kahl-choh*) (*soccer*), **tennis** (*tehn-nees*) (*tennis*), or **pallavolo** (*pahl-lah-voh-loh*) (*volleyball*). Or perhaps you park yourself in front of the TV to watch **pallacanestro** (*pahl-lah-kah-nehs-troh*) (*basketball*). In any case, being able to talk sports and other recreational activities is a plus in any language.

Taking a Tour

Whether you're in a city or rural area, you can usually find fun and interesting sights to see in the area. You can take a car trip, or leave the driving to someone else and sign up for an organized bus tour to take you to special places. Bus tours are, for the most part, organized in great detail and the price generally includes the cost of the hotel, lunch, dinner, and the services of a tour guide.

A guided tour may be the most efficient, cost-effective, and informative way to check out the attractions of an unfamiliar city. You can use the following questions to help find out more about **una gita organizzata** (*ooh-nah jee-tah ohr-gah-nee-dzah-tah*) (*an organized tour*). Notice that Italian has two, basically interchangeable ways to say “go on a tour”: **fare una gita** (*fah-reh ooh-nah jee-tah*) and **fare un’escursione** (*fah-reh oohn ehs-koohr-syoh-neh*).

- ✓ **Ci sono gite organizzate?** (chee soh-noh jee-teh ohr-gah-neeh-dzah-teh) (*Are there any organized tours?*)
- ✓ **Che cosa c'è da vedere?** (keh koh-zah cheh dah veh-deh-reh) (*What sights are included?*)
- ✓ **Quanto costa la gita?** (kwahn-toh kohs-tah lah jee-tah) (*How much does the tour cost?*)
- ✓ **C'è una guida inglese?** (cheh ooh-nah gwee-dah een-gleh-zeh) (*Is there an English-speaking guide?*)
- ✓ **Dove si comprano i biglietti?** (doh-veh see kohm-prah-noh ee bee-lyeht-tee) (*Where do you buy tickets?*)

Notice in the following sentences that the Italians have appropriated a few English words — picnic and jog.

- ✓ **Mi piace camminare nel verde.** (mee pyah-cheh kahm-mee-nah-reh nehl vehr-deh) (*I like to walk in nature.*)
- ✓ **Facciamo un picnic sul prato?** (fahch-chah-moh oohn peek-neek soohl prah-toh) (*Should we have a picnic on the lawn?*)
- ✓ **Ti piace l'osservazione degli uccelli?** (tee pyah-cheh lohs-sehr-vah-tyoh-neh dehl-yeet oooch-chehl-lee) (*Do you like bird-watching?*)
- ✓ **Faccio jogging nel parco.** (fahch-choh johg-geeng nehl pahr-koh) (*I go jogging in the park.*)

Maybe you like to go up into the mountains to be close to nature. Even when **ti godi** (tee goh-dee) (*you enjoy*) Mother Nature on your own, however, you may want to know some vocabulary to express the wonders you see, such as “**Che bel panorama!**” (keh behl pah-noh-rah-mah) (*What a great view!*) Here we go!

- ✓ **l'albero** (lahl-beh-roh) (*tree*)
- ✓ **il bosco** (eel bohs-koh) (*woods*)
- ✓ **il fiore** (eel fyoh-reh) (*flower*)
- ✓ **la pianta** (lah pyahn-tah) (*plant*)
- ✓ **il pino** (eel pee-noh) (*pine*)
- ✓ **il prato** (eel prah-toh) (*meadow; lawn*)
- ✓ **la quercia** (lah kwehr-chah) (*oak*)
- ✓ **il tramonto** (trah-mohn-toh) (*sunset*)
- ✓ **il panorama** (pah-noh-rah-mah) (*view*)

Words to Know

<i>campagna</i> [f]	<i>kahm-pah-nyah</i>	<i>countryside</i>
<i>fiume</i> [m]	<i>fyooh-meh</i>	<i>river</i>
<i>lago</i> [m]	<i>lah-goh</i>	<i>lake</i>
<i>mare</i> [m]	<i>mah-reh</i>	<i>sea</i>
<i>montagna</i> [f]	<i>mohn-tah-nyah</i>	<i>mountain</i>

Talkin' the Talk

Animals are always an interesting topic, and knowing the names of some of them in another language can be helpful. Here's a dialogue about animals:

Carla: **Ti piacciono gli animali?**
 tee pyach-choh-noh lyee ah-nee-mah-lee
 Do you like animals?

Alessandra: **Sì, ho una piccola fattoria.**
 see oh ooh-nah peek-koh-lah faht-toh-ree-ah
 Yes, I have a small farm.

Carla: **Davvero?**
 dahv-veh-roh
 Really?

Alessandra: **Ho un cane, due gatti e un maialino.**
 oh oohn kah-neh dooh-eh gaht-tee eh oohn
 mah-yah-lee-noh
 I have a dog, two cats, and a small pig.

Carla: **Ti piacciono i cavalli?**
 tee pyahch-choh-noh ee kah-vahl-lee
 Do you like horses?

Alessandra: No, preferisco le mucche.
noh preh-feh-rees-koh leh moohk-keh
No, I prefer cows.

Words to Know

cane [m]	<u>kah</u> -neh	dog
cavallo [m]	<u>kah-vahl</u> -loh	horse
capra [f]	<u>kah</u> -prah	goat
gallo [m]	<u>gahl</u> -loh	rooster
gatto [m]	<u>gaht</u> -toh	cat
gallina [f]	<u>gahl</u> - <u>lee</u> -nah	chicken
maiale [m]	<u>mah</u> -ah-leh	pig
mucca [f]	<u>moohk</u> -kah	cow
uccello [m]	<u>oohch</u> - <u>chehl</u> -loh	bird
lupo [m]	<u>loo</u> h-poh	wolf
pecora [f]	<u>peh</u> -koh-rah	sheep
tacchino [m]	<u>tahk</u> - <u>kee</u> -noh	turkey

Speaking Reflexively



When you say “to enjoy yourself,” you use a reflexive verb. That is, you turn the action back to yourself. The same applies in Italian. But not all Italian reflexive verbs are reflexive in English, and vice versa. Some verbs, such as **riposarsi** (ree-poh-zahr-see) (*to rest oneself*) and **svegliarsi** (zveh-lyahr-see) (*to wake oneself*), are not reflexive in English, although they are in Italian.

In Italian, you can tell whether a verb is reflexive by looking at the infinitive form. If the last syllable of the infinitive is **-si** (see), which translates as “oneself,” then the verb is reflexive. When you conjugate a reflexive verb, you must change the last syllable from **-si** to something else. The following conjugation of **divertirsi** (dee-vehr-teer-see) (*to enjoy oneself, to have a good time*) demonstrates the conjugation of the verb. The only difference is that you add the reflexive pronoun, which refers to the person concerned (the subject). After you have removed the **-si** at the end of a reflexive verb, you conjugate it just like any other **-are**, **-ere**, and **-ire** verb. Notice how **divertirsi** becomes a regular present tense **-ire** verb, with the exception that you then need the reflexive pronouns.

Conjugation	Pronunciation	Translation
mi diverto	mee dee-vehr-toh	<i>I have fun.</i>
ti diverti	tee dee-vehr-tee	<i>You're having fun.</i>
si diverte	see dee-vehr-teh	<i>He/she is enjoying him/herself.</i>
ci divertiamo	chee dee-vehr-tyah-moh	<i>We have fun.</i>
vi divertite	vee dee-vehr-tee-teh	<i>You're enjoying yourself.</i>
si divertono	see dee-vehr-toh-noh	<i>They have fun.</i>

Here are some more examples:

- ✓ **divertirsi: Mi diverto molto a cantare.** (mee dee-vehr-toh mohl-toh ah kahn-tah-reh) (*I really enjoy myself singing.*)
- ✓ **annoiarsi** (ahn-noi-ahr-see) (*to be bored*): **Vi annoiate in campagna?** (vee ahn-noi-ah-teh een kahm-pah-nyah) (*Do you get bored in the country?*)

- ✓ **svegliarsi** (zvehl-yahr-see) (to wake up) **A che ora ti svegli?** (ah keh oh-rah tee zveh-lyee) (*What time do you wake up?*)
- ✓ **mettersi** (meht-tehr-see) (to put on/to wear) **Mi metto la giacca nera.** (mee meht-toh lah jahk-kah neh-rah) (*I'm going to wear my black jacket.*)
- ✓ **lavarsi** (lah-vahr-see) **Ti sei lavata i denti?** (tee sey lah-vah-tah ee dehn-tee) (*Did you brush your teeth?*)

Talkin' the Talk



Maria Pia and Mauro are discussing what they enjoy doing on their weekends.

Maria Pia: **Cosa fai durante i fine settimana?**
*koh-sah fahy dooh-rahn-teh ee fee-neh
 seht-tee-mah-nah*
 How do you spend your weekends?

Mauro: **Faccio sport, leggo, incontro amici.**
*fahch-choh sport lehg-goh een-kohn-troh
 ah-mee-chee*
I play sports, I read, I meet friends.

Ti piace leggere?
tee pyah-cheh lehj-jeh-reh
 Do you like to read?

Maria Pia: **È la mia passione!**
eh lah mee-ah pahs-syoh-neh
It's my passion!

Che cosa leggi?
keh koh-zah lehj-jee
 What do you read?

Mauro: **Soprattutto letteratura contemporanea.**
*soh-praht-tooh-toh leht-teh-rah-tooh-rah
 kohn-tehm-poh-rah-neh-ah*
 Mostly contemporary literature.

Playing Sports

Playing and talking about sports is a favored pastime of people the world over. And whether you travel to Italy, or just want to invite your Italian neighbor to play tennis, knowing sports terms is always helpful.

Some sports you do in Italian. Therefore, you pair those words with **fare** (*fah-reh*) (*to do; to practice*). With other sports, however, you must use **giocare** (*joh-kah-reh*) (*to play*) or **andare** (*ahn-dah-reh*) (*to go*). Then there are sports that use the verb that describes the sport itself, like **pattinare** (*paht-tee-nah-reh*) (*to skate*). Table 11-1 lists most sports and the verbs you use with them.

Table 11-1**Sports Verbs**

Italian	Pronunciation	Translation
fare	<i>fah-reh</i>	<i>to do; to practice</i>
atletica leggera	<i>aht-leh-tee-kah lehj-jeh-rah</i>	<i>track</i>
canottaggio	<i>kahn-oh-taj-joh</i>	<i>crew rowing</i>
ciclismo	<i>chee-klees-moh</i>	<i>cycling</i>
danza	<i>dahn-zah</i>	<i>dance</i>
equitazione	<i>eh-kwee-tah-tsyoh-neh</i>	<i>riding</i>
ginnastica artistica	<i>gin-nahs-tee-kah ahr-tees-tee-kah</i>	<i>gymnastics</i>
jogging	<i>johg-geeng</i>	<i>jogging</i>
lotta	<i>loht-tah</i>	<i>wrestling</i>
nuoto	<i>nwoh-toh</i>	<i>swimming</i>
palestra	<i>pah-lehs-trah</i>	<i>going to the gym</i>
scherma	<i>skehr-mah</i>	<i>fencing</i>
lo sci	<i>loh shee</i>	<i>skiing</i>
lo sci nautico	<i>loh shee nou-tee-koh</i>	<i>water skiing</i>
sollevamento pesi	<i>sohl-leh-vah-mehn-toh peh-zee</i>	<i>weight lifting</i>
lo sno/snowboarding	<i>fah-reh loh snoh/snoh-borh-ding</i>	<i>snowboarding</i>
giocare a	<i>joh-kah-reh ah</i>	<i>to play</i>
calcio	<i>kahl-choh</i>	<i>soccer</i>
pallacanestro	<i>pahl-lah-kah-nehs-troh</i>	<i>basketball</i>
pallavolo	<i>pahl-lah-voh-loh</i>	<i>volleyball</i>
ping pong	<i>peeng-pohng</i>	<i>ping-pong</i>
tennis	<i>tehn-nees</i>	<i>tennis</i>
golf	<i>gohlf</i>	<i>golf</i>
andare	<i>ahn-dah-reh</i>	<i>to go</i>
a cavallo	<i>ah kah-vahl-loh</i>	<i>to ride</i>
in bicicletta	<i>een bee-chee-kleht-tah</i>	<i>to cycle</i>

The following conjugations are for these three important sports verbs: **fare**, **andare**, and **giocare**.

<i>Conjugation</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>
io faccio	<i>ee-oh fahch-choh</i>
tu fai	<i>tooh fahy</i>
lui/lei fa	<i>looh-ee/ley fah</i>
noi facciamo	<i>noi fahch-chah-moh</i>
voi fate	<i>voi fah-teh</i>
loro fanno	<i>loh-roh fahn-noh</i>
io vado	<i>ee-oh vah-doh</i>
tu vai	<i>tooh vahy</i>
lui/lei va	<i>looh-ee/ley vah</i>
noi andiamo	<i>noi ahn-dyah-moh</i>
voi andate	<i>voi ahn-dah-teh</i>
loro vanno	<i>loh-roh vahn-noh</i>
io gioco	<i>ee-oh joh-koh</i>
tu giochi	<i>tooh joh-kee</i>
lui/lei gioca	<i>looh-ee/ley joh-kah</i>
noi giochiamo	<i>noi joh-kyah-moh</i>
voi giocate	<i>voi joh-kah-teh</i>
loro giocano	<i>loh-roh joh-kah-noh</i>

Italians love to follow sports on tv, ranked more or less by their popularity:

calcio (*kahl-choh*) (*soccer*)

Formula 1 (*fohr-mooh-lah ooh-noh*) (*Formula One car racing*)

ciclismo (*chee-klees-moh*) (*cycling*)

moto GP (*moh-toh gee-pee*) (*motorcycle racing*)

pugilato (*pooh-jee-lah-toh*) (*boxing*)

lo sci alpino (*loh shee ahl-pee-noh*) (*downhill ski racing*)

Le ragazze (leh rah-gaht-tse) (*girls*) don't play **calcio** in Italy the way they do in other countries, but they do play **pallavolo**. Many **ragazzi** (rah-gaht-tsee) (*boys*) play **calcio**, and men play **calcetto** (kah-l-cheht-toh), also called **calcio a cinque** (kah-l-choh ah cheen-kweh), which is five against five soccer, often played indoors on a smaller field.

Then there is **bocce** (bohch-cheh) (*lawn bowling*). Many towns offer small **bocce** courts where older men usually play.

Talkin' the Talk



Giulia and Stefano have just met at the university and found out that they live in the same neighborhood. On the way to the bus stop Stefano strikes up a conversation about his favorite topic, sports.

Stefano: **Che sport pratichi?**
 keh sport prah-tee-kee
 What sports do you play?

Giulia: **Faccio nuoto e vado a cavallo.**
 fahch-choh nwoh-toh eh vah-doh ah kah-vahl-loh
 I swim and ride.

Stefano: **Equitazione?**
 eh-kwee-tah-tsyoh-neh
 Riding?

Giulia: **È il mio sport preferito!**
 eh eel mee-oh sport preh-feh-ree-toh
 It's my favorite sport!

Giochi a tennis?
 joh-kee ah tehn-nees
 Do you play tennis?

Stefano: **No, faccio palestra.**
 noh fahch-choh pah-lehs-trah
 No, I go to the gym.

Giulia: **Body building?**
 boh-dee beeld-eeng
 Body building?

Stefano:

**Uso le machine come il tapis roulant* in inverno
e corro in pineta in estate.**

ooh-zoh leh mahk-kee-neh koh-meh eel tah-peerooh-lahn een een-vehr-noh eh kohr-roh een pee-neh-tah een ehs-tah-teh

Oh no — I use the machines like the treadmill in the winter and I run in the pine forest in the summer.



*Italians use the French word **tapis roulant** for treadmill.

Talking about Hobbies and Interests

You can certainly do a lot of other things in your leisure time besides wear yourself out playing sports. Here you learn about a variety of them in Italian.

Some typical questions (and varied responses) to ask about **il tempo libero** (*eel tehm-poh lee-behr-oh*) (*free time*) include:

✓ **Che cosa ti piace fare nel tempo libero?**

keh koh-zah tee pyah-cheh fah-reh nehl tehm-poh lee-beh-roh

What do you like to do in your free time?

Mi piace cucinare e fare l'uncinetto.

mee pyah-cheh kooh-chee-nah-reh eh fah-reh loohn-chee-neht-toh

I look to cook and crochet.

✓ **Qual è il tuo passatempo preferito?**

kwahl eh eel tooh-oh pahs-sah-tehm-poh preh-feh-ree-toh

What is your favorite pastime?

Il mio passatempopreferito è . . . /i miei passatempi preferiti sono . . .

eel mee-oh pahs-sah-tehm-poh preh-feh-ree-toh eh/ee myey pahs-sah-tehm-pee preh-feh-ree-tee soh-noh

My favorite pastime is . . . /My favorite pastimes are . . .

You might want to start your sentence with the possessive adjective in the preceding sentence if you're writing to someone rather than speaking.

... fare i giochi da tavolo e giocare a scacchi.

*fah-reh ee joh-kee dah tah-voh-loh oh joh-kahr-reh ah skahk-kee
playing board games or chess.*

... stare con gli amici.

*stah-reh kohn lyee ah-mee-chee
. . . hanging out with friends.*

☛ Quali sport fai?

kwah-lee spohrt fahy

What sports do you do?

Faccio lo sci./Gioco a tennis.

fahch-cho loh shee/joh-koh ah tehn-nees

I ski/I play tennis.

Liking things

You spend your free time doing recreational things that you like. And when you say you like something, use the verb **piacere** (pyah-cheh-reh). This verb is a bit weird in that you usually use it only in the third person singular or the third person plural of any verb tense.

Third person singular: if what you like is singular or an infinitive.

-Mi piace correre. mee pyach-eh *I like to run.*
kohr-reh-reh

-Mi piace il mare. mee pyach eel *I like the sea.*
mah-reh

Third person plural: if what you like is plural.

Mi piacciono	mee pyach-	<i>I like winter</i>
gli sport	choh-noh lyee	<i>sports.</i>
invernali.	spohrt een-	
	vehr-nah-lee	

Only your pronouns change, which are indirect object pronouns and literally mean "such and such a thing is pleasing to me." These are **mi**, **ti**, **gli**, **le**, **ci**, **vi**, **loro** (mee, tee, lyee, leh, chee, vee, loh-roh) (*me, you, him, her, us, you, them*). You don't use personal pronouns (**io**, **tu**, **lui**, **lei** etc.) with the verb **piacere**.

Talkin' the Talk

Have a look at what Serena and Nicoletta are talking about. Nicoletta apparently prefers peaceful and calm activities, whereas Serena likes to participate in sports that make her sweat.

Serena: **Cosa fai questo fine settimana?**
koh-zah fahy kwehs-toh fee-neh-seht-tee-mah-nah
What are you going to do this weekend?

Nicoletta: **Vado in campagna.**
vah-doh een kahm-pah-nyah
I'm going to the countryside.

Serena: **È un'idea fantastica!**
eh ooh-nee-deh-ah fahn-tahs-tee-kah
That's a great idea!

Nicoletta: **Ho una casetta vicino al lago.**
oh ooh-nah kah-seht-tah vee-chee-noh ahl lah-goh
I have a small house close to the lake.

Serena: **Ideale per riposarsi.**
ee-deh-ah-leh pehr ree-poh-zahr-see
Ideal for relaxing.

Nicoletta: **Sì, leggo, scrivo, passeggiò lungo il lago.**
*see lehg-goh skree-voh pahs-sehj-joh loohn-goh eel
lah-goh*
Yes, I read, I write, I take walks around the lake.

Serena: **Non fai sport?**
nohn fahy sport
Don't you play any sports?

Nicoletta: **Vado in bicicletta.**
vah-doh een bee-chee-kleht-tah
I bicycle.

Obviously, participating in sports isn't the only hobby you can have. Some hobbies are more sedentary, like reading, sewing, or playing musical instruments.

Talkin' the Talk



Ernesto and Tommaso are discovering that not all sports are physical.

Ernesto: **Non ti annoi mai?**
nohn tee ahn-noi mahy
Don't you ever get bored?

Tommaso: **No, ho molti interessi.**
noh oh mohl-tee een-teh-rehs-see
No, I have many interests.

Ernesto: **Per esempio?**
pehr eh-zehm-peh-oh
For example?

Tommaso: **Amo leggere e andare al cinema.**
ah-moh lehj-jeh-reh eh ahn-dah-reh ahl
chee-neh-mah
I love to read and go to the movies.

Ernesto: **Non fai sport?**
nohn fahy sport
Don't you play any sports?

Tommaso: **Faccio yoga e meditazione.**
fach-choh yoh-gah eh mehd-ee-tah-tsyoh-neh
I do yoga and meditate.

Many people love music, whether they like to **ascoltare la musica** (ahs-kohl-tah-reh lah mooh-zee-kah) (*listen to music*) or **suonare uno strumento** (swoh-nah-reh ooh-noh strooh-mehn-toh). Of course, there are all kinds of music, from **classica** (klaahs-see-kah) (*classical*) to **jazz** (jats) to **rock** (rohk).

Talkin' the Talk

Emilia and Isabel are two classmates getting to know each other a little better.

- Emilia: **Mi piace molto ascoltare la musica. E tu?**
mee pyah-cheh mohl-toh ahs-kohl-tah-reh lah
mooh-zee-kah eh tooh
I like to listen to music a lot. And you?
- Isabel: **Ho molta musica sul mio i-Pod.**
oh mohl-tah mooh-zee-kah soohl mee-oh ahy-pohd
I have a lot of music on my iPod.
- Emilia: **Tu suoni uno strumento?**
tooh swoh-nee ooh-noh strooh-mehn-toh
Do you play an instrument?
- Isabel: **Suono il violoncello e il pianoforte.**
swoh-noh eel vee-oh-lohn-chehl-loh eh eel
pee-ah-noh-fohr-teh
I play the cello and the piano.
- Emilia: **Sei brava?**
sey brah-vah
Are you good?
- Isabel: **Si, mi piace molto suonare. E tu?**
see mee pyah-cheh mohl-toh swoh-nah-reh eh tooh
I guess so. I really like to play music. And you?
- Emilia: **Suono il flauto, ma preferisco cantare nel coro.**
swoh-noh eel flou-toh mah preh-feh-rees-koh
kahn-tah-reh nehl koh-roh
I play the flute, but I prefer to sing in the chorus.
-

Words to Know

ascoltare	ahs-kohl- <u>tah</u> -reh	to listen to
batteria	baht-teh- <u>ree</u> -ah	drums
chitarra	kee- <u>tahr</u> -rah	guitar
clarinetto	klah-reen- <u>eht</u> -toh	clarinet
flauto	<u>flou</u> -toh	flute
giocare	joh- <u>kah</u> -reh	to play a sport, cards, game
pianoforte	pee- <u>ah</u> -noh- <u>fohr</u> -teh	piano
sassofono	sahs- <u>soh</u> -foh-noh	saxophone
suonare	swoh- <u>nah</u> -reh	to play an instrument
tromba	<u>trohm</u> -bah	trumpet
violoncello	vee-oh-lohn- <u>chehl</u> -loh	cello
violino	vee-oh- <u>lee</u> -noh	violin
voce	<u>voh</u> -cheh	voice



Fun & Games

Now it's time for you to have some fun! In the following box, try to find the names of some plants and animals I introduced in this chapter. I provide the English, but you have to find the Italian.

Find the Italian for these words: horse, flower, bird, cat, wolf, oak, pine, cow, sheep, tree. See Appendix D for answer key.

Word Seek

A	J	A	R	O	C	E	P	O	S
U	I	V	S	W	S	O	P	A	B
A	H	C	E	M	L	U	Y	O	A
C	I	K	R	L	L	U	V	G	D
C	G	B	A	E	F	O	L	E	D
U	N	V	M	Z	U	I	N	S	D
M	A	R	X	J	C	Q	O	I	Y
C	G	A	T	T	O	E	I	R	P
A	L	B	E	R	O	P	S	T	E
F	R	H	O	L	L	E	C	C	U

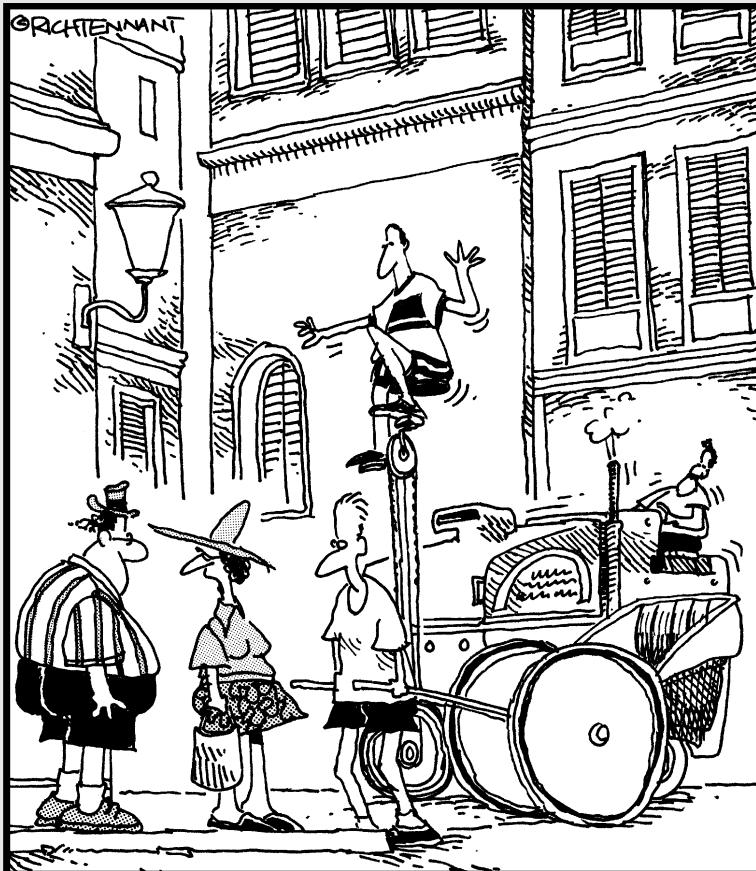


Part III

Italian on the Go

The 5th Wave

By Rich Tennant



"So far you've called a rickshaw, a unicyclist, and a Zamboni. I really wish you'd learn the Italian word for taxicab."

In this part . . .

These chapters help you appreciate the adventure of travel. Here, you'll get help with every aspect of your trip — from getting a visa to making hotel reservations, and from changing U.S. dollars into euros to getting around on public transportation. I also include a chapter on handling those unexpected emergency situations. So **Buon viaggio!** (boo-ohn vee-ah-joh) (*Have a nice trip!*)

Chapter 12

Planning a Trip

In This Chapter

- Making travel plans
- Coming and going: **arrivare** and **partire**
- Taking a tour
- Going to the beach
- Looking forward to your trip: The simple future

Everybody likes to get away from the daily grind and check out new environments and activities during their free time. Tourists and Italians alike flock **la spiaggia** (lah spyahj-jah) (*to the sea*), head **in montagna** (een mohn-tah-nyah) (*to the mountains*), or **in campagna** (een kahm-pahn-yah) (*to the countryside*). Some Italians take long trips outside of Italy. Whatever you do, **buon viaggio!** (bwohn vyahj-joh) (*have a nice trip!*) or **buone vacanze!** (bwoh-neh vah-kahn-zeh) (*have a nice vacation!*)

Deciding When and Where to Go

Deciding when to take a trip can be just as important as choosing your destination. You probably don't want to visit Washington, D.C. in August when the weather can be unbearably hot and humid. Italy also has many cities that really heat up in the summer. In fact, many Italians living in those cities escape for most of August to cooler places, such as the beaches of Sardegna or the cool Dolomites. On the other hand, summer months are also **l'alta stagione** (lahl-tah stah-joh-neh) (*high season*) for tourists.

Talkin' the Talk



Enzo is talking to Cristina about their vacation for the summer. He has it all figured out already, but Cristina is skeptical.

Enzo: **Quest'anno andiamo in montagna!**
kwehs-tahn-noh ahn-dyah-moh een mohn-tah-nyah
 This year we're going to the mountains!

Cristina: **Stai scherzando?**
stahy skehr-tsahn-doh
 Are you kidding?

Enzo: **È rilassante: boschi, aria fresca . . .**
eh ree-lahs-sahn-teh bohs-kee ah-ree-ah frehs-kah
 It's relaxing: woods, fresh air. . . .

Cristina: **È noioso! E non si può nuotare!**
eh noy-oh-zoh eh nohn see pwoh nwoh-tah-reh
 It's boring. And you can't swim!

Enzo: **Ci sono le piscine, i laghi, e i fiumi!**
chee soh-noh leh pee-shee-neh ee /ah-gee eh ee
fyooh-mee
 There are swimming pools, lakes, and rivers!

Cristina: **Ma dai, pensa al mare, al sole. . . .**
mah dahy pehn-sah ahl mah-reh ahl soh-leh
 Come on, think of the sea, the sun. . . .

Enzo: **Facciamo passeggiate, visitiamo i rifugi, mangiamo quel buon cibo di montagna.**
fach-chah-moh pahs-sehj-jaht-teh vee-see-tyah-moh
ee ree-fooh-jee mahn-jah-moh qwel bwohn chee-boh
dee mohn-tahn-yah
 We can go hiking, visit some rifugi, and eat that good mountain food.

Cristina: **Oh no. Io rimango a casa!**
oh noh ee-oh ree-mahn-goh ah kah-sah
 Oh no. I'll stay home!



The Alps and Dolomites offer marvelous terrain for hiking and skiing. A **rifugio** (ree-fooh-joh) is a rustic mountain retreat that people hike or ski to, for the most part. You can enjoy a warm home-cooked meal there, and even spend the night in some.

Taking a Tour

Whether you're in a city or rural area, you can usually find fun and interesting sights to see. Bus tours are for the most part organized in great detail and the price generally includes the cost of the bus, lunch, dinner, and the services of a tour guide. A guided tour, or day-trip, **una gita organizzata** (*ooh-nah jee-tah ohr-gah-nee-dzah-tah*) (an organized tour), may be the most efficient, cost-effective, and informative way to check out nearby attractions.

- ✓ **Ci sono gite organizzate?** (*chee soh-noh jee-teh ohr-gah-need-dzah-teh*)
(Are there any organized tours?)
- ✓ **Quanto costa la gita?** (*kwahn-toh kohs-tah lah jee-tah*) (How much does the tour cost?)
- ✓ **C'è una guida che parla inglese?** (*cheh ooh-nah gwee-dah keh pahr-lah een-gleh-zeh*) (Is there an English-speaking guide?)
- ✓ **Dove si comprano i biglietti?** (*doh-veh see kohm-prah-noh ee bee-lyeht-tee*) (Where do you buy tickets?)

Talkin' the Talk

Lucia and Renzo are in a tour office, talking to a tour agent and deciding which trip to go on the next day.

- Lucia: **C'è una bella gita sul lago di Como domani.**
 cheh ooh-nah behl-lah gee-tah soohl lah-goh dee koh-moh doh-mah-nee
 We can take a nice trip to Lake Como tomorrow.
- Renzo: **Vuoi andare, vero?**
 vwoi ahn-dah-reh veh-roh
 You want to go, don't you?
- Lucia: **Sarebbe carino. E tu?**
 sah-rehb-beh kah-ree-noh eh tooh
 It would be nice. What about you?
- Renzo: **Non amo le gite in autobus.**
 nohn ah-moh leh gee-teh een ou-toh-boohs
 I don't like bus trips.
- Lucia: **Ma è una gita a piedi!**
 mah eh ooh-nah jee-tah ah pyeh-dee
 But it's a walking tour!

Renzo: **Ottimo! A che ora inizia la gita?**
oht-tee-moh. ah keh oh-rah ee-nee-tsyah lah jee-tah
Great! What time does the trip start?

Agent: **Alle sette e trenta.**
ahl-leh seht-teh eh trehn-tah
At seven-thirty a.m.

Renzo: **Quanto dura?**
kwahn-toh dooh-rah
How long is it going to last?

Agent: **Circa cinque ore.**
cheer-kah cheen-kweh oh-reh
About five hours.

Words to Know

campagna [f] **kahm-pah-nyah** **countryside**

gita [f] **jee-tah** **tour**

fiume [m] **fyoooh-meh** **river**

guida [f] **gwee-dah** **guide**

lago [m] **lah-goh** **lake**

mare [f] **mah-reh** **sea**

montagna [f] **mohn-tah-nyah** **mountain**

Booking a Trip/Traveling to Foreign Lands

You never know — you just might want to book a trip to another country while you're in Italy. When you're ready to book your flight or hotel, you may want to consider using **un'agenzia viaggi** (ooh-nah-jehn-tsee-ah vee-ahj-jee) (*a travel agency*). There you can get plane tickets, hotel reservations, or complete tour packages.

As you walk by the travel agency, undoubtedly your eye will be drawn to special all inclusive package deals to Malta, Tunisia, and the Canary Islands, to name a few.

**INCREDIBILI OFFERTE!! Gran Canaria, La Palma. Euro 616 a persona.
Comprende: volo + hotel + tasse e commissioni. Colazione a buffet.**

een-creh-dee-bee-lee ohf-fehr-teh. grahn kah-nah-ree-ah lah pahl-mah. sehy-chehn-toh eh-ooh-roh ah pehr-soh-nah. kohm-prehn-deh voh-loh oh-tehl tahs-seh eh kom-meess-syoh-neh. koh-lah-tsyooh-neh ah booh-fey

Incredible deals! Gran Canaria. La Palma. 616 euros per person. Includes flight, hotel, departure fees, and buffet breakfast.

Talkin' the Talk

Alessandro has just seen this sign for the Canary Islands. He is talking to Giorgio the travel agent.

Giorgio: **Buongiorno, mi dica.**
 bwohn-johr-noh mee dee-kah
 Good morning, can I help you? (Literally: Tell me.)

Alessandro: **Vorrei fare un viaggio alle Isole Canarie.**
 vohr-rey fah-reh oohn vee-ahj-joh ahl-leh ee-zoh-leh
 kah-nah-ree-eh
 I'd like to take a trip to the Canary Islands.

Giorgio: **Dove, esattamente?**
 doh-veh eh-zaht-tah-mehn-teh
 Where exactly?

Alessandro: **Tenerife o La Palma.**
the-neh-ree-feh oh lah pahl-ma
Tenerife or La Palma.

Giorgio: **Un viaggio organizzato?**
ohn vyahj-joh ohr-gah-nee-dzah-toh
An organized trip?

Alessandro: **No, vorrei soltanto prenotare il volo.**
noh vohr-rey sohl-tahn-toh preh-noh-tah-reh eel
voh-loh
No, I'd like to book just the flight.

Giorgio: **E per gli spostamenti interni?**
eh pehr lyee spoh-stah-mehn-tee een-tehr-nee
And what about moving around between islands?

Alessandro: **No, mi sposterò in autobus e traghetto.**
noh, mee spohs-tehr-oh een ou-toh-boohs eh
trah-geht-toh
No, I'll get around by bus and ferry.

Giorgio: **Quando vuole partire?**
kwahn-doh vwoh-leh pahr-tee-reh
When do you want to leave?

Alessandro: **La prima settimana di febbraio.**
lah pree-mah seht-tee-mah-nah dee fehb-brahy-oh
The first week of February.

Giorgio: **E il ritorno?**
eh eel ree-tohr-noh
And return?

Alessandro: **La terza settimana di febbraio.**
lah tehr-tsah seht-tee-mah-nah dee fehb-brahy-oh
The third week of Ferbruary.

Visas and passports

All you need is a passport (**un passaporto**) (ooahn pahs-sah-pohr-toh) to visit Italy if you're going for less than six months. If you go for longer, you will need **un visto** (ooahn vees-toh) (a visa).

If you fly to Italy, the main airports are **Malpensa** (mahl-pehn-sah) in Milan, and **Leonardo da**

Vinci (leh-oh-nahr-doh dah veen-chee) in Rome, but you can also fly into Venice, Bologna, Palermo, and Naples, other popular (and less hectic) airports.



Several years ago, a new vacation concept became popular in Italy: **l'agriturismo** (lah-gree-tooh-reez-moh) (*the farm holiday*). During these types of vacations, people travel to the country or the mountains where they stay in farmhouses. These accommodations range from Spartan to luxurious and romantic; most are good options for families. Guests can help out on the farm, ride horses, and swim at some **agriturismi**. This type of lodging also enables you to eat the traditional food of the region, and you're miles away from formal, impersonal hotels.

Another popular type of lodging is the bed and breakfast, which you can find throughout the countryside as well in big cities like Rome and Milan.

You can easily find an abundance of both on the Web as you're doing your research for your trip.

Words to Know

rimanere	ree-mah-neh-reh	to stay
in treno	een treh-noh	by train
viaggiare	vee-ahj-jah-reh	to travel
viaggio organizzato [m]	vyahj-joh ohr-gah-nee-dzah-toh	organized trip
volo [m]	voh-loh	flight
traghetto [m]	trah-geht-toh	ferry

Arriving and Leaving: The Verbs “Arrivare” and “Partire”

To help you understand the verbs **arrivare** (ahr-ree-vah-reh) (*to arrive*) and **partire** (pahr-tee-reh) (*to leave*), we use them in some simple sentences in the following list. As you can see, when you use these verbs in connection with a specific place (city) **arrivare** is always followed by the preposition **a** (ah) (*at/to/in*), and when you arrive in a country you use the preposition **in** (een) (*in*). **Partire** is always followed by the preposition **da** (dah) (*from*) when leaving from a place; when leaving for a place it is followed by the preposition **per** (pehr) (*for*).

- ✓ **Luca parte da Torino alle cinque.** (looh-kah pahr-teh dah toh-ree-noh ahl-leh cheen-kweh) (*Luca leaves from Turin at 5 o’clock.*)
- ✓ **Arrivo a Taormina nel pomeriggio.** (ahr-ree-voh ah tah-ohr-mee-nah nehl poh-meh-reej-joh) (*I’m arriving in Taormina in the afternoon.*) The verbs **partire** (pahr-tee-reh) (*to leave*) and **arrivare** (ahr-ree-vah-reh) (*to arrive*) are conjugated like other regular **_ARE**, and **_IRE** verbs, which you can check out in Chapter 2 or in Appendix A.

Talkin’ the Talk



Filippo and Marzia are spending some time together before Filippo has to catch a plane.

Marzia: **A che ora parte l’aereo?**
 ah keh oh-rah pahr-teh lah-eh-reh-oh
 What time does the plane leave?

Filippo: **Alle nove di mattina.**
 ahl-leh noh-veh dee maht-tee-nah
 At nine a.m.

Marzia: **A che ora arrivi a Los Angeles?**
 ah keh oh-rah ahr-ree-vee ah lohs ahn-jeh-lehs
 What time will you arrive in Los Angeles?

Filippo: **Alle undici di notte.**
 ahl-leh oohn-dee-chee dee noht-teh
 At eleven p.m.

Going to the Beach and Spa

Italy has 7,600 kilometers of coastline, so it is no surprise that Italians and tourists alike flock to Italy's famous beaches, which can be both sandy (**sabbia**, sahb-bee-ah) or rocky (**scoglio** skoh-lyoh), each with its decided advantages (and clientele). Most beaches have that most wonderful of Italian institutions called **il bagnò** (eel bahn-yoh). This is not a bathroom or a bath, but a combination bar/beach club/restaurant, where you can show up and rent an **ombrellone** (ohm-brehl-loh-neh) (*beach umbrella*) and **un lettino** (oohn leht-tee-noh) (*a lounge chair*) for the day, week, or month. Here you and the children can also play **beach volley** (*beach volleyball*) or **racchet-tone** (rahk-eht-toh-neh) (*beach tennis*), or rent a **pedalò** (peh-dah-loh) (*paddle boat*).

Italy also has many wonderful naturally heated thermal springs, spas or **terme** (tehr-meh). Some of these are quite well-equipped, and for whose services you pay (like Chianciano, Montecatini, and Fiuggi). Other **terme** can be accessed for free in places like Vulcano, Ischia, and Calabria.

Using the Simple Future Tense

Sometimes you need a verb form that indicates that something will happen in the near future. In Italian, this tense is called **futuro semplice** (foh-tooh-roh seh-m-pree-cheh) (simple future). However, you can also use the present tense when referring to a point in the future. The following sentences use the simple future tense:

- ✓ **Andrò in Italia.** (ahn-droh een ee-tah-lee-ah) (*I will go to Italy.*)
- ✓ **Quando arriverai a Palermo?** (kwahn-doh ahr-ree-veh-rah-ee-ah) (*When will you arrive in Palermo?*)
- ✓ **Non torneremo troppo tardi.** (nohn tohr-neh-reh-moh trohp-poh tahr-dee) (*We won't be back too late.*)

To form the simple future of regular verbs, take the whole infinitive, cut off the final **e**, and add the same set of endings (**ò, ai, à, emo, ete, anno**). For **_are** verbs you need to change the **-a** in the infinitive to an **-e**. Note the stem change in Table 12-1.

Sending letters and postcards

So if you're one of those people who still like to send **cartoline** (kahr-toh-lee-neh) postcards and **lettere** (leht-teh-reh) (*letters*) while traveling, you're going to need to find an **ufficio postale** (oohf-fee-choh pohs-tah-leh) or **tabaccaio** (tah-bahk-kahy-oh) (*tobacconist*) where

you can purchase stamps, **francobolli** (frahn-koh-bohl-lee) and buste (boohs-teh) (*envelopes*). You can also find stamps and envelopes in a **cartoleria** (kahr-toh-leh-ree-ah) (*stationery shop*).

Table 12-1

Simple Future

<i>Parlare = PARLER-</i>	<i>Prendere= PRENDER</i>	<i>Partire= PARTIR</i>	<i>Finire= FINIR</i>	<i>Translation</i>
parlerò	prenderò	partirò	finirò	(I will talk, have, leave, finish)
parlerai	prenderai	partirai	finirai	(you will talk, have, leave, finish)
parlerà	prenderà	partirà	finirà	(he/she/you will talk, have, leave, finish)
parleremo	prenderemo	partiremo	finiremo	(we will speak, have, leave, finish)
parlerete	prenderete	partirete	finirete	(you will speak, have, leave, finish)
perleranno	prenderanno	partiranno	finiranno	(they will speak, have, leave, finish)



Fun & Games

Fill in the missing words with one of three possible answers under each sentence. See Appendix D for the answer key.

1. **Quest'anno andiamo in _____.** (This year we're going to the mountains.)
 - a. albergo
 - b. montagna
 - c. aereo

2. **Il volo parte _____ Palermo alle tre.** (The flight leaves from Palermo at three o'clock.)
 - a. da
 - b. su
 - c. a

3. **Passo le vacanze in _____.** (I spend my vacation in the country.)
 - a. mare
 - b. campagna
 - c. montagna

4. **Dov'è la mia _____?** (Where is my suitcase?)
 - a. stanza
 - b. piscina
 - c. valigia

5. **È un _____ organizzato.** (It's an organized trip.)
 - a. viaggio
 - b. treno
 - c. volo

Chapter 13

Money, Money, Money

In This Chapter

- ▶ Banking transactions
- ▶ Trading currencies
- ▶ Charging purchases
- ▶ Knowing various currencies

On the one hand, you can never have enough of it; on the other hand, money can cause trouble. This is particularly true for situations abroad or when you’re dealing with foreign money in general. This chapter doesn’t cover only currency — you know how tiresome converting foreign currencies can be — but all the terms you need to know about money.

Going to the Bank

Dealing with banks isn’t always fun, but sometimes you can’t avoid them. You aren’t often in the position of being able to cash a big check; you may have other, more painful, transactions to perform. In this section, we give you some banking terms that can help you manage a dialogue in a bank.

You may need to go to the bank for several reasons. For example, you may want to **cambiare valuta** (kahm-bee-ah-reh vah-looh-tah) (*to change money*), **prelevare contante** (preh-leh-vah-reh cohn-tahn-tee) (*to withdraw money*), **versare soldi sul tuo conto** (vehr-sah-reh sohl-dee soohl tooh-oh kohn-toh) (*to deposit money into your account*). Other reasons could be **aprire un conto** (ah-pree-reh oohn kohn-toh) (*to open an account*), or **riscuotere un assegno** (rees-kwoh-teh-reh oohn ahs-seh-nyoh) (*to cash a check*).

Other phrases you may find helpful include:

- ✓ **Mi dispiace, il suo conto è scoperto.** (mee dees-pyah-cheh eel sooh-oh kohn-toh eh skoh-pehr-toh) (*I’m sorry, your account is overdrawn.*)
- ✓ **Può girare l’assegno per favore?** (pwoh jee-rah-re lahs-seh-nyoh pehr fah-voh-reh) (*Could you endorse the check, please?*)

- ✓ **Quant'è il tasso d'interesse?** (kwant-eh eel *tahs-soh deen-teh-rehs-seh*)
(*What is the interest rate?*)
- ✓ **Vorrei cambiare dei traveler's checks.** (voahr-ray kahn-bee-ah-reh
traveler's checks) (*I'd like to change some traveler's checks.*)

When you are in the lucky situation of having money left, you may like to invest it. Here is some of the present tense conjugation for **investire** (een-vehs-tee-reh) (*to invest*), which is conjugated like any other regular -IRE verb without the "isc" (see Chapter 2).

Conjugation	Pronunciation	Translation
io investo	ee-oh een-vehs-toh	<i>I invest</i>
tu investi	tooh een-vehs-tee	<i>you invest</i>
lui/lei investe	loo-ee/ley een-vehs-teh	<i>he/she invests</i>



To make life easier for you and to help you avoid standing in front of closed doors, we give you the hours of Italian banks: Banks are open Monday through Friday, generally from 8:30 a.m. to 1:30 p.m; then they reopen from 2:30 to 4 p.m. These are general guidelines; the hours differ from city to city.

Talkin' the Talk

Il signor Blasio asks for a statement of his account. He talks to un'impiegata (ooh-neem-pyeh-gah-tah) (a female employee).

Sig. Blasio: **Vorrei riscuotere un assegno.**
voahr-ray rees-kwoh-teh-reh oohn ahs-seh-nyoh
I'd like to cash a check.

Clerk: **Un documento, per favore. Firmi questa ricevuta,
per favore.**
oohn doh-kooh-mehn-toh pehr fah-voh-reh. feer-mee
kwehs-tah ree-cheh-vooh-tah pehr fah-voh-reh
Some ID please. Please sign this receipt.

Sig. Blasio: **Vorrei anche il mio estratto conto.**
voahr-rey ahn-keh eel mee-oh ehs-traht-toh kohn-toh
I'd like to get my bank statement too.

Clerk: **Il suo numero di conto?**
eel sooh-oh nooh-meh-roh dee kohn-toh
Your account number?

Sig. Blasio: **Sette zero cinque nove.**
seht-teh dzeh-roh cheen-kweh noh-veh
 Seven zero five nine.

Clerk: **Grazie. Attenda un momento. . .**
grah-tsee-eh aht-tehn-dah oohn moh-mehn-toh
Thank you. Wait one moment. . .

Ecco a lei!
ehk-koh ah ley
 Here you are!

Sig. Blasio: **Grazie mille, arrivederci!**
grah-tsee-eh meel-leh ahr-ree-veh-dehr-chee
 Thanks so much, good-bye!

Words to Know

conto [m] corrente	kohn-toh kohr-rehn-teh	checking account
estratto conto [m]	ehs-traht-toh kohn-toh	bank statement
tasso d'interesse	tahs-soh deen-teh-rehs-seh	interest rate
libretto [m] degli assegni	lee-breht-toh deh-lyee ahs-seh-nyee	checkbook
carta di credito	kahr-tah dee kreh-dee-toh	credit card
ricevuta [f]	ree-cheh-vooh-tah	receipt
girare	jee-rah-reh	to endorse
riscuotere	rees-kwoh-teh-reh	to cash

Changing Money

You're more likely to need to change money when you're abroad. If you're in Italy and want to change some dollars into euros (*eh-ooh-roh*), you would go either to a **banca** (*bahn-kah*) (*to the bank*) or to an **ufficio di cambio** (*oohf-fee-choh dee kahm-bee-oh*) (*exchange office*), or more common still, an ATM machine. Some places definitely offer better exchange rates, so shop around if you have time.

Because Italy is highly frequented by tourists from all over the world, the clerks in exchange offices have experience with people speaking English. Still, you just might want to complete a transaction in an exchange office in Italian.

Talkin' the Talk



Liza Campbell, an American tourist, needs to change some dollars for euros. She goes to a bank and talks to the teller.

Ms. Campbell: **Buongiorno, vorrei cambiare alcuni dollari in euro.**
bwohn-johr-noh vohr-rey kahm-bee-ah-reh ahl-kooh-nee dohl-lah-ree een eh-ooh-roh
Hello, I'd like to change some dollars into euros.

Teller: **Benissimo. Quanti dollari?**
beh-nees-see-moh kwahn-tee dohl-lah-ree
Very well. How many dollars?

Ms. Campbell: **Duecento. Quant'è il cambio?**
dooh-eh-chehn-toh kwahn-teh eel kahm-bee-oh
Two hundred. What's the exchange?

Teller: **Oggi un euro costa un dollaro e venti più cinque euro di commissione**
oj-jee oohn eh-ooh-roh kohs-tah oohn dohl-lah-roh eh vehn-tee pyooh cheen-kweh eh-oohr-oh dee kohm-mees-syoh-neh
Today the euro costs a dollar and twenty cents plus five euros for the service charge.

Ms. Campbell: **Va bene.**
vah beh-neh
Okay.

Teller: **Mi serve un documento.**
mee sehr-veh oohn dok-ooh-mehn-toh
I need some ID.

Ms. Campbell: **Ecco.**
ehk-koh
Here.

Teller: **Sono 175 Euro meno i 5 Euro di commmissione.**
sohn-noh chehn-toh seht-tahn-tah cheen-kweh eh-ooh-roh meh-noh ee cheen-kweh eh-ooh roh dee kom-mee-syoh-neh
It comes to 175 euros less the 5 euro exchange fee.

Ms. Campbell: **Grazie mille!**
grah-tsee-eh meel-leh
Thanks a million!

Nowadays, changing money is not the most efficient way to get the local currency. In Italy, as in most Western countries, you can find a **bancomat** (*bahn-koh-mah*) (*ATM*) almost anywhere. Also, depending on where you shop and eat, you can pay directly with a **carta di credito** (*kahr-tah dee kreh-dee-toh*) (*credit card*). The following phrases can help you find the cash you need (or at least the cash machine):

- ✓ **Dov'è il bancomat più vicino?** (doh-veh eel *bahn-koh-maht* pyooh vee-chee-noh) (*Where is the nearest ATM?*)
- ✓ **Posso pagare con la carta di credito?** (pohs-soh pah-gah-reh kohn lah *kahr-tah* dee *kreh-dee-toh*) (*May I pay with my credit card?*)
- ✓ **Mi scusi, potrebbe cambiarmi una banconota da100 euro?** (mee skooh-zee poh-trehb-beh kahm-bee-ahr-mee ooh-nah *bahn-koh-noh-tah* da *chehn-toh eh-ooh-roh*) (*Excuse me, would you be able to change a 100 euro bill?*)
- ✓ **Mi dispiace, non accettiamo carte di credito.** (mee dees-pyah-cheh nohn ahch-cheht-tyah-moh *kahr-teh* dee *kreh-dee-toh*) (*I'm sorry, we don't accept credit cards.*)
- ✓ **Mi dispiace, non ho spiccioli.** (mee dees-pyah-cheh nohn oh *speech-choh-lee*) (*I'm sorry, I haven't any small change.*)

Words to Know

in contanti	een kohn-tahn-tee	in cash
riscuotere	rees-kwoh-teh-reh	to cash
accettare	ahch-cheht-tah-reh	to accept
bancomat [m]	bahn-koh-maht	ATM
cambiare	kahm-bee-ah-reh	to change
spiccioli [m]	speech-choh-lee	small change

Using Credit Cards

In Canada and the United States you could take care of almost all your financial needs without ever handling cash. You can pay for almost everything with your debit or credit card. You can even use your credit card to get cash at ATMs and in some banks. This is the same in Italy, although cash is still the customary form of payment in many parts of Italy.

Talkin' the Talk

Ms. Johnson wants to withdraw some euros with her credit card but discovers that the ATM is out of order. She enters the bank and asks the cashier what's up.

Ms. Johnson: **Scusi, il bancomat non funziona.**
skooh-zee eel bahn-koh-maht nohn
foohn-tsyoh-nah
Excuse me, the ATM isn't working.

Cashier: **Lo so, signora, mi dispiace!**
loh soh see-nyoh-rah mee dees-pyah-cheh
I know, madam, I'm sorry!

Ms. Johnson: **Ma ho bisogno di contanti.**
 mah oh bee-zoh-nyoh dee kohn-tahn-tee
 But I need cash.

Cashier: **Può prelevarli qui alla cassa.**
 pwoh preh-leh-vahr-lee kwee ahl-lah kahs-sah
 You can withdraw it here at the counter.

Ms. Johnson: **D'accordo, grazie.**
 dak-kohr-doh grahts-ee-eh
 OK, thanks.



Normally, things go easily and you don't have any problems using credit cards. But you may be asked to show your identification for security purposes. The following phrases can help you be prepared for this situation:

- ✓ **Potrei vedere un documento per favore?** (poh-trey veh-deh-reh oohn dohk-oo-h-mehn-toh pehr fah-voh-reh) (*May I please see your identification?*)
- ✓ **Potrebbe darmi il suo passaporto, per favore?** (poh-trehb-beh dahr-mee eel sooh-oh pahs-sah-pohr-toh pehr fah-voh-reh) (*Would you please give me your passport?*)
- ✓ **Il suo indirizzo?** (eel sooh-oh een-dee-reet-tsoh) (*What is your address?*)

You may have to wait to exchange money. The following sentence says all you need to know about this rather formal verb: **attendere** (aht-tehn-deh-reh) (*to wait*).

Attenda, per favore (aht-tehn-dah pehr fah-voh-reh) (*Please wait.*)

Talkin' the Talk

While Ms. Johnson explores her options with the cashier, another person enters the bank and starts to complain:

Signora Gradi: **Il bancomat ha mangiato la mia carta.**
 eel bahn-koh-maht ah mahn-jah-toh lah mee-ah
 kahr-tah
 The cash machine has eaten my card.

Teller: **Ha digitato il numero giusto?**
 ah dee-jee-tah-toh eel nooh-eh-roh joohs-toh
 Did you enter the right number?

Signora Gradi: **Certo! Che domanda!**
chehr-toh keh doh-mahn-dah
 Of course! What a question!

Teller: **Mi scusi, a volte capita.**
mee skoooh-zee ah vohl-teh kah-peeh-tah
 Excuse me, but it can happen.

Signora Gradi: **Cosa posso fare?**
koh-sah pohs-soh fah-reh
 What can I do?

Teller: **Attenda un momento . . .**
aht-tehn-dah oohn moh-mehn-toh
 Wait a moment . . .

Words to Know

<i>Certo!</i>	<i>chehr-toh</i>	<i>Of course!</i>
<i>il bancomat [m]</i>	<i>eel bahn-koh-maht</i>	<i>the ATM</i>
<i>digitare</i>	<i>dee-gee-tah-reh</i>	<i>to enter</i>
<i>prelevare</i>	<i>preh-leh-vah-reh</i>	<i>to withdraw</i>
<i>funzionare</i>	<i>foon-tsyoh-nah-reh</i>	<i>to work; to function</i>
<i>contanti [m]</i>	<i>kohn-tahn-tee</i>	<i>cash</i>
<i>Che domanda!</i>	<i>keh doh-mahn-dah</i>	<i>What a question!</i>

Looking at Various Currencies

Along with many other European countries, the Italian monetary unit is the **euro** (*eh-ooh-roh*). There are 1 euro coins and 2 euro coins, and then larger bills (5, 10, 20, 50, 100, and so on). The plural form is **euro** (*eh-ooh-roh*), and the abbreviation is €. (That's right, the singular and the plural forms are

exactly the same). Smaller denominations are in **centesimi** (chehn-teh-zee-mee) (*cents*), and are coins. (You can check out Chapter 4 for numbers.)

Talkin' the Talk

Patrizia is planning her vacation to Croatia. She is planning on taking the **aliscafo** (ah-leeh-skah-foh) (high speed ferry) from Ancona tomorrow. She talks to her friend, Milena, about exchanging her money.

Patrizia: **Sai qual'è il cambio euro in kuna croata?**
sayh kwah-leh eel kahm-bee-oh een kooh-nah
kroh-ah-tah
Do you know the exchange rate for euros to Croatian kuna?

Milena: **Non ne ho idea!**
nohn neh oh ee-deh-ah
I have no idea!

Patrizia: **Domani parto per Zara per un mese. . .**
doh-mah-nee pahr-toh pehr dsah-rah perh oohn
meh-zeh
Tomorrow I'm leaving for Zara for a month.

Milena: **. . . e non hai ancora cambiato!**
eh nohn ahy ahn-koh-rah kahm-bee-ah-toh
. . . and you haven't changed your money yet!

Patrizia: **Posso farlo al porto.**
pohs-soh fahr-loh ahl pohr-toh
I can do it at the port.

Milena: **Ma no, è più caro!**
mah noh eh pyoooh kah-roh
No, that's more expensive!

Patrizia: **Mi accompagni in banca?**
mee ahk-kohm-pah-nyee een bahn-kah
Will you come with me to the bank?



The **euro** is legal tender in 17 of the 27 countries that belong to the European Union (EU). So, if you travel among EU countries after you have euros in your possession, you don't have to change money in every country you visit. Since 2002, the Italian **lira** has disappeared, and the euro is the only valid currency in Italy.

Table 13-1 shows the currencies of various countries.

Table 13-1

Currencies

<i>Italian</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>	<i>English single/ plural</i>	<i>Where used</i>
dollaro/dollari	<i>doh-lah-roh/ doh-lah-ree</i>	<i>dollar/dollars</i>	Canada; United States
lira/e sterlina/e	<i>lee-rah/eh stehr- lee-nah/neh</i>	<i>pound/pounds</i>	Ireland; United Kingdom
peseta/pesetas	<i>peh-seh-tah/ peh-seh-tahs</i>	<i>pesetas/pesetas</i>	Mexico

Talkin' the Talk

Cristina is at the bank. **Allo sportello** (*ahl-loh spoehr-teh/-loh*) (at the counter), she sees that her high school buddy Paolo is now the bank teller.

Patrizia: **Ciao Paolo. Vorrei cambiare cinquecento euro
in sterline.**

*chou pah-oh-loh vohr-rey kahm-bee-ah-reh cheen-
kweh-chehn-toh eh-oohr-roh een stehr-lee-neh
Hi Paolo. I'd like to change 500 euros into
British pounds.*

Teller: **Vai in Inghilterra?**
vahy een een-geehl-tehr-rah
Are you going to England?

Patrizia: **Sì.**
see
Yes.

- Teller: **Sai che puoi usare il bancomat ed è anche più sicuro.**
sahy keh pwoi ooh-zah-reh eel bahn-koh-maht ehd
eh ahn-keh pyooh see-kooh-roh
Do you know that you can use the ATM machine and
that it's even safer?
- Patrizia: **Hai ragione, allora cambio solo duecento euro.**
ahy rah-joh-neh ahl-loh-rah kahm-bee-oh soh-loh
dooh-eh-chehn-toh eh-ooh-roh
You're right: I'm just going to change 200 euros.
- Teller: **Ecco le tue sterline, fai buon viaggio!**
ehk-koh leh tooh-eh stehr-lee-neh fahy bwon
vyahj-joh
Here are your pounds, have a good trip!

Words to Know

prendere	<u>preh</u> n-deh-reh	to take
viaggio [m]	<u>vya</u> hj-joh	trip
aeroporto [m]	ah-eh-roh- <u>poh</u> r-toh	airport
cambiare	kahm-bee-ah-reh	to exchange
domani	doh- <u>mah</u> -nee	tomorrow



Fun & Games

Here's a little game for you. First define each word from this chapter, and then find them in the word search puzzle. See Appendix D for the answer key.

C	A	R	T	A	D	I	C	R	E	D	I	T	O	D
S	O	K	S	Z	N	B	O	Y	D	O	Y	Y	D	O
E	R	R	Y	P	A	Z	G	E	C	L	S	A	M	C
T	R	J	U	N	O	G	P	S	D	L	P	N	F	U
A	X	A	C	E	B	R	P	Q	Z	A	K	U	L	M
M	G	A	I	A	M	I	T	Q	S	R	X	K	J	E
O	L	W	A	B	C	T	O	E	Y	O	R	J	I	N
C	H	L	N	C	M	E	N	I	L	R	E	T	S	T
N	C	K	I	E	B	A	I	N	V	L	N	L	H	O
A	J	O	A	S	S	A	C	K	R	A	O	Z	P	H
B	L	T	R	I	C	E	V	U	T	A	A	S	E	K
I	E	H	T	W	N	L	C	N	X	M	K	Q	G	V
Q	J	A	U	Y	C	V	O	Q	A	G	M	N	A	Q
Q	L	N	Q	E	K	C	Y	P	D	F	Q	L	V	W
Z	Q	X	X	B	E	J	M	W	F	Y	Y	A	L	N

Banca _____

Euro _____

Bancomat _____

Kuna _____

Cambiare _____

Ricevuta _____

Cartadicredito _____

Spiccioli _____

Contanti _____

Sportello _____

Documento _____

Sterline _____

Dollaro _____



Chapter 14

Getting Around: Planes, Trains, Taxis, and Buses

In This Chapter

- ▶ Traveling by airplane
 - ▶ Declaring your goods to customs
 - ▶ Losing your luggage
 - ▶ Renting a car
 - ▶ Using public transportation
 - ▶ Understanding maps and schedules
 - ▶ Arriving early, late, or on time
-

Whether you're visiting Italy or you just need to explain to an Italian-speaking friend how to get across town, transportation vocabulary really comes in handy. This chapter helps you make your way through the airport and also helps you secure transportation to get where you're going once you're on the ground, either by taxi, bus, car, or train. Further, I show you what to do at customs, how to find missing luggage, and how to rent a car. Andiamo (ahn-dyah-moh) — let's go!

Getting through the Airport

You're lucky, because it's very likely that you can get by with English when you're at an Italian airport. Both Italian and English are usually spoken there. But, you just may be in a situation where the person next to you in an airport only knows Italian. Just in case, I want to provide you with some useful navigational material. Besides, you'll probably want a chance to practice the language in which you will be immersed once you step outside the airport.

Checking in

The moment you finally get rid of your luggage is called check-in — in Italian **accettazione** (ahch-cheht-tah-tsyoh-neh). Actually, people often use “check-in” in Italian, too. You also pick up your boarding pass at the check-in counter, so speaking is usually inevitable. The following dialogue contains some of the sentences people commonly exchange.

Talkin' the Talk

Ms. Adami is checking in. She shows her ticket and passport to the agent and leaves her suitcases at the counter.

- Agent: **Il suo biglietto, per favore.**
eel sooh-oh bee-lyeht-toh pehr fah-voh-reh
Your ticket, please.
- Sig.ra Adami: **Ecco.**
ehk-koh
Here it is.
- Agent: **Passaporto?**
pahs-sah-pohr-toh
Passport?
- Sig.ra Adami: **Prego.**
preh-goh
Here you are.
- Agent: **Quanti bagagli ha?**
kwahn-tee bah-gah-lyee ah
How many suitcases do you have?
- Sig.ra Adami: **Due valigie e un bagaglio a mano.**
dooh-eh vah-ee-jeh eh oohn bah-gah-lyoh ah mah-noh
Two suitcases and one piece of carry-on luggage.
- Agent: **Qual è la sua destinazione?**
qwahl eh lah sooh-ah deh-stee-nahts-yoh-neh
What is your destination?

Sig.ra Adami: **New York.**
nooh yohrk
New York.

Agent: **Ha fatto Lei le proprie valige?**
ah faht-toh ley leh proh-pree-eh vah-/ee-jeh
Did you pack your own bags?

Sig.ra Adami: **Si.**
see
Yes.

Agent: **Le ha sempre avute sotto mano da quando le ha chiuse?**
leh ah sehm-preh ah-vooh-teh soht-toh mah-noh
dah qwahn-doh leh ah kyooh-zeh
Have they been with you the whole time since
you closed them?

Sig. ra Adami: **Si; posso avere un posto vicino al finestrino, per favore?**
see pohs-soh ah-veh-reh oohn pohs-toh vee-chee-
noh ahl fee-nehs-tree-noh
Yes (they have); may I please have a window seat?

Agent: **Un attimo. Ora controllo: si, glielo do. Ecco la sua carta d'imbarco.**
ohn aht-tee-moh oh-rah kohn-trohl-loh see lyeh-
la doh ehk-koh lah sooh-ah kahr-tah
deem-bahr-koh
One second, I'm going to check now. Yes, I can.
Here is your boarding pass.

**L'imbarco è alle nove e quindici, uscita tre.
Proseguia al controllo di sicurezza.**
leem-bahr-koh eh ahl-leh noh-veh eh kween-dee-
chee ooh-shee-tah treh proh-seh-gwah ahl kohn-
trohl-loh dee see-koohr-ehts-tsah
Boarding is at 9:15, gate 3. You can move on to
security now.

Words to Know

imbarco [m]	<i>eem-bahr-koh</i>	boarding
valigia [f]	<i>vah-lee-jah</i>	suitcase
uscita [f]	<i>oooh-shee-tah</i>	gate
bagaglio a mano [m]	<i>bah-gah-lyoh ah mah-noh</i>	carry-on luggage
passaporto [m]	<i>pahs-sah-pohr-toh</i>	passport
bagaglio [m]	<i>bah-gah-lyoh</i>	baggage

Dealing with excess baggage

Sometimes you take so many things with you, and your suitcases are so heavy, that the airline charges an extra fee to transport your luggage. The truth is that you really can't say much; you simply have to pay.

- ✓ **Questa valigia eccede il limite.** (*qwehs-tah vah-lee-jah ehch-cheh-deh eel lee-mee-teh*) (*This bag is over the weight limit.*)
- ✓ **Ha un eccesso di bagaglio.** (*ah oohn ehch-ches-soh dee bah-gah-lyoh*) (*You have excess luggage.*)
- ✓ **Deve pagare un supplemento.** (*deh-veh pah-gah-reh oohn soohp-pleh-mehn-toh*) (*You have to pay a surcharge.*)
- ✓ **Questo bagaglio a mano eccede le misure.** (*kwehs-toh bah-gah-lyoh ah mah-noh ehch-cheh-deh leh mee-zooth-reh*) (*This carry-on bag exceeds the size limit.*)



Before you go to the airport, always find out the weight limit of your bags and how much an extra suitcase will cost. This way you can buy an extra suitcase if necessary and avoid having to throw out precious items at check-in.

Waiting to board the plane

Before boarding, you may encounter unforeseen situations, such as delays. If you do, you'll probably want to ask some questions. Read the following dialogue for an example of what you can say when you're dealing with a delay.

Talkin' the Talk

Mr. Campo is in the boarding area. He asks the agent if his flight is on time. Always be prepared for cryptic answers.

Sig. Campo: **Il volo è in orario?**
 eel voh-loh eh een oh-rah-ree-oh
 Is the flight on time?

Agent: **No, è in ritardo.**
 noh eh een ree-tahr-doh
 No, there has been a delay.

Sig. Campo: **Di quanto?**
 dee kwahn-toh
 How much?

Agent: **Non si sa.**
 nohn see sah
 No one knows.

Words to Know

<i>supplemento [m]</i>	<i>soohp-pleh-mehn-toh</i>	supplement
------------------------	----------------------------	------------

<i>circa</i>	<i>cheer-kah</i>	about
--------------	------------------	-------

<i>in ritardo</i>	<i>een ree-tahr-doh</i>	late; delayed
-------------------	-------------------------	---------------

<i>volo [m]</i>	<i>voh-loh</i>	flight
-----------------	----------------	--------

<i>in orario</i>	<i>een oh-rah-ree-oh</i>	on time
------------------	--------------------------	---------

Coping after landing

After you exit a plane in Italy, you are immediately hit by voices speaking a foreign language. You have to take care of necessities, such as finding a bathroom, changing money, looking for the baggage claim area, and securing a luggage cart and a taxi. The following dialogues give you an idea of how these situations may play out.

Talkin' the Talk

Mrs. Johnson just arrived at the airport in Milan. First, she wants to withdraw money to pay for a taxi and to hold her over for the first few days. She asks a porter where she can do so.

Mrs. Johnson:	Mi scusi? mee skooh-zee Excuse me?
Porter:	Prego! <i>preh-goh</i> Yes, please!
Mrs. Johnson:	Dov'è un bancomat? <i>doh-veh oohn bahn-koh-mahrt</i> Where is an ATM?
Porter:	In fondo al corridoio vicino all'ufficio cambio, signora. <i>een fohn-doh ahl coh-ree-doi-oh vee-chee-noh ahl-loohf-fee-ch-oh kahm-bee-oh see-nyoh-rah</i> At the end of the corridor near the money exchange office.
Mrs. Johnson:	C'è anche una banca? <i>cheh ahn-keh ooh-nah bahn-kah</i> Is there also a bank?

Passerby: **No, c'è soltanto uno sportello di cambio.**
 noh cheh sohl-tahn-toh ooh-noh spohr-tehl-l
 oh dee kahm-bee-oh
 No, there is only a window to change money.

Mrs. Johnson: **Benissimo. Grazie mille.**
 beh-nees-see-moh. Grah-tsee-eh meel-leh
 Thank you very much.

Mrs. Johnson withdraws some money and then needs to pick up her luggage. She asks a woman passing by where she can find a luggage cart.

Mrs. Johnson: **Scusi, Dove sono i carrelli?**
 skooh-zee doh-veh soh-noh ee kahr-rehl-lee
 Excuse me. Where are the luggage carts?

Woman: **Al ritiro bagagli.**
 ahl ree-tee-roh bah-gah-lyee
 At the baggage claim.

Mrs. Johnson: **Servono monete?**
 sehr-voh-noh moh-neh-teh
 Do I need coins/change?

Woman: **Sì, da un Euro.**
 see dah oohn eh-ooh-roh
 Yes, 1 euro.



Visitors from countries in the European Union need only **la carta d'identità** (lah kahr-tah dee-dehn-tee-tah) (*the identity card*) to enter Italy. Nationals of all other countries need a valid **passaporto** (pahs-sah-pohr-toh) (*passport*), and sometimes also a visa. Usually, at **controllo passaporti** (kohn-trohl-loh pahs-sah-pohr-tee) (*passport control*), you don't exchange many words, and the ones you do exchange are usually routine. The following section gives you a typical dialogue at passport control.

Words to Know

arrivo [m]	ahr-ree-voh	arrival
partenza [f]	pahr-tehn-zah	departure
vacanza [f]	vah-kahn-zah	vacation
consegna bagagli [f]	kohn-eh-nyah bah-gah-lyee	baggage claim
cambio [m]	kahm-bee-oh	money exchange
destinazione [f]	dehs-tee-nah-zyoh-neh	destination
entrata [f]	ehn-trah-tah	entrance

Going through Customs

You can't get into a foreign country without going through customs. When you have something to declare, you do so **alla dogana** (ahl-lah doh-gah-nah) (*at customs*). These examples should relieve you of any possible worries. Generally, you can just walk through the line that says "**Niente da dichiarare**," (nee-ehn-teh dah dee-kyah-rah-reh) (*nothing to declare*) and no one will say anything to you, but sometimes you may be stopped.

Niente da dichiarare? (nee-ehn-teh dah dee-kyah-rah-reh) (*Anything to declare?*)

No, niente. (noh nee-ehn-teh) (*No, nothing.*)

Per favore, apra questa valigia. (pehr fah-voh-reh ah-prah kwehs-tah
vah-lee-jah) (*Please, open this suitcase.*)

È nuovo il computer? (eh nwoh-voh eel kohm-pu-tehr) (*Is this computer new?*)

Sì, ma è per uso personale. (see mah eh pehr ooh-zoh pehr-soh-nah-leh)
(*Yes, but it's for personal use.*)

Per questo deve pagare il dazio. (pehr kwehs-toh deh-veh pah-gah-reh
eel dah-tsee-oh) (*You have to pay duty on this.*)

When you pass through customs, you may have to declare any goods that you purchased, if over a certain dollar/euro amount.

Ho questo/queste cose da dichiarare. (oh kwehs-toh/kwehs-teh koh-zeh dah dee-kyah-rah-reh) (*I have to declare this/these things.*)

Losing Luggage

Losing luggage is always a possibility when flying to Italy, especially if you're changing planes, but don't despair: 80 percent of misplaced luggage turns up within 24 hours, and the other 20 percent within three days (usually). The airline will deliver your bags to your hotel or apartment, or you can go back to the airport for them if you need them sooner.

What follows is a typical dialogue.

Talkin' the Talk

Giancarlo, Teresa, and Emilia have just arrived at the Bologna airport via Amsterdam, but their bags are not on the baggage claim belt.

Giancarlo: **Ci sono altre valige dal volo da Amsterdam?**
chee soh-noh ahl-treh vah-lee-jeh dahl voh-loh
dah ahm-stehr-dahm
Are there other bags from the Amsterdam flight?

Facchino (Porter): **Non ce ne sono altre.**
nohn cheh neh soh-noh ahl-treh
No, there are no more.

Giancarlo: **Le nostre mancano.**
leh nohs-treh mah-nah-noh.
Ours are missing.

Cosa dobbiamo fare?
koh-sah dohb-byah-moh fah-reh
What should we do?

Facchino: **Si rivolga allo sportello Bagagli Smarriti.**
see ree-vohl-gah ahl-loh spohr-teh-lah bah-gah-lyee zmahr-ree-tee
Go to the the Missing Baggage window.

(At the Missing Baggage window.)

Impiegato (Employee): **Dica pure.**
dee-kah pooh-reh
How can I help you?

Giancarlo: **Non sono arrivati i nostri bagagli da Amsterdam.**
nohn soh-noh ahr-ree-vah-tee ee noh-stree bah-gah-lyee dah ahm-stehr-dahm
Our bags from Amsterdam didn't arrive.

Impiegato: **Avete le ricevute dei bagagli?**
ah-veh-teh leh ree-cheh-vooh-teh dey bah-gah-lyee
Do you have the baggage receipts?

Giancarlo: **Eccole qui.**
ehk-koh-leh qwee
Here they are.

Impiegato: **Bisogna riempire questo modulo con il vostro recapito, numero di telefono, e descrizione dei bagagli.**
bee-zoh-nyah ree-ehm-peh-reh qwehs-toh moh-dooh-loh kohn eel vohs-troh reh-kahp-ee-toh nooh-mehr-oh dee teh-leh-foh-noh eh deh-skree-zyoh-neh dey bah-gah-lyee
You need to fill out this form with your address, phone number and description of the bags.

Noi vi telefoneremo appena arriveranno.
noi vee teh-leh-fohn-eh-reh-moh ahp-peh-nah ahr-ree-veh-rahn-noh
We'll call you as soon as they arrive.

Words to Know

<i>dogana</i> [f]	doh-gah-nah	<i>customs</i>
<i>dichiarare</i>	dee-kyah-rah-reh	<i>to declare</i>
<i>niente</i>	nee-ehn-teh	<i>nothing</i>
<i>pagare</i>	pah-gah-reh	<i>to pay</i>
<i>uso personale</i>	ooh-zoh pehr-soh-nah-leh	<i>personal use</i>
<i>modulo</i>	moh-dooh-loh	<i>form</i>
<i>ricevute</i>	ree-cheh-vooh-teh	<i>receipts</i>

Renting a Car

Italy is a beautiful country, and if you visit, you may want to consider taking driving tours of the cities and the countryside. If you don't have a car, renting one to visit various places is a good idea, but don't forget that Italian traffic is not very relaxed, Italians don't stay in their own lanes on highways, and finding a place to park can tax your patience — especially in town centers, some of which don't even allow cars. Even medium-sized cars often cannot get through narrow streets and make turns where cars are allowed. I don't want to scare you, though; just enjoy the adventure!



To drive a car or motorcycle in Italy, you must be at least 18 years old. Furthermore, you need a valid **patente** (pah-tehn-teh) (*driver's license*). Finding a car to rent is easy at all airports.

Whether you rent a car by phone, online, or directly from a rental service, the process is the same: Just tell the rental company what kind of car you want and under what conditions you want to rent it. Research your options before getting to Italy if possible: This way, you will have a car waiting for you upon your arrival. The following dialogue represents a typical conversation on this topic.

Talkin' the Talk

Mr. Brown is staying in Italy for two weeks and wants to rent a car to visit different cities. He goes to the rental service booth at the airport and talks to **l'impiegato** (leem-pyeh-gah-toh) (*the employee*).

Mr. Brown: **Vorrei noleggiare una macchina.**
vohr-rey noh-lehj-jah-reh ooh-nah mahk-kee-nah
I would like to rent a car.

Agent: **Che tipo?**
keh tee-poh
What kind?

Mr. Brown: **Di media cilindrata col cambio automatico.**
dee meh-dee-ah chee-leen-drah-tah kohl kahm-bee-oh ou-toh-mah-tee-koh
A mid-size with an automatic transmission.

Agent: **Per quanto tempo?**
pehr kwahn-toh tehm-poh
For how long?

Mr. Brown: **Una settimana.**
ooh-nah seht-tee-mah-nah
One week.

Quanto è per la settimana?
kwahn-toh eh pehr lah seht-tee-mah-nah
What does it cost for a week?

Agent: **C'è una tariffa speciale: 18 Euro al giorno.**
cheh ooh-nah tah-reef-fah speh-chah-leh deech-oht-toh eh-oohr-oh ahl johr-noh
There is a special rate; 18 Euros per day.

Mr. Brown: **L'assicurazione è inclusa?**
 lahs-see-kooh-rah-tsyoh-neh eh een-klooh-zah
 Is insurance included?

Agent: **Sì, con la polizza casco.**
 see kohn lah poh-leets-tsah kahs-koh
 Yes, a comprehensive policy.

Other words and expressions that you may need when renting a car or getting fuel at a gas station include the following:

- ✓ **l'aria condizionata** (*lah-ree-ah kohn-dee-tsee-oh-nah-tah*) (*air conditioning*)
- ✓ **il cabriolet** (*eel kah-bree-oh-leh*) (*convertible*)
- ✓ **fare benzina** (*fah-reh behn-dzee-nah*) (*to put in gas*)
- ✓ **Faccia il pieno.** (*fahch-chah eel pyeh-noh*) (*Fill it up.*)
- ✓ **la benzina verde** (*lah behn-dzee-nah vehr-deh*) (*unleaded fuel*)
- ✓ **la benzina super** (*lah behn-dzee-nah sooh-pehr*) (*premium fuel*)
- ✓ **Controlli l'olio.** (*kohn-trohl-lee loh-lyoh*) (*Check the oil.*)



A car with an automatic transmission will cost you significantly more because these are rare in Italy, where everyone drives a car with a manual shift.

Navigating Public Transportation

If you'd rather not drive yourself, you can get around quite comfortably using public transportation, such as taxis, trains, and buses. The following sections tell you how to do so in Italian.

Calling a taxi

The process of hailing a taxi is the same in Italy as it is in the United States — you even use the same word: **Taxi** (*tah-ksee*) has entered the Italian language. The only challenge for you is that you have to communicate in Italian. Here are some phrases to help you on your way:

- ✓ **Può chiamarmi un taxi?** (*pwoh kyah-mahr-mee oohn tah-ksee*)
(Can you call me a taxi?)

- ✓ **Vorrei un taxi, per favore.** (vohr-rey oohn *tah-ksee pehr fah-voh-reh*)
(*I'd like a taxi, please.*)

In case you are asked **per quando?** (pehr *kwahn-doh*) (*for when?*), you need to be prepared with an answer. Following are some common ones:

- ✓ **subito** (sooh-bee-toh) (*right now*)
- ✓ **fra un'ora** (frah oohn-oh-rah) (*in one hour*)
- ✓ **alle due del pomeriggio** (ahl-leh dooh-eh dehl poh-meh-reej-joh)
(*at 2:00 p.m.*)
- ✓ **domani mattina alle 5 e mezzo** (doh-mah-nee maht-tee-nah ahl-leh
cheen-qweh eh mets-so) (*tomorrow morning at 5:00 a.m.*)

After you seat yourself in a taxi, the driver will ask where to take you. Here are some potential destinations:

- ✓ **Alla stazione, per favore.** (ahl-lah stah-tsyoh-neh pehr fah-voh-reh)
(*To the station, please.*)
- ✓ **All'aeroporto.** (ahl-lah-reh-oh-pohr-toh) (*To the airport.*)
- ✓ **In via Veneto.** (een vee-ah veh-neh-toh) (*To via Veneto.*)
- ✓ **A questo indirizzo: via Leopardi, numero 3.** (ah kwehs-toh een-dee-ree-tsoh vee-ah leh-oh-pahr-dee nooh-meh-roh treh) (*To this address:
via Leopardi, number 3.*)

Finally, you have to pay. Simply ask the driver **Quant'è?** (kwahn-teh)
(*How much is it?*) For more information about money, see Chapter 13.

Moving by train

You can buy a train ticket **alla stazione** (ahl-lah stah-tsyoh-neh) (*at the station*) or at **un'agenzia di viaggi** (ooh-nah-jehn-tsee-ah dee vee-ahj-jee) (*a travel agency*). If you want to take a **treno rapido** (treh-noh rah-peh-doh) (*express train*) that stops only in the main stations, you pay a **supplemento** (soohp-pleh-mehn-toh) (*surcharge*). You can travel first class or second class. On some trains it's a good idea to reserve your seat; on others a reservation is absolutely required. The faster trains in Italy are called **Inter City (IC)** — or **Euro City (EC)**, if their final destination is outside Italy. **The Euro Star** and the different kinds of **Freccia** are even faster options (the **Frecciarossa** and **Frecciargento** being the fastest at 250 + kilometers per hour).

Keep in mind that in Italy you have to validate your ticket before entering **il binario** (eel bee-nah-ree-oh) (*the platform; the track*). Therefore, the train station positions validation boxes in front of the platforms.

You can find out all about trains by checking out the Italian national rail website www.trenitalia.com. This will tell you about duration, price, and even let you purchase your ticket ahead of time.

Talkin' the Talk



Bianca is at the train station in Rome. She goes to an information counter (**ufficio informazioni**) (oohf-fee-ch-oh een-fohr-mats-yoh-neh) to ask about a connection to Perugia.

Bianca: **Ci sono treni diretti per Perugia?**
*chee soh-noh treh-nee dee-reht-tee pehr
 peh-rooh-jah*
 Are there direct trains to Perugia?

Agent: **No, deve prendere un treno per Terni.**
*noh deh-veh prehn-deh-reh oohn treh-noh pehr
 tehr-nee*
 No, you have to take a train to Terni.

Bianca: **E poi devo cambiare?**
eh poi deh-voh kahm-byah-reh
 And then do I have to change [trains]?

Agent: **Sì, prende un locale per Perugia.**
see prehn-deh oohn loh-kah-leh pehr peh-rooh-jah
 Yes, you take a local (slow) train for Perugia.

Bianca: **A che ora parte il prossimo treno?**
ah keh oh-rah pahr-teh eel prohs-see-moh treh-noh
 What time does the next train leave?

Agent: **Alle diciotto e arriva a Terni alle diciannove.**
*ahl-leh dee-choht-toh eh ahr-ree-vah ah tehr-nee
 ahl-leh dee-chahn-noh-veh*
 At 18 hours (6 p.m.). It arrives in Terni at 19 hours
 (7 p.m.).

Bianca: **E per Perugia?**
eh pehr peh-rooh-jah
 And to Perugia?

Agent: **C'è subito la coincidenza.**
cheh sooh-bee-toh lah koh-een-chee-dehn-zah
 There is an immediate connection.

After exploring your options, you have to make a decision and buy a ticket. In the following dialogue, Bianca does just that.

Talkin' the Talk



Bianca goes to the ticket counter and buys her ticket.

Bianca: **Un biglietto per Perugia, per favore.**
ohn bee-lyeht-toh pehr peh-rooh-jah pehr
fah-voh-reh
One ticket to Perugia, please.

Agent: **Andata e ritorno?**
ahn-dah-tah eh ree-tohr-noh
Round trip?

Bianca: **Solo andata. Quanto viene?**
soh-loh ahn-dah-tah kwahn-toh vyeh-neh
One-way. How much does it cost?

Agent: **In prima classe 30 euro.**
een pree-mah klahs-seh trehn-tah eh-ooh-roh
First class [costs] 30 euros.

Bianca: **E in seconda?**
eh een seh-kohn-dah
And second [class]?

Agent: **Diciotto.**
deech-oht-toh
18.

Bianca: **Seconda classe, per favore.**
seh-kohn-dah klahs-seh pehr fah-voh-reh
Second class, please.

Da che binario parte?
dah keh bee-nah-ree-oh pahr-teh
From which track does it leave?

Agent: **Binario tre.**
bee-nah-ree-oh treh
Track 3.

Words to Know

binario [m]	<i>bee-nah-ree-oh</i>	platform; track
biglietto [m]	<i>bee-lyeht-toh</i>	ticket
andata [f]	<i>ahn-dah-tah</i>	one way
ritorno [m]	<i>ree-tohr-noh</i>	return trip
supplemento [m]	<i>soohp-pleh-mehn-toh</i>	surcharge

Going by bus or tram

To get from point A to point B without a car, you most likely walk or take the bus or tram or subway in bigger cities. We provide the appropriate Italian vocabulary for such situations in this section.

Some Italian cities have streetcars, or trams, and most have buses. Incidentally, in Italian they spell it **il tram** and pronounce it eel trahm. The Italian word for bus is **l'autobus** (*lou-toh-boohs*) — and the little buses are called **il pulmino** (*eel poohl-mee-noh*). Big buses that take you from one city to another are called **il pullman** (*eel poohl-mahn*) or **la corriera** (*lah kohr-ree-eh-rah*).

You can buy bus or tram tickets in Italian bars, **dal giornalaio** (*dahl johr-nah-lah-yoh*) (*at newspaper stands*), or **dal tabaccaio** (*dahl tah-bahk-kahy-oh*) (*tobacco shop*). The latter are little shops where you can purchase cigarettes, stamps, newspapers, and so on. You can find them on virtually every street corner in Italy; they're recognizable by either a black-and-white sign or a blue-and-white sign with a big T on it.

Talkin' the Talk

Gerardo wants to get to the train station. He's standing at a bus stop but is a little unsure about which bus to take. He asks a man who is also waiting.

- Gerardo: **Mi scusi.**
mee *skooh-zee*
Excuse me.
- Man: **Prego?**
preh-goh
Yes?
- Gerardo: **Quest'autobus va alla stazione?**
kwehs-tou-toh-boohs vah ah/lah stah-tsyoh-neh
Does this bus go to the station?
- Man: **Sì.**
see
Yes.
- Gerardo: **Dove si comprano i biglietti?**
doh-veh see kohm-prah-noh ee bee-/yeh-tee
Where can I buy tickets?
- Man: **In questo bar.**
een kwehs-toh bahr
In this bar.

You probably aim to take the most convenient and fastest means of transport. To know which one this is, you have to know what's what and your way about. If you don't, hopefully you can find a nice person to help you.

Talkin' the Talk



Tom, a Canadian tourist, wants to visit the cathedral downtown. He asks about the bus, but a woman advises him to take the subway because it takes less time. (There are subways in Milan, Rome, Catania, and Naples.)

- Tom: **Scusi, quale autobus va al Duomo?**
skooh-zee kwah-leh ou-toh-boos vah ahl dwoh-moh
Excuse me, which bus goes to the Cathedral?
- Woman: **Perché non prende la metropolitana?**
pehr-keh nohn prehn-deh lah
meh-troh-poh-lee-tah-nah
Why don't you take the subway?

- Tom: **È meglio?**
 eh *meh-lyoh*
 Is it better?
- Woman: **Sì, ci mette cinque minuti!**
 see chee *meht-teh cheen-kweh mee-nooh-tee*
 Yes, it takes five minutes!
- Tom: **Dov'è la fermata della metropolitana?**
 doh-veh lah fehr-mah-tah *dehl-lah*
 meh-troh-poh-lee-tah-nah
 Where is the subway station?
- Woman: **Dietro l'angolo.**
 dee-eh-troh *lahn-goh-loh*
 Around the corner.

On the subway, Tom asks a student where he should to get off:
 Note that he uses the **tu** informal form now.

- Tom: **Scusa, sai qual è la fermata per il Duomo?**
 skooh-zah sahy kwahl eh lah fehr-mah-tah pehr eel
 dwoh-moh
 Excuse me, do you know which is the stop for the
 Cathedral?
- Student: **La prossima fermata.**
 lah pros-see-mah fehr-mah-tah
 The next stop.
- Tom: **Grazie!**
 grah-tssee-eh
 Thanks!
- Student: **Prego.**
 preh-goh
 You're welcome.

Reading maps and schedules

You don't need to know much about reading maps except for the little bit of vocabulary written on them. Reading a schedule can be more difficult for travelers because the schedules are usually written only in Italian. You frequently find the following words on schedules:

- ✓ **l'orario** (loh-rah-ree-oh) (*the timetable*)
- ✓ **partenze** (pahr-tehn-tseh) (*departures*)
- ✓ **arrivi** (ahr-ree-vee) (*arrivals*)
- ✓ **giorni feriali** (johr-nee feh-ree-ah-lee) (*weekdays*)
- ✓ **giorni festivi** (johr-nee fehs-tee-vee) (*Sundays and holidays*)
- ✓ **il binario** (eel bee-nah-ree-oh) (*the track; the platform*)

The schedule shown in Figure 14-1 shows you train names, length of trip, and the difference in prices between first and second class.

DEPARTURE STATION:		ARRIVAL STATION:				DATE:	
BOLOGNA (TUTTE LE STAZIONI)		ROMA (TUTTE LE STAZIONI)				19/1/2011	
DEPARTURE	ARRIVAL	LENGTH OF JOURNEY	TRAIN NO.	TRAIN CATEGORY		1ST CLASS*	2ND CLASS*
10:53 BOLOGNA	13:13 ROMA TE	02:20	9413 FRECCIARGENTO	■■	80,00€	58,00€	●
10:23 BOLOGNA	12:45 ROMA TE	02:22	9519 FRECCIAROSSA	■■	80,00€	58,00€	●
10:38 BOLOGNA	12:55 ROMA TE	02:17	9415 FRECCIARGENTO	■■	80,00€	58,00€	●
11:10 BOLOGNA	15:24 ROMA TE	04:06	589	■	52,00€	38,50€	●
13:00 BOLOGNA	15:22 ROMA TE	02:22	9521 FRECCIAROSSA	■■	80,00€	58,00€	●

Figure 14-1:
Typical
Italian train
schedule.



Keep in mind that Europeans don't write a.m. or p.m.; they count the hours from 0.00 to 24.00, otherwise known as military time. Therefore, 1.00 is the hour after midnight, whereas 1:00 p.m. is 13.00.

Being Early or Late

You don't always arrive on time, and you may have to communicate that you'll be late or early, or apologize to someone for being delayed. The following list contains important terms that you can use to do so:

- ✓ **essere in anticipo** (*ehs-seh-reh een ahn-tee-chee-poh*) (*to be early*)

Probabilmente sarò in anticipo. (*proh-bah-beel-mehn-teh sah-rah een ahn tee-chee-poh*) (*[I'll] probably be early.*)
- ✓ **essere puntuale** (*ehs-seh-reh poohn-tooh-ah-leh*) (*to be on time*)

L'autobus non è mai puntuale. (*lou-toh-boohs nohn eh mahy poohn-tooh-ah-leh*) (*The bus is never on time.*)
- ✓ **essere in ritardo** (*ehs-seh-reh een ree-tahr-doh*) (*to be late*)

L'aereo è in ritardo. (*lah-eh-reh-oh eh een ree-tahr-doh*) (*The plane is late.*)

These examples use the preceding phrases in sentences:

- ✓ **Mi scusi, sono arrivata in ritardo.** (*mee skooh-zee soh-noh ahr-ree-vah-tah een ree-tahr-doh*) (*I'm sorry, I arrived late.*)
- ✓ **Meno male che sei puntuale.** (*meh-noh mah-leh keh sey poohn-tooh-ah-leh*) (*It's a good thing you're on time.*)

When talking about lateness, you probably can't avoid the verb **aspettare** (*ahs-peht-tah-reh*) (*to wait*). Following are a few examples of this verb:

- ✓ **Aspetto l'autobus da un'ora.** (*ahs-peht-toh lou-toh-boohs dah ooh-noh-rah*) (*I've been waiting for the bus for an hour.*)
- ✓ **Aspetta anche lei il ventitré?** (*ahs-peht-tah ahn-keh ley eel vahn-tee-treh*) (*Are you also waiting for the number 23 bus?*)
- ✓ **Aspetto mia madre.** (*ahs-peht-toh mee-ah mah-dreh*) (*I'm waiting for my mother.*)

Note that the verb **aspettare** takes no preposition, as the English *to wait* (*for*) does.





Fun & Games

What a mess! This schedule is really jumbled. The Italian words for **train**, **bus stop**, **train station**, **track**, **ticket**, **one way**, **return trip**, and **surcharge** are hidden in the following puzzle. If you want to get to your train on time, you have to solve it. Hurry up!! See Appendix D for the answer key.

Word Seek

B	S	M	T	A	T	A	M	R	E	F	O
I	T	U	D	H	G	L	T	X	L	N	C
N	S	Y	P	V	X	L	A	B	E	D	G
A	P	J	Y	P	B	E	I	R	S	H	D
R	K	D	A	J	L	G	T	X	F	X	V
I	V	D	U	Y	L	E	M	R	C	D	Q
O	I	D	Y	I	K	A	M	G	G	D	R
R	Z	J	E	L	X	S	T	E	E	L	K
B	C	T	C	P	M	D	Q	A	N	C	I
B	T	H	P	R	S	P	U	F	D	T	K
O	R	I	T	O	R	N	O	S	O	N	O
S	T	A	Z	I	O	N	E	Z	A	G	A

Chapter 15

Finding a Place to Stay

In This Chapter

- Reserving a place
- Arriving at your hotel
- Using possessive pronouns and adjectives

To really get to know Italians and the Italian language, and to enjoy the Italian lifestyle, you need to travel to Italy. If you're not lucky enough to have Italian friends who can offer you a place to stay, you have to find a hotel, of which there are many creative varieties. This chapter shows you how to make yourself understood when you ask for a room or check into a hotel. Plus, we give you a crash course on possessive pronouns and adjectives and the imperative (or command) verb tense.

Choosing a Place to Stay

Do some research about the different places you can stay while you're in Italy, and try to find those with an authentic flair to them: There is a broad range of places to suit everyone. There are conventional three-to-five-star **alberghi** (ahl-behr-gee) (*hotels*) and **villaggi turistici** (veel-laj-jee tooh-rees-tee-chee) (*resorts in hot spots* like Sardegna that offer either **mezza pensione** [medz-ah pehn-syoh-neh] [*breakfast plus one other meal*]) or **pensione completa** (pehn-syoh-neh kohm-pleh-tah) (*breakfast, lunch, and dinner included in the price*) options. Then there are smaller, more personal lodgings, which include family-run **bed and breakfasts** (pronounced just the same as in English, but with the rolled **r**), and **pensioni** (pehn-see-oh-nee) (*small hotels or part of someone's house where breakfast is usually served*) to mountain **rifugi** (ree-fooh-jee) (*mountain huts that range from spartan to spa quality*), and the increasingly popular **agriturismo** (ah-gree-tooh-reez-moh) (*farm stay*). And don't forget all of those former monasteries and convents!

Reserving a Room

When you reserve a room in a hotel, you use the same terms as you do **prenotare/fare una prenotazione** (preh-noh-tah-reh/fah-reh ooh-nah preh-noh-tats-yoh-neh) (*to make a reservation*) in a restaurant. Use either of the synonyms **la camera** (lah kah-meh-rah) or **la stanza** (lah stahn-zah) (*the room*). Italian hotel terms may be different than those you're used to, so I want to spend some time telling you how to ask for what you want in Italian.

La camera singola (lah kah-meh-rah seen-goh-lah) is a room with one twin bed. **La camera doppia** (lah kah-meh-rah dohp-pee-ah) is a room with two twin beds, whereas **la camera matrimoniale** (lah kah-meh-rah mah-tree-moh-nee-ah-leh) has one big bed for two persons.

In Italy, people commonly refer to rooms simply as **una doppia**, **una matrimoniale**, and **una singola**. Everyone understands that you're talking about hotel rooms. Breakfast is generally included in most hotels, but ask just to be certain. We're sure we don't have to tell you that making reservations in advance is important. This is particularly true for the **alta stagione** (ahl-tah stah-joh-neh) (*peak season*) — in Italy it's the summer months.

When you're making reservations or staying at a hotel, you may have a few questions about the room and the amenities. You'll probably encounter and use some of these common Italian sentences and phrases:

- ✓ **La stanza è con bagno?** (lah stahn-zah eh kohn bah-nyoh) (*Does the room have a bathroom?*) (Even fabulous five-star hotels have some single rooms without bathrooms still, but ask this question only when you're in a nice hotel if you're asking for an inexpensive single.)
- ✓ **Posso avere una stanza con doccia?** (pohs-soh ah-veh-reh ooh-nah stahn-zah kohn dohch-chah) (*May I have a room with a shower?*)
- ✓ **Non avete stanze con la vasca?** (nohn ah-veh-teh stahn-zeh kohn lah vahs-kah) (*Don't you have rooms with bathtubs?*)
- ✓ **Avete una doppia al primo piano?** (ah-veh-teh ooh-nah dohp-pee-ah ahl pree-moh pyah-noh) (*Do you have a double room on the first floor?* Note that this would be the second floor for Americans: Chapter 5 goes into the different floors.)
- ✓ **È una stanza tranquillissima e dà sul giardino.** (eh ooh-nah stahn-zah trahn-kweel-lees-see-mah eh dah soohl jahr-dee-noh) (*The room is very quiet and looks out onto the garden.*)
- ✓ **La doppia viene duecento Euro a notte.** (lah dohp-pee-ah vyeh-neh dooh-eh-chehn-toh ee-ooh-roh ah noht-teh) (*A double room costs 200 euros lire per night.*)
- ✓ **La colazione è compresa?** (lah koh-lah-tsyooh-neh eh kohm-preh-zah) (*Is breakfast included?*)

- ✓ **Può darmi una camera con aria condizionata?** (pwoh dahr-mee ooh-nah kah-meh-rah kohn ah-ree-ah kohn-dee-tsee-oh-nah-tah) (*Can you give me a room with air conditioning?*)
- ✓ **Dove sono i suoi bagagli?** (doh-veh soh-noh ee swoi bah-gah-lyee) (*Where is your baggage?*)
- ✓ **Può far portare le mie valige in camera, per favore?** (pwoh fahr pohr-tah-reh leh mee-eh vah-lee-jeh een kah-meh-rah pehr fah-voh-reh) (*Would you please have my bags brought to my room?*)

Talkin' the Talk

Donatella is making reservations for five people. The receptionist says that only two double rooms are left, so Donatella has to figure out how to accommodate all five people.

Donatella: **Buonasera.**
bwoh-nah-seh-rah
 Good evening.

Receptionist: **Buonasera, prego.**
bwoh-nah-seh-rah preh-goh
 Good evening, can I help you?

Donatella: **Avete stanze libere?**
ah-veh-teh stahn-zeh /ee-beh-reh
 Do you have any vacant rooms?

Receptionist: **Non ha la prenotazione?**
nohn ah lah preh-noh-tah-tsyoh-neh
 You don't have a reservation?

Donatella: **Eh, no . . .**
eh noh
 No . . .

Receptionist: **Abbiamo soltanto due doppie.**
ahb-byah-moh sohl-tahn-toh dooh-eh dohp-pee-eh
 We have just two double rooms.

Donatella: **Non c'è una stanza con tre letti?**
nohn cheh ooh-nah stahn-zah kohn treh /eht-tee
 Isn't there a room with three beds?

Receptionist: **Possiamo aggiungere un letto.**
pohs-see-ah-moh ahj-joohn-jeh-reh oohn /eht-toh
 We can add a bed.

Donatella: **Benissimo, grazie.**
beh-nees-see-moh grah-tsee-eh
Very well, thank you.

Words to Know

aria condizionata [f]	<u>a</u> h-ree-ah <u>kohn-dee-tsee-oh-</u> <u>nah-tah</u>	airconditioning
camera [f] stanza [f]	<u>kah-meh-rah</u> <u>stahn-zah</u>	room
camera singola [f]	<u>kah-meh-rah</u> <u>seen-goh-lah</u>	single room
camera doppia [f]	<u>kah-meh-rah</u> <u>dohp-pee-ah</u>	room with two twin beds
camera matrimoniale [f]	<u>kah-meh-rah</u> <u>mah-tree-moh-nee-</u> <u>ah-leh</u>	room with a double bed
colazione [f]	<u>koh-lah-tsyoh-neh</u>	breakfast
culla [f]	<u>koohl-lah</u>	crib
letto supplementare [m]	<u>leht-toh</u> <u>soohp-pleh-mehn-</u> <u>tah-reh</u>	extra bed
servizio in camera [m]	<u>sehr-vee-tsee-oh</u> <u>een kah-meh-rah</u>	room service
mezza pensione	<u>medz-ah</u> <u>pehn-syoh-neh</u>	half board
pensione completa	<u>pehn-syoh-neh</u> <u>kohm-pleh-tah</u>	full board
servizio sveglia [m]	<u>sehr-vee-tsee-oh</u> <u>sveh-lyah</u>	wake-up call

Checking In

Registering at an Italian hotel isn't as difficult as you might imagine. But do expect the person at the front desk to ask for **un documento** (oohn dohk-oo-hmehn-toh), such as a passport. They might even want to hang on to it for a few hours, but don't worry, you'll get it back!

After you're in your room, you may find that you forgot to bring something you need, or discover that you need something in addition to all you brought. Many rooms come with items like **una cassaforte** (ooh-nah kahs-sah-fohr-teh) (*a safe*) for your valuables, and **un frigorifero** (oohn free-goh-ree-feh-roh) (*a refrigerator*), but you may need help in figuring out how they work. You might also need a **fon** (fohn) (*blow dryer*). In these instances, you can ask the receptionist, the doorman, or the maid for what you need. Don't forget to say **scusi** (skoooh-zee) (*excuse me*) and **per favore** (pehr-fah-voh-reh) (*please*)!

- ✓ **Non trovo l'asciugacapelli/il fon.** (nohn troh-voh lah-shoooh-gah-kah-pehl-lee/il fohn) (*I can't find the hair dryer.*)
- ✓ **manca la carta igenica.** mahn-kah lah kahr-tah ee-jeh-nee-kah) (*There is no toilet paper.*)
- ✓ **È ancora aperto il bar?** (eh ahn-koh-rah ah-pehr-toh eel bahr) (*Is the bar still open?*)
- ✓ **Vorrei un'altra coperta per favore.** (vohr-rey oohn-ahl-trah koh-pehr-tah pehr fah-voh-reh) (*I'd like one more blanket please.*)
- ✓ **Dov'è la farmacia più vicina?** (doh-veh lah fahr-mah-chee-ah pyooh vee-chee-nah) (*Where is the closest pharmacy?*)
- ✓ **Vorrei la sveglia domattina.** (vohr-ray lah sveh-lyah doh-maht-tee-nah) (*I'd like to get an early wake-up call tomorrow morning.*)
- ✓ **C'è il telefono nella mia stanza?** (cheh eel teh-leh-foh-noh nehl-lah mee-ah stahn-zah) (*Is there a telephone in my room?*)



If you want another something, notice that you write the feminine form **un'altra** (oohn-ahl-trah) differently than the masculine **un altro** (oohn ahl-troh). Feminine words require an apostrophe; masculine words don't. This is also valid for all other words that begin with a vowel.

The following list contains more words you may find useful during a hotel stay:

- ✓ **fazzolettino di carta** (faht-tsoh-leht-tee-noh dee *kahr-tah*) (*tissue*)
- ✓ **lettino** (leht-tee-noh) (*cot*)
- ✓ **negoziò di regali** (neh-goh-tsee-oh dee reh-gah-lee) (*gift shop*)
- ✓ **parrucchiere** (pahr-roohk-kyeh-reh) (*hairdresser*)
- ✓ **portacenere** (pohr-tah-cheh-neh-reh) (*ashtray*)
- ✓ **piscina** (pee-shee-nah) (*swimming pool*)

Talkin' the Talk



Mr. Baricco arrives at the hotel where he made reservations two weeks ago. He walks up to the receptionist.

Sig. Baricco: **Buonasera, ho una stanza prenotata.**
bwoh-nah-seh-rah oh ooh-nah stahn-zah
preh-noh-tah-tah
 Good evening, I have a reservation.

Receptionist: **Il suo nome, prego?**
eel sooh-oh noh-meh preh-goh
 Your name, please?

Sig. Baricco: **Baricco.**
bah-reek-koh
 Barrico.

Receptionist: **Sì, una singola per due notti.**
see ooh-nah seen-goh-lah pehr dooh-eh noht-tee
 Yes, a single (room) for two nights.

Può riempire la scheda, per favore?
pwoh ree-ehm-peh-reh lah skeh-dah pehr fah-voh-reh
 Could you fill out the form, please?

Sig. Baricco: **Certo. Vuole un documento?**
chehr-toh vwoh-leh oohn doh-kooh-mehn-toh
 Sure. Do you want identification?

Receptionist: **Sì, grazie . . . Bene . . . la sua chiave la stanza numero quarantadue al quarto piano.**

see *grah-tsee-eh beh-neh lah sooh-ah kyah-veh lah stahn-zah nooh-meh-roh kwah-rahn-tah-dooh-eh ahl kwahr-toh pyah-noh*

Yes, thanks . . . Here is your key to room number forty-two, fourth floor.

Sig. Baricco: **Grazie. A che ora è la colazione?**

grah-tsee-eh ah keh oh-rah eh lah koh-lah-tsyoh-neh
Thank you. What time is breakfast?

Receptionist: **Dalle sette alle nove.**

dahl-leh seht-teh ahl-leh noh-veh
From seven till nine.

Sig. Baricco: **Grazie. Buonanotte.**

grah-tsee-eh bwoh-nah-noht-teh
Thank you. Good-night.

Receptionist: **Buonanotte.**

bwoh-nah-noht-teh
Good-night.

Words to Know

avete	ah- <u>veh</u> -teh	do you (plural) have
dov'è	doh- <u>veh</u>	where is
dove sono	<u>doh</u> -veh <u>soh</u> -noh	where are
Può ripetere per favore?	pwoh ree- <u>peh</u> -teh-reh pehr fah- <u>voh</u> -reh	Could you repeat that please?
saldare il conto	sahl- <u>dah</u> -reh <u>eel</u> <u>kohn</u> -toh	to check out
indirizzo [m]	een-dee- <u>reet</u> -tsoh	address

Table 15-1 shows the singular and plural form of several hotel-related words with their proper articles. For more on forming singular and plural articles and nouns, see Chapter 2.

Table 15-1**Making Plurals**

Singular Plural	Pronunciation	Translation
la cameriera, le cameriere	lah kah-meh-ryeh-rah leh kah-meh-ryeh-reh	<i>chambermaid</i> <i>chambermaids,</i> <i>waitress, waitresses</i>
il bagno, i bagni	eel bah-nyoh ee bah-nyee	<i>bathroom, bathrooms</i>
la chiave, le chiavi	lah kyah-veh leh kyah-vee	<i>key, keys</i>
il cameriere, i camerieri	eel kah-meh-ryeh-reh ee kah-meh-ryeh-ree	<i>waiter, waiters</i>
lo specchio, gli specchi	loh spehk-kyoh lyee spehk-kyee	<i>mirror, mirrors</i>
l'albergo, gli alberghi	lahl-behr-goh lyee ahl-behr-gee	<i>hotel, hotels</i>
la stanza, le stanze	lah stahn-zah leh stahn-zeh	<i>room, rooms</i>
la camera, le camere	lah kah-meh-rah leh kah-meh-reh	<i>room, rooms</i>
la persona, le persone	lah pehr-soh-nah leh pehr-soh-neh	<i>person, persons</i>
il letto, i letti	eel leht-toh ee leht-tee	<i>bed, beds</i>
la notte, le notti	lah noht-teh leh noht-tee	<i>night, nights</i>
l'entrata, le entrate	lehn-trah-tah leh ehn-trah-teh	<i>entrance, entrances</i>

Personalizing pronouns

As you know, a pronoun is a word you use in a place of a noun: When you say “I go,” you substitute your name with I. I is the personal or subject pronoun. Sometimes you use a pronoun that not only takes the place of a noun but also indicates to whom it belongs. For example, when you say “My bag is red and yours is black,” the possessive pronoun yours represents bag and indicates to whom the bag belongs.

This or these: Demonstrative adjectives and pronouns



In English, you use the pronouns *this* and *these* (called demonstrative pronouns) to specify what you're talking about. *This* is singular, and *these* is plural. In Italian, however, which word you use depends on both number and gender because there are masculine and feminine nouns. The demonstrative adjective **questo** (*kwehs-toh*) has four forms which agree with the noun that follows (or that it's substituting, in which case it becomes a pronoun): **questo**, **questa**, **questi**, **queste** (*kwehs-toh*, *kwehs-tah*, *kwehs-tee*, *kwehs-teh*). Consider these examples:

- ✓ **Questa è la sua valigia?** (*kwehs-tah eh lah sooh-ah vah-lee-jah*) (*Is this your suitcase?*)
- ✓ **No, le mie sono queste.** (*noh leh mee-eh soh-noh kwehs-teh*) (*No, these are mine.*)

In the preceding examples, you see the feminine version of singular and plural (**questa** and **queste**, respectively). The following shows the masculine version of singular and plural (**questo** and **questi**):

- ✓ **Signore, questo messaggio è per lei.** (*see-nyoh-reh kwehs-toh mehs-sahj-joh eh pehr ley*) (*Sir, this message is for you.*)
- ✓ **Questi spaghetti sono ottimi!** (*kwehs-tee spah-geht-tee soh-noh oht-tee-mee*) (*This spaghetti is great! A literal translation: "these spaghetti are great!" You get the point.*)

Yours, mine, and ours: Possessive pronouns



Possessive pronouns (such as my, your, his) indicate possession of something (the noun). In Italian, these words vary according to the gender of the item they refer to. The possessive pronoun must agree in number and gender with the possessed thing or person. Unlike in English, in Italian you almost always put the definite article in front of the possessive determiner. The following table shows the singular and plural definite articles for each gender (but you'll see that you only need four of these to form possessive adjectives and pronouns):

<i>Gender</i>	<i>Number</i>	<i>Article</i>
Feminine	Singular	la/l'
Feminine	Plural	le
Masculine	Singular	il/l'/lo
Masculine	Plural	i/gli

When you want to show that something belongs to you and that something is a feminine noun, the possessive **mia** ends in a — such as **la mia valigia** (lah mee-ah vah-lee-jah) (*my suitcase*). When you refer to a masculine word, the possessive ends in o, as in **il mio letto** (eel mee-oh leht-toh) (*my bed*).

So, these pronouns get their form from the possessor — **il mio** (eel mee-oh) (*mine*), **il tuo** (eel too-oh) (*yours*), and so on — but their number and gender from the thing possessed. For example, in **è la mia chiave** (eh lah mee-ah kyah-veh) (*it's my key*), **la chiave** is singular and feminine and is, therefore, replaced by the possessive pronoun **mia**. Table 15-2 lists possessive pronouns and their articles.

Table 15-2 Possessive Pronouns

Possessive Pronoun	Singular Masculine	Singular Feminine	Plural Masculine	Plural Feminine	Pronunciation
my/mine	il mio	la mia	i miei	le mie	eel mee-oh/lah mee-ah/ee myei/leh mee-eh
your/yours	il tuo	la tua	i tuoi	le tue	eel tooh-oh/lah tooh-ah/ee twoi/leh tooh eh
yours (formal)	il suo	la sua	i suoi	le sue	eel sooh-oh/lah sooh-ah/ee swoi/leh sooh-eh
his/her/hers	il suo	la sua	i suoi	le sue	eel sooh-oh/lah sooh-ah/ee swoi/leh sooh-eh
our/ours	il nostro	la nostra	i nostri	le nostre	eel nohs-troh/lah nohs-trah/ee nohs-tree/leh nohs-treh
your/yours (formal and informal)	il vostro	la vostra	i vostri	le vostre	eel vohs-troh/lah vohs-trah/ee vohs-tree/leh vohs-treh
their/theirs	il loro	la loro	i loro	le loro	eel/lah/ee/leh loh-roh

Following are some practical examples using possessive adjectives and pronouns:

- ✓ **È grande la vostra stanza?** (eh grahn-deh lah vohs-trah stahn-zah) (*Is your room big?*) (plural)
- ✓ **Dov'è il tuo albergo?** (doh-veh eel tooh-oh ahl-behr-goh) (*Where is your hotel?*)
- ✓ **Ecco i vostri documenti.** (ehk-koh ee vohs-tree doh-kooh-mehn-tee) (*Here are your documents.*) (plural)
- ✓ **Questa è la sua chiave.** (kwehs-tah eh lah sooh-ah kyah-veh) (*This is your [formal] key.*) and also (*This is his/her key.*)
- ✓ **La mia camera è molto tranquilla.** (lah mee-ah kah-meh-rah eh mohl-toh trahn-kweel-lah) (*My room is very quiet.*)
- ✓ **Anche la nostra. E la tua?** (ahn-keh lah nohs-trah eh lah tooh-ah) (*Ours, too. And yours [singular]?*)

Talkin' the Talk

You frequently use possessive pronouns and adjectives, so you need to know how to use them. The following dialogue takes place between members of a family who are trying to sort out who has whose luggage.

Mamma: **Dove sono i vostri bagagli?**
doh-veh soh-noh lee vohs-treh bah-gahl-yee
Where are your [plural] bags?

Michela: **Il mio è questo.**
eel mee-oh eh kwehs-toh
Mine is this one.

Mamma: **E il tuo, Carla?**
eh eel tooh-oh kahr-lah
And yours, Carla?

Carla: **Lo porta Giulio.**
loh pohr-tah jooh-lee-oh
Giulio is carrying it.

- Mamma: **No, Giulio porta il suo.**
 noh *jooh-lee-oh pohr-tah eel sooh-oh*
 No, Giulio is carrying his.
- Carla: **Giulio, hai il mio bagaglio?**
jooh-lee-oh ahy eel mee-oh bah-gahl-yoh
 Giulio, do you have my bag?
- Giulio: **No, questi sono miei!**
noh kwehs-tee soh-noh ee myei
 No, these are mine!
- Carla: **Sei sicuro?**
say see-kooh-roh
 Are you sure?
- Giulio: **Com'è la tua valigia?**
koh-meh lah tooh-ah vah-lee-jah
 What does your suitcase look like?
- Carla: **È rossa.**
eh rohs-sah
 It's red.

Words to Know

<i>bagaglio</i> [m]	<i>bah-gah-lyoh</i>	<i>baggage</i>
<i>cameriera</i> [f]	<i>kah-meh-ryeh-rah</i>	<i>chambermaid, waitress</i>
<i>garage</i> [m]	<i>gah-rahj</i>	<i>car park, garage</i>
<i>messaggio</i> [m]	<i>mehs-sahj-joh</i>	<i>message</i>
<i>portiere</i> [m]	<i>pohr-tyeh-reh</i>	<i>doorman</i>
<i>valigia</i> [f]	<i>vah-lee-jah</i>	<i>suitcase</i>

Bending Others to Your Will: Imperatives



When your boss says **Venga nel mio ufficio!** (*vehn-gah nehl mee-oh oohf-fee-choh*) (*Come in my office!*) or you say to your children **Mettete in ordine le vostre camere!** (*meht-teh-teh een ohr-dee-neh leh vohs-treh kah-meh-reh*) (*Clean up your rooms!*), you use an imperative — a request, a demand, or an invitation for someone to do something. Four forms of imperatives exist:

- ✓ **Singular informal:** You speak (and command) informally to a person you know — for example, a friend or a family member.

In Italian, if a verb ends in -are, as in **mandare** (*mahn-dah-reh*) (*to send*), the informal imperative form ends in -a, as in **Manda!** (*mahn-dah*) (*Send!*). If a verb ends in -ere or -ire, as in **prendere** (*prehn-deh-reh*) (*to take*) and **finire** (*fee-nee-reh*) (*to finish*), the informal imperative ends in -i, as in **Prendi!** (*prehn-dee*) (*Take!*) and **Finisci!** (*fee-nee-shee*) (*Finish!*).

- ✓ **Singular formal:** You formally command a person you don't know well. The command form is different when you speak to a person formally. If the verb ends in -are, as in **mandare**, the formal imperative form ends in -i, as in **Mandi!** (*mahn-dee*) (*Send!*). If the verb ends in -ere or -ire, as in **prendere**, **aprire**, and **finire**, the formal imperative ends in -a, as in **Prenda!** (*prehn-dah*) (*Take!*), **Apra!**, and **Finisca!** (*fee-nees-kah*) (*Finish!*). As you can see, you simply switch the informal and formal endings.

- ✓ **Plural:** You command/speak to more than one person.

You use the plural imperative form for two or more people, even if you would address the separate individuals formally. Verbs that end in -are, like **mandare**, have the plural imperative ending -ate, as in **Mandate!** (*mahn-dah-teh*) (*Send!*). Verbs that end in -ere change their endings to -ete, as in **Prendete!** (*prehn-deh-teh*) (*Take!*). Verbs that end in -ire change their endings to -ite, as in **Finite!** (*fee-nee-teh*) (*Finish!*)

- ✓ **Plural, including yourself:** You include yourself by saying, for example, "Let's go!"

Good news! All verbs, including our examples **mandare**, **prendere**, **aprire**, and **finire**, change their endings to the imperative ending -iamo — namely, **Mandiamo!** (*mahn-dee-ah-moh . . .* (*Let's send!*)), **Prendiamo!** (*prehn-dee-ah-moh*) (*Let's take/have . . .*!), **Apriamo!** (*ah-pree-ah-moh*) (*Let's open . . .*) and **Finiamo!** (*fee-nyah-moh*) (*Let's finish!*). That's pretty easy, isn't it?

In case you're still struggling to grasp this scheme, Table 15-3 gives a quick overview.

**Table 15-3****Imperative Verb Endings**

Form	-are Verb Ending	-ere Verb Ending	-ire Verb Ending
Informal singular	-a	-i	-i
Formal singular	-i	-a	-a
Plural	-ate	-ete	-ite
We form	-iamo	-iamo	-iamo

We can't let you get away without looking at some common exceptions to the preceding rules. Table 15-4 shows some of these exceptions. They are exceptions to the regular pattern.

Table 15-4**Exceptional Imperatives**

Informal Singular	Formal Singular	Translation
Abbi pazienza! (ahb-bee pah-tsee-ehn-tsah)	Abbia pazienza! (ahb-bee-ah pah-tsee-ehn-tsah)	<i>Be patient!</i> (Literally, have patience)
Da! (dah)	Dia! (dee-ah)	<i>Give!</i>
Di' qualcosa! (dee kwahl-koh-zah)	Dica qualcosa! (dee-kah kwahl-koh-zah)	<i>Say something!</i>
Fa' qualcosa! (fah kwahl-koh-zah)	Faccia qualcosa! (fahch-chah kwahl-koh-zah)	<i>Do something!</i>
Sii buono! (see bwoh-noh)	Sia buono! (see-ah bwoh-noh)	<i>Be good!</i>
Sta' fermo! (stah fehr-moh)	Stia fermo! (stee-ah fehr-moh)	<i>Be still!</i>
Stai tranquillo! (stai trahn-kweel-loh)	Stia tranquillo (stee-ah trahn-kweel-loh)	<i>Be calm! Don't worry!</i>
Va via! (vah vee-ah)	Vada via! (vah-dah vee-ah)	<i>Go away!</i>
Vieni qua! (vyeh-nee kwah)	Venga qua! (vehn-gah kwah)	<i>Come here!</i>

We haven't even gotten to the negative commands (and if you want more on commands see *Italian Verbs For Dummies*), but here are two phrases you may hear in Italy:

Non ti preoccupare! (nohn tee preh-ohk-kooh-pah-reh) (*Don't worry!*) (informal)

Non si preoccupi! (nohn see preh-ohk-kooh-pee) (*Don't worry!*) (formal)



Fun & Games

Unscramble the following words below and then match them with their definitions in the following column. See Appendix D for the answer key.

gorblea
oinpnsee
rcaaem
asznat
glevia
aneoepozirtn
tnloaireimma
culla
cniapsi
aehicv
ttelo
ricmeeaer
bgoan
ggbalaoi

bed
luggage
suitcases
room
bathroom
room
small hotel
crib
pool
key
room with a large bed
for two
reservation
waiter

Chapter 16

Handling Emergencies

In This Chapter

- Asking for help
- Talking to doctors
- Visiting the dentist
- Dealing with car troubles
- Alerting the police to an emergency
- Protecting your legal rights

Asking for help is never fun, because you only need help when you're in a jam. For the purposes of this chapter, think about what unfortunate things could happen to you and in what difficulties you may find yourself. Some of these situations are minor, and others are much more serious. We give you the language tools you need to communicate your woes to the people who can help.

Here is a general sampling of asking-for-help sentences. The first two are important for real emergencies:

- ✓ **Aiuto!** (ah-yooh-toh) (*Help!*)
- ✓ **Aiutami!** (ah-yooh-tah-mee) (*Help me!*) (Informal)
- ✓ **Mi aiuti, per favore.** (mee ah-yooh-tee pehr fah-voh-reh) (*Help me, please.*) (Formal)
- ✓ **Chiamate la polizia!** (kyah-mah-teh lah poh-lee-tsee-ah) (*Call the police!*)
- ✓ **Ho bisogno di un medico.** (oh bee-zoh-nyoh dee oohn meh-dee-koh) (*I need a doctor.*)
- ✓ **Dov'è il pronto soccorso?** (doh-veh eel prohn-toh sohk-kohr-soh) (*Where's the emergency room?*)
- ✓ **Chiamate un'ambulanza!** (kyah-mah-teh ooh-nahm-booh-lahn-tsah) (*Call an ambulance!*)



As you may have noticed, you conjugate sentences directed at a group of people in the plural **voi** form (**chiamate**). In an emergency situation, you can use this with anyone who may be listening to you.

In some situations, you must ask for a competent authority who speaks English. Do so by saying:

- ✓ **Mi scusi, parla inglese?** (mee skooh-zee pahr-lah een-gleh-zeh) (*Excuse me, do you speak English?*)
- ✓ **C'è un medico che parli inglese?** (cheh oohn meh-dee-koh keh pahr-lee een-gleh-zeh) (*Is there a doctor who speaks English?*)
- ✓ **Dove posso trovare un avvocato che parli inglese?** (doh-veh pohs-soh troh-vah-reh oohn ahv-voh-kah-toh keh pahr-lee een-gleh-zeh) (*Where can I find a lawyer who speaks English?*)

If you can't find a professional who speaks English, you may be able to find **un interprete** (oohn een-tehr-preh-teh) (*an interpreter*) to help you.

Talking to Doctors

When you're in **l'ospedale** (lohs-peh-dah-leh) (the hospital) or at **il medico** (eel meh-dee-koh) (the doctor), you must explain where you hurt or what the problem is. This task isn't always easy, because pointing to a spot may not be sufficient. But don't worry, we won't leave you in the lurch. This section shows you, among other things, how to refer to your body parts in Italian (in Table 16-1) and what to say in a medical emergency.

Table 16-1 Basic Body Parts

<i>Italian</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>	<i>Translation</i>
il braccio	eel brahch-choh	<i>the arm</i>
il collo	eel kohl-loh	<i>the neck</i>
la gamba	lah gahm-bah	<i>the leg</i>
la mano	lah mah-noh	<i>the hand</i>
l'occhio	lohk-kyoh	<i>the eye</i>
la pancia	lah pahn-chah	<i>the belly</i>
il petto	eel peht-toh	<i>the chest</i>
il piede	eel pyeh-deh	<i>the foot</i>
lo stomaco	loh stoh-mah-koh	<i>the stomach</i>
la testa	lah tehs-tah	<i>the head</i>

Describing what ails you

The following phrases indicate how to say something hurts. There are two ways to say this: The first takes the construction **fare male** (*fah-reh mah-leh*) (*to hurt*). Use **fa** (*fah*) for body parts in the singular that hurt.

Mi fa male la gamba. (mee fah *mah-leh lah gahm-bah*). (*My leg hurts.*)

Mi fa male lo stomaco. (mee fah *mah-leh loh stoh-mah-koh*) (*My stomach hurts.*)

Mi fa male tutto il corpo. (mee fah *mah-leh tooht-toh eel kohr-poh*)
(*My whole body aches.*)

Use **fanno** (*fahn-noh*) for things in the plural that hurt.

Mi fanno male gli occhi. (mee *fahn-noh mah-leh lyee ohk-kee*) (*My eyes hurt.*)

The other way to say something hurts is **avere mal di** (*ah-veh-reh mahl dee*), but you need to conjugate the verb **avere** (*ah-veh-reh*) (*to have*), depending on who has the pain. Here are some examples:

Ho mal di schiena. (oh mahl dee *skyeh-nah*) (*I have a backache.*)

Ho mal di testa. (oh mahl dee *tehs-tah*) (*I have a headache.*)

Mia figlia ha mal di denti. (mee-ah *feel-yah ah mahl dee dehn-tee*)
(*My daughter has a toothache.*)

There are still other ways to describe what ails you and explain your symptoms.

- ✓ **Mi sono rotto/rotta una gamba.** (mee *soh-noh roht-toh/rot-tah ooh-nah gahm-bah*) (*I broke my leg.*) (Use the feminine participle if you are a woman.)
- ✓ **Ho la gola arrossata.** (oh *lah goh-lah ahr-rohs-sah-tah*) (*I have a sore throat.*)
- ✓ **Ho la pelle irritata.** (oh *lah pehl-leh eer-ee-tah-tah*) (*My skin is irritated.*)
- ✓ **Mi sono storto/storta il piede/la caviglia.** (mee *soh-noh stohr-toh/stohr-tah eel pyeh-deh/lah cah-veel-yah*) (*I sprained my foot/ankle.*)
- ✓ **Ho disturbi al cuore.** (oh *dees-toohr-bee ahl kwoh-reh*) (*I have heart problems.*)
- ✓ **Mi bruciano gli occhi.** (mee *brooh-chah-noh lyee ohk-kee*) (*My eyes burn.*)
- ✓ **Mi sono slogata la spalla.** (mee *soh-noh zloh-gah-tah lah spahl-lah*)
(*I've dislocated my shoulder.*)
- ✓ **Mi sono fatta/o male alla mano.** (mee *soh-noh faht-tah/toh mah-leh ahl-lah mah-noh*). (*I've hurt my hand.*)

- ✓ **Sono caduta/o.** (soh-noh cah-dooh-tah/toh) (*I fell.*)
- ✓ **Mia figlia ha questa brutta orticaria.** (mee-ah feel-yah ah qwehs-tah brooh-tah ohr-tee-kahr-ee-ah) (*My daughter has this terrible rash.*)
- ✓ **Mio figlio ha la febbre a 40.** (mee-oh fee-lyoh ah lah fehb-breh ah qwah-rahn-tah) (*My son's temperature is 40 degrees.*)

When you want to indicate the left or right body part, you must know that body part's gender. For a masculine part, you say **destro** (dehs-troh) (right) and **sinistro** (see-nees-troh) (left), whereas for a feminine part you change the ending: **destra** (dehs-trah) and **sinistra** (see-nees-trah).



Another little hurdle is the plural form. Where body parts are concerned, a lot of irregular plurals exist. Table 16-2 shows you some of the most frequent irregular plural forms.

Table 16-2

Body Parts Plurals

<i>Singular (Pronunciation)</i>	<i>Plural (Pronunciation)</i>	<i>Translation</i>
il braccio (eel brahch-choh)	le braccia (leh brahch-chah)	arm(s)
il dito (eel dee-toh)	le dita (leh dee-tah)	finger(s)
il dito del piede (eel dee-toh dehl pyeh-deh)	le dita del piede (le dee-tah dehl pyeh-deh)	toe(s)
il labbro (eel lahb-broh)	le labbra (leh lahb-brah)	lip(s)
il ginocchio (eel jee-nohk-kyoh)	le ginocchia (leh jee-nohk-kyah)	knee(s)
la mano (lah mah-noh)	le mani (leh mah-nee)	hand(s)
l'orecchio (loh-rehk-kyoh)	le orecchie (leh oh-rehk-kyeh)	ear(s)
l'osso (lohs-soh)	le ossa (leh ohs-sah)	bone(s)

Generally speaking, if you need to tell someone that you're not feeling well, you can always say **mi sento male** (mee sehn-toh mah-leh) (*I feel sick*), which derives from the verb **sentirsi male** (sehn-teer-see mah-leh) (*to feel sick*). You could also say **non mi sento bene** (nohn mee sehn-toh beh-neh) (*I don't feel well*), which comes from **non sentirsi bene** (nohn sehn-teer-see beh-neh) (*to not feel well*). The following shows you the entire conjugation of this common and typical reflexive verb. For more on reflexive verbs, see Chapters 11 and 17.

<i>Conjugation</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>	<i>English</i>
mi sento male	mee sehn-toh mah-leh	<i>I feel sick.</i>
ti senti male	tee sehn-tee mah-leh	<i>You feel sick.</i>
si sente male	see sehn-teh mah-leh	<i>He/she feels sick.</i>
ci sentiamo male	chee sehn-tee-ah-moh mah-leh	<i>We feel sick.</i>
vi sentite male	vee sehn-tee-teh mah-leh	<i>You feel sick.</i>
si sentono male	see sehn-toh-noh mah-leh	<i>They feel sick.</i>



You may have noticed that **fa male** is preceded by **mi** (mee) (*me*). This word changes according to the speaker and the person who feels the pain. A doctor may ask you **Cosa le fa male?** (*koh-zah leh fah mah-leh*) (*What hurts you?*). **Le** is the indirect object pronoun for the formal “you.”

Talkin’ the Talk



Gloria goes to the doctor because her leg is swollen. Without further examination, however, the doctor can’t determine the problem.

Gloria: **Mi fa molto male questa gamba.**
 mee fah mohl-toh mah-leh kwehs-tah gahm-bah
 This leg hurts very much.

Doctor: **Vedo che è gonfia.**
 veh-doh keh eh gohn-fee-ah
 Yes, I can see it’s swollen.

Gloria: **Devo andare all’ospedale?**
 deh-voh ahn-dah-reh ahl-lohs-peh-dah-leh
 Do I have to go to the hospital?

Doctor: **Sì, bisogna fare le lastre.**
 see bee-zoh-nyah fah-reh le lahs-treh
 Yes, you need to have some X-rays.

Words to Know

aiuto [m]	ah-yoo <u>h</u> -tah	help
pronto soccorso	prohn-toh sohk-koh <u>r</u> -soh	emergency room
un'ambulanza	oohn ahm-booh-lahn-zah	an ambulance
chiamate	kyah-mah-teh	call
fare male	fah-reh mah-leh	to hurt
ospedale [m]	ohs-peh-dah-leh	hospital
lastre [f/pl]	lahs-treh	X-rays
sinistra/o [f/m]	see-nees-trah/troh	left
gonfia/o [f/m]	gohn-fee-ah/oh	swollen
muscolo [m]	moohs-koh-loh	muscle
tendine [m]	tehn-dee-neh	tendon
mi gira la testa	mee gee-rah lah tehs-tah	I'm dizzy
mi sento svenire	mee-sehn-toh zveh-nee-reh	I'm about to faint
avere mal di	ah-veh-reh mahl dee	to have a _____ache
stomaco	stoh-mah-koh	stomach
febbre	fehb-bre <u>h</u>	fever

Understanding professional medical vocabulary

Various professional people — not all of them doctors — can offer you medical help. They include:

✓ **il medico** (eel meh-dee-koh) (*doctor*, both female and male)

✓ **il dottore** (eel doht-toh-reh) (*doctor*, both female and male)

The female form of this noun, **la dottoressa** (lah doht-toh-rehs-sah), is less common.

You can use either of these words for “doctor.”

✓ **la/lo specialista** [f/m] (lah/loh speh-chah-lees-tah) (*specialist*)

✓ **la/il dentista** [f/m] (lah/eel dehn-tees-tah) (*dentist*)

✓ **il chirurgo** [f/m] (eel kee-roohr-goh) (*the surgeon*)

✓ **l'infermiera** (leen-fehr-myeh-rah) (*female nurse*)

✓ **l'infermiere** (leen-fehr-myeh-reh) (*male nurse*)

Here's a question that you may need to ask in a doctor's office, with typical replies:

✓ **Devo prendere qualcosa?** (deh-voh prehn-deh-reh kwahl-koh-zah)
(*Do I have to take anything?*)

No, si riposi e beva molta acqua. (noh see ree-poh-zee eh beh-vah
mohl-tah ah-kwah) (*No, rest and drink a lot of water.*)

Ecco la ricetta. (ehk-koh lah ree-cheht-tah) (*Here is your prescription.*)

Getting what you need at the pharmacy

If you need **una medicina** (ooh-nah meh-dee-chee-nah) (*a medicine*) you will probably look for the closest **farmacia** (fahr-mah-chee-ah) (*pharmacy*). Usual pharmacy hours are from 8:30 a.m. to 8:00 p.m., generally with a lunch break from 1:00 to 4:00 p.m. But there is always a pharmacy open in case of an emergency! You can find the address and phone number of the open pharmacy (**farmacia di turno**) (fahr-mah-chee-ah dee toohr-noh) written on all pharmacy doors.



Italy is one of those places where pharmacists still give medical advice: These are true pharmacies without all of the non-drug items for sale like you find in your typical big drug store in the United States, where you can get everything from canned food to beach chairs. Furthermore, you generally don't walk in, browse, and help yourself to even simple things like aspirin. This is the same for many other types of stores in Italy, the **profumeria** (proh-fooh-men *ree-ah*) (*toiletries shop*), shoe stores, and small clothing shops in particular. Many items are kept behind the counter. So, if you or a loved one has a slight ailment and it's not an emergency, you can go into the pharmacy for help.

Talkin' the Talk

Anna has just walked into the **farmacia** with her six-year-old daughter, Maria, who was stung by about 100 mosquitoes the night before.

Farmacista: **Prego. Mi dica.**
preh-goh mee dee-kah
 Hello. How can I help you?

Anna: **Mia figlia è stata punta dalle zanzare ieri notte.**
mee-ah fee-lyah eh stah-tah poohn-tah dahl-leh
dsan-zah-reh yeh-ree noht-teh
 My daughter was stung by some mosquitoes last night.

Farmacista: **Sì questo lo vedo.**
see qwehs-toh loh veh-doh
 Yes, I can see that.

Le do una pomata contro il prurito.
leh doh ooh-nah poh-mah-tah kohn-troh eel
prooh-ree-toh
 I'll give you an anti-itch cream.

Anna: **Ha un prodotto anti-zanzara per i bambini?**
ah oohn proh-doht-toh ahn-tee-dsahn-zah-rah pehr
ee bahm-bee-nee
 Do you have something safe for children to keep the mosquitoes away?

Farmacista: **Si, ecco uno spray anti-zanzara molto sicuro per i bambini.**

see ehk-koh ooh-noh sprahy ahn-tee-dsahn-zah-rah mol-toh see-kooh-roh pehr ee bahm-bee-nee
Yes. Here is a mosquito repellent that is very safe for children.

Braving the dentist

Of course, you might just need some emergency dental work while you're in Italy. The first thing to ask the concierge at your hotel, the pharmacist, or the friendly **barista** where you've been having breakfast every morning is "**Scusi, mi puo consigliare un dentista di fiducia?**" (skooh-zee mee pwoh kohn-seel-yah-reh oohn dehn-tees-tah dee fee-dooh-chah) (*Excuse me, would please recommend a good dentist?*)

Talkin' the Talk

Giancarlo is at the dentist's with a terrible toothache.

Giancarlo: **Dottore, ho un terribile dolore al molare.**
doht-toh-reh oh oohn tehr-ree-bee-leh doh-/oh-reh
ahl moh-/lah-reh
Doctor, I have a terrible pain in my molar.

Dentist: **Vediamo. Purtroppo è infetto.**
veh-dyah-moh poohr-trohp-poh eh een-feht-toh
Let's see. Unfortunately, it's infected.

Non posso fare altro che darle un antibiotico.
nohn pohs-soh fah-reh ahl-troh keh dahr-leh oohn
ahn-tee-bee-oh-tee-koh
I can't do anything for you but give you an antibiotic.

Lo prenda due volte al giorno.
loh prehn-dah dooh-eh vohl-teh ahl johr-noh
Take it twice a day.

Reporting an Accident to the Police

There are other types of emergencies in addition to medical ones. You might have to call the police to report something you've witnessed.

Talkin' the Talk



Elena has just seen an elderly woman on her bicycle hit by a scooter. She calls the police.

Officer: **Polizia.**
poh-lee-tsee-ah
Police.

Elena: **C'è stato un incidente.**
cheh stah-toh oohn een-chee-dehn-teh
There's been an accident!

Officer: **Dove?**
doh-veh
Where?

Elena: **Piazza Mattei.**
pyaht-tsah maht-tey
Piazza Mattei.

Officer: **Ci sono feriti?**
chee soh-noh fe-ree-tee
Is anyone injured?

Elena: **C'è una persona ferita incosciente.**
cheh ooh-na pehr-soh-nah fehr-ee-tah
in-ko-shehn-teh
Someone is injured and unconscious.

Officer: **Mandiamo subito un'ambulanza.**
mahn-dee-ah-moh sooh-bee-toh
ooh-nahm-booh-lahn-tsah
We'll send an ambulance right away.



If you are in Italy and you have an emergency, call 113, the Italian national police, who will also send you an ambulance if you need one. This number is valid for all of Italy.

Words to Know

ambulanza [f]	ahm-booh-lahn-tsah	ambulance
Che è successo?	keh eh sooh-chehs-soh	What happened?
emergenza [f]	eh-mehr-jehn-tsah	emergency
incidente [m]	in-chee-dehn-teh	accident
le lenti a contatto	leh lenhn-tee ah kohn-taht-toh	contact lenses
soluzione [f]	soh-loohts-yoh-neh	solution
ferito [m]	feh-ree-toh	injured (person)
pomata [f]	poh-mah-tah	cream
ricetta [f]	ree-cheht-tah	prescription

I've Been Robbed! Knowing What to Do and Say When the Police Arrive

We hope you are never the target of a robbery. If you are, however, we want you to be prepared with the important phrases you will need when the police arrive.

- ✓ **Sono stata/o derubata/o.** (soh-noh stah-tah/toh deh-rooh-bah-tah/toh) (*I've been robbed.*) [f/m]
- ✓ **C'è stato un furto nel mio appartamento.** (cheh stah-toh oohn foohr-toh nehl mee-oh ahp-pahr-tah-mehn-toh) (*There was a burglary in my apartment.*)

- ✓ **Sono entrati dei ladri in casa nostra.** (soh-noh ehn-trah-tee dey lah-dree een kah-sah nohs-trah) (*Thieves broke into our house.*)
- ✓ **Mi hanno rubato la macchina.** (mee ahn-noh rooh-bah-toh lah mah-kee-nah) (*My car has been stolen.*)
- ✓ **Mi hanno scippata.** (mee ahn-noh sheep-pah-tah) (*My handbag was snatched.*)

Talkin' the Talk

A moped driver just stole Anna's **borsa** (bohr-sah) (*handbag*). Distraught, she calls 113 for the police to **denunciare** (deh-noohn-chah-reh) (*to report*) **il furto** (eel foohr-toh) (*the theft*).

- Officer: **Polizia.**
poh-lee-tsee-ah
Police.
- Anna: **Mi hanno appena scippata!**
mee ahn-noh ahp-peh-nah sheep-pah-tah
They just snatched my handbag!
- Officer: **Si calmi e venga in questura.**
see kahl-mee eh vahn-gah een kwehs-tooh-rah
Calm down and come to police headquarters.
- Anna: **È stato un uomo in motorino.**
eh stah-toh oohn woh-moh een moh-toh-ree-noh
It was a man on a moped.
- Officer: **Ho capito, ma deve venire qui.**
oh kah-pee-toh mah deh-veh veh-nee-reh kwee
I got it, but you have to come here.
- Anna: **Dov'è la questura?**
doh-veh lah kwehs-tooh-rah
Where is police headquarters?
- Officer: **Dietro la posta centrale.**
dee-eh-troh lah pohs-tah chehn-trah-leh
Behind the main post office.
- Anna: **Vengo subito.**
vehn-goh sooh-bee-toh
I'm coming at once.

Words to Know

borsa [f]	<u>bohr</u> -sah	handbag
furto [m]	<u>foohr</u> -toh	theft
denunciare	<u>deh-noohn</u> - <u>chah</u> -reh	to report
motorino [m]	<u>moh-toh</u> - <u>ree</u> -noh	moped
questura [f]	<u>kwehs</u> - <u>tooh</u> -rah	police headquarters
scippare	<u>sheep</u> - <u>pah</u> -reh	to snatch a handbag
scippo [m]	<u>sheep</u> -poh	theft of a handbag

When you have to report someone and describe the thief, you must know some essential words, such as hair color, height, and so on. Many of these adjectives will also come in handy when describing other people — friends, family members, classmates — not just thieves! You can form descriptive sentences like this:

La persona era . . . (lah pehr-soh-nah eh-rah) (*The person was . . .*):

- ✓ **alta** (ahl-tah) (*tall*)
- ✓ **bassa** (bahs-sah) (*short*)
- ✓ **di media statura** (dee meh-dee-ah stah-tooh-rah) (*of medium build*)
- ✓ **grassa** (grahs-sah) (*fat*)
- ✓ **magra** (mah-grah) (*thin*)

Note: The preceding adjectives end in -a because they refer to the noun **la persona**, which is feminine.

I capelli erano . . . (ee kah-pehl-lee eh-rah-noh) (*The hair was . . .*)

- ✓ **castani** (kahs-tah-nee) (*brown*)
- ✓ **biondi** (byohn-dee) (*blond*)

- ✓ **neri** (*neh-ree*) (*black*)
- ✓ **rossi** (*rohs-see*) (*red*)
- ✓ **scuri** (*skooh-ree*) (*dark*)
- ✓ **chiari** (*kyah-ree*) (*fair*)
- ✓ **lisci** (*lee-shee*) (*straight*)
- ✓ **ondulati** (*ohn-dooh-lah-tee*) (*wavy*)
- ✓ **ricci** (*reech-chee*) (*curly*)
- ✓ **corti** (*kohr-tee*) (*short*)
- ✓ **lunghi** (*loohn-gee*) (*long*)

Aveva gli occhi . . . (*ah-veh-vah lyee ohk-kee*) (*His/Her eyes were . . .*)

- ✓ **azzurri** (*ahdz-zooth-ree*) (*blue*)
- ✓ **grigi** (*gree-jee*) (*gray*)
- ✓ **marroni** (*mahr-roh-nee*) (*brown*)
- ✓ **neri** (*neh-ree*) (*black; dark*)
- ✓ **verdi** (*vehr-dee*) (*green*)

Era . . . (*eh-rah*) (*He/she was . . .*)

- ✓ **calvo** (*kah-l-voh*) (*bald*)
- ✓ **rasato** (*rah-zah-toh*) (*clean-shaven*)

Aveva . . . (*ah-veh-vah*) (*He/She had . . .*)

- ✓ **la barba** (*lah bahr-bah*) (*a beard*)
- ✓ **i baffi** (*ee bahf-fee*) (*a moustache*)
- ✓ **la bocca larga** (*lah bohk-kah lahr-gah*) (*a wide mouth*)
- ✓ **la bocca stretta** (*lah bohk-kah streht-tah*) (*thin lips*)
- ✓ **la bocca carnosa** (*lah bohk-kah kahr-noh-zah*) (*a plump mouth*)
- ✓ **il naso lungo** (*eel nah-zoh loohn-go*) (*a long nose*)
- ✓ **il naso corto** (*eel nah-zoh kohr-toh*) (*a short nose*)

Dealing with Car Trouble

You don't have to be involved in a car crash to experience car trouble. Perhaps some sort of mechanical problem makes your car break down. In such cases you need to call an auto mechanic who can help you out of this situation.

Talkin' the Talk

Raffaella's car has broken down. She calls roadside assistance from her cell phone.

Mechanic: **Pronto.**
prohn-toh
Hello.

Raffaella: **Pronto, ho bisogno d'aiuto!**
prohn-toh oh bee-zoh-nyoh dah-yooh-toh
Hello, I need help!

Mechanic: **Che succede?**
keh soohch-cheh-deh
What's wrong?

Raffaella: **Mi si è fermata la macchina.**
mee see eh fehr-mah-tah lah mahk-kee-nah
My car broke down.

Mechanic: **Dove si trova?**
doh-veh see troh-vah
Where are you?

Raffaella: **Sull'autostrada A 1 prima dell'uscita Firenze Nord.**
soohl au-to-strah-dah ah ooh-noh pree-mah dehl-looh-shee-tah fee-rehn-tseh nohrd
On the highway A 1 before the Florence North exit.

Mechanic: **Bene. Mando un carro attrezzi.**
beh-neh mahn-doh oohn cahr-roh aht-treht-tsee
Okay. I'll send a tow truck.

Raffaella: **Ci vorrà molto?**
 chee vohr-rah mohl-toh
 Will it take a long time?

Mechanic: **Dipende dal traffico. Al massimo mezz'ora.**
 dee-pehn-deh dahl trahf-fee-koh ahl mahs-see-moh
 medz-oh-rah
 It depends on the traffic. Half hour at the most.

Raffaella: **Venite il più presto possibile per favore!**
 veh-nee-teh eel pyooh prehs-toh pohs-see-bee-leh
 pehr fah-voh-reh
 Come as soon as possible please!

Words to Know

fermare	fehr-mah-reh	to stop
macchina [f]	mahk-kee-nah	car
il più presto possibile	eel pyooh prehs-toh pohs-see-bee-leh	as soon as possible
soccorso stradale [m]	sohk-kohr-soh strah-dah-leh	roadside assistance
corsia di emergenza	kohr-see-ah dee eh-mehr-jehn-za	emergency lane
traffico [m]	trahf-fee-koh	traffic
meccanico [m]	mehk-kah-nee-koh	mechanic
una gomma a terra	ooh-nah gohm-mah ah tehr-rah	a flat tire
carro attrezzi [m]	kahr-roh aht-treht-tslee	tow truck

When You Need a Lawyer: Protecting Your Rights

Many unpleasant moments in life require that you seek the help of an authorized person. Often, this person is a lawyer who can help you in complicated situations. Therefore, knowing how to contact a lawyer is rather important. You can use the following general questions and sentences to request legal help in Italian.

- ✓ **Mi serve l'aiuto di un avvocato.** (mee sehr-veh lah-yooh-toh dee oohn ahv-voh-kah-toh) (*I need the help of a lawyer.*)
- ✓ **Ho bisogno di assistenza legale.** (oh bee-zoh-nyoh dee ahs-sees-tehn-tsah leh-gah-leh) (*I need legal assistance.*)
- ✓ **Vorrei consultare il mio avvocato.** (vohr-rey kohn-soohl-tah-reh eel mee-oh ahv-voh-kah-toh) (*I'd like to consult my lawyer.*)
- ✓ **Chiamate il mio avvocato, per favore.** (kyah-mah-teh eel mee-oh ahv-voh-kah-toh pehr fah-voh-reh) (*Call my lawyer, please.*)

After you find a lawyer, you can speak to him or her about your situation. Here are some examples of what you may need to say:

- ✓ **Sono stato truffato/a.** (soh-noh stah-toh troohf-fah-toh/tah) (*I was cheated.*)
- ✓ **Voglio denunciare un furto.** (Voh-lyoh deh-noohn-chah-reh oohn foohr-toh) (*I want to report a theft.*)
- ✓ **Devo stipulare un contratto.** (deh-voh stee-pooh-lah-reh oohn kohn-traht-toh) (*I have to negotiate a contract.*)
- ✓ **Ho avuto un incidente stradale.** (oh ah-vooh-toh oohn een-chee-dehn-teh strah-dah-leh) (*I've had a traffic accident.*)
- ✓ **Voglio che mi vengano risarciti i danni.** (voh-lyoh keh mee vahn-gah-noh ree-sahr-chee-tee ee dahn-nee) (*I want to be compensated for the damages.*)
- ✓ **Sono stato/a arrestato/a.** (soh-noh stah-toh/ah ahr-rehs-tah-toh/ah) (*I've been arrested.*)

Words to Know

danno [m]	<u>dahn</u> -noh	damage
denunciare	deh-noohn- <u>chah</u> -reh	to report
denuncia [f]	deh-noohn-chah	report
incidente stradale [m]	een-chee- <u>dehn</u> -teh strah-dah-leh	traffic accident
macchina [f]	<u>mahk</u> -kee-nah	car
targa [f]	<u>tahr</u> -gah	license plate
patente [f]	pah- <u>tehn</u> -teh	license
libretto [m]	lee- <u>breht</u> -toh	registration
assicurazione [f]	ahs-see-kooh-rah- tsee-oh-neh	insurance

Reporting a Lost or Stolen Passport

Imagine you lose your passport, or it gets stolen while you are snoozing on the train. (These things happen!) The conversation that follows will help you get a new one.

Talkin' the Talk

When Diane gets off the train in Florence, she realizes that she no longer has her passport. She goes immediately to the station police.

Diane: **Ho perso il passaporto! Non so cosa fare!**
oh pehr-soh eel pahs-sah-pohr-toh nohn soh koh-zah fah-reh
I've lost my passport! I don't know what to do!

Police: **Sa dirmi dove, come, quando?**
sah deer-mee doh-veh koh-meh kwahn-doh
Can you tell me where, when, and how?

Diane: **Penso di averlo perso in treno.**
pehn-soh dee ah-vehr-loh pehr-soh een treh-noh
I think I lost it on the train.

Police: **Ora facciamo la denuncia.**
oh-rah fach-chah-moh lah deh-noohn-chah
We'll file a report now.

Con questa denuncia, deve rivolgersi alla sua ambasciata o consolato.
kohn kwehs-tah deh-noohn-chah deh-veh ree-vohl-jehr-see ahl-lah sooh-ah ahm-bah-shah-tah oh kohn-soh-lah-toh
You're going to need this report when you go to your Embassy or Consulate to apply for a new one.

Diane: **Grazie.**
grah-tsee-eh
Thank you.

(at the Embassy or Consulate)

Consolate **Dica?**
Agent: dee-kah
 How can I help you?

Diane: (agitated) **Mi serve un nuovo passaporto! Subito!**
 mee sehr-veh oohn nwoh-voh pahs-sah-pohr-toh
 sooh-bee-toh
 I need a new passport. Right away!

Consolate **Si calmi. Necessitano due foto tessera.** . . .
Agent: see kahl-mee. neh-chehs-see-tah-noh dooh-eh
 foh-toh tehs-seh-rah
 Calm down. You're going to need two ID-
size photos . . .

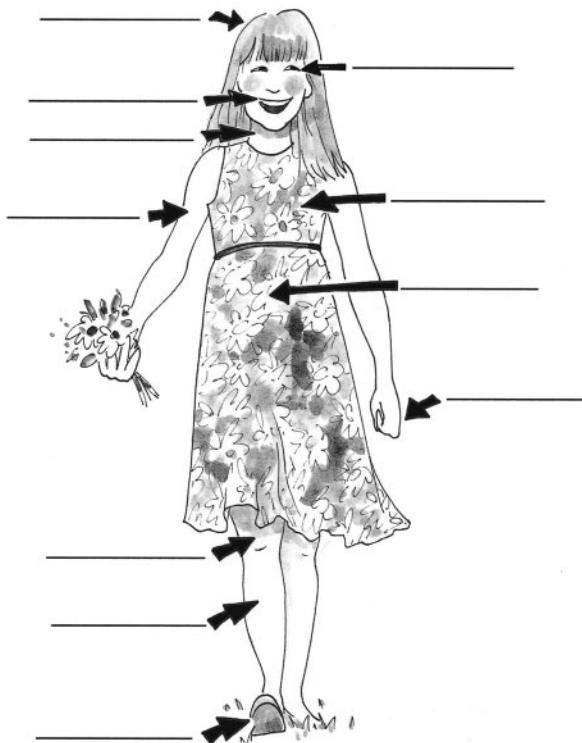
**La denuncia della polizia, una copia del passaporto
originale. . .**
lah deh-noohn-chah dehl-lah poh-lee-tsee-ah ooh-
nah koh-pee-ah dehl pahs-sah-pohr-toh
oh-ree-gee-nah-leh
. . . official police report, a copy of your original pass-
port (your hotel should have a copy of this) . . .

. . . e un altro documento.
eh oohn ahl-troh doh-kooh-mehn-toh
. . . and another form of ID.



Fun & Games

See how many body parts you can remember by labeling as many of them as you can on the following picture. See Appendix D for the answer key.



Chapter 17

Small Talk, Wrapping Things Up

In This Chapter

- ▶ Discovering interrogative pronouns
- ▶ Asking simple questions
- ▶ Taking care of basic needs
- ▶ Talking about yourself and your family
- ▶ Talking shop
- ▶ Sending postcards, buying stamps
- ▶ Speaking reflexively

This chapter wraps things up by presenting you with some of the basic essentials that are smattered throughout the book, but which deserve some space of their own. At this point you probably have figured out how to form questions, but here's that information at your fingertips for quick review and reference. At the end of this chapter, we give you a crash course on reflexive verbs, some of the most common yet unappreciated verbs.

Discovering Interrogative Pronouns

In Italian at least one thing is easier than in English: forming questions. In English, in most cases, you need a form of to do, to be, or to have to form a question. You also (mostly) have to invert part of your sentence construction. For example, “He goes to the movies” becomes “Does he go to the movies?” In Italian you simply ask “**Lui va al cinema?**” (looh-ee vah ahl chee-neh-mah) (*Does he go to the movies?*) There is no word for does, just as there is no word for are in the following sentence: “**Vai alla partita?**” (vahy ahl-lah pahr-tee-tah) (*Are you going to the game?*)

In Italian, forming questions is very easy: A question has the same structure as an affirmative statement. You identify a question only by the intonation in your voice and by the use of a question mark in written language. For example:

Luca va a scuola.**Luca va a scuola?***loo-kah vah ah skwoh-lah**loo-kah vah ah skwoh-lah*

Luca goes to school. Luca goes to school? or Does Luca go to school?

Mangi la carne.**Mangi la carne?***mahn-jee lah kahr-neh* *mahn-jee lah kahr-neh*

You eat/You're eating meat. Do you eat/Are you eating (the) meat?

Italian also has interrogative pronouns (when, where, what, and so on) with which you can start questions. Use the following pronouns:

- ✓ **Chi?** (kee) (*Who?*)
- ✓ **Che?** (keh) (*What?*)
- ✓ **Cosa?** (koh-sah) (*What?*)
- ✓ **Quando?** (kwahn-doh) (*When?*)
- ✓ **Quanto?** (kwahn-toh) (*How much?*)
- ✓ **Quanti/e?** (kwahn-tee/teh) (*How many?*) (m/f)
- ✓ **Quale/i?** (kwah-leh/ee) (*Which, what*) sing./pl
- ✓ **Dove?** (doh-veh) (*Where?*)
- ✓ **Perché?** (pehr-keh) (*Why?*)
- ✓ **Come?** (koh-meh) (*How?*)

Che, **cosa**, and **che cosa** are often used interchangeably.

Some sample questions using these interrogative pronouns include:

- ✓ **Chi è?** (kee eh) (*Who is it/this?*)
- ✓ **Cosa stai facendo?** (koh-sah stahy fah-chehn-doh) (*What are you doing?*)
- ✓ **Quando arrivi?** (kwahn-doh ahr-ree-vee) (*When do you arrive?*)
- ✓ **Dov'è la stazione?** (doh-veh lah stah-tsyoh-neh) (*Where is the station?*)
- ✓ **Perché non sei venuto?** (pehr-keh nohn sahy veh-nooh-toh) (*Why didn't you come?*)
- ✓ **Come stai?** (koh-meh stahy) (*How are you?*)
- ✓ **Come si dice "rain" in italiano?** (koh-meh see dee-cheh . . . in ee-tah-lee-ah-noh) (*How do you say rain in Italian?*)

Asking simple questions

When you ask a question using an interrogative pronoun, you do not need the interrogative pronoun in the response. For example:

Dov'è la Cappella Sistina? (doh-veh lah kahp-pehl-lah sees-tee-nah) (*Where is the Sistine Chapel?*)

La Cappella Sistina è a Roma. (lah kahp-pehl-lah sees-tee-nah eh ah roh-mah) (*The Sistine Chapel is in Rome.*)

Quante regioni ci sono in Italia? (kwahn-teh reh-joh-nee chee soh-noh in ee-tah-lee-ah) (*How many regions are there in Italy?*)

Ci sono 20 regioni. (chee soh-noh vohn-tee reh-joh-nee) (*There are 20 regions.*)



The interrogatives **dove** (doh-veh) and **come** (koh-meh) can be contracted with the verb **essere** (ehs-sehr-reh) (*to be*) in the third person singular. Note that the pronunciation and stress also change. Let's take a look at these interrogatives with third person singular and third person plural verbs.

Dov'è Mario. (doh-veh mah-ree-oh) (*Where's Mario?*)

Dove sono i ragazzi? (doh-veh soh-noh ee rah-gahts-tsee) (*Where are the boys?*)

Com'è quel ristorante? (koh-meh kwehl rees-toh-rahn-teh) (*How is that restaurant? or What's that restaurant like?*)

Come sono gli gnocchi? (koh-meh soh-noh lyee nyohk-kee) (*How are the gnocchi?*)



Use **quale** (kwah-leh) in the singular, **quali** (kwah-lee) in the plural, but **qual è** (kwahl-eh) when combined with the third person singular of **essere**.

Quale (kwah-leh): **Quale film vuoi vedere?** (kwah-leh feelm vwoi veh-deh-reh) (*What/which film do you want to see?*)

Qual è (kwahl-eh): **Qual è il mare più profondo in Italia?** (kwahl-eh il mah-reh pyooh proh-fohn-doh in ee-tah-lee-ah) (*What is the deepest sea in Italy?*)

Quali amici hai invitato? (kwahl-ee ah-mee-chee ahy in-vee-tah-toh) (*Which friends did you invite?*)

C'è and ci sono

Although seemingly insignificant, you just can't get around in Italian without the essential terms **c'è** (cheh) (*there is*) and **ci sono** (chee soh-noh) (*there are*) that are useful both for asking and answering questions. Just remember that both have a "ch" sound!

Cosa c'è nel frigo? (koh-zah cheh nehl free-goh) (*What's in the fridge?*)

C'è un esame domani? (cheh oohn eh-zah-meh doh-mah-nee) (*Is there an exam tomorrow?*)

Si, c'è italiano. (see cheh ee-tah-lee-ah-noh) (*Yes, there is the Italian one.*)

Ci sono ancora dei ravioli? (chee soh-noh ahn-koh-rah dehy rah-vee-oh-lee) (*Are there any ravioli left?*)

Si, ci sono. (see chee soh-noh) (*Yes, there are.*)

Taking care of basic needs

Sometimes you just need to ask for something very basic but necessary. Here are a few phrases that will take you far:

Scusi, dov'è il bagno per favore? (skooh-zee doh-veh il bah-nyoh pehr fah-voh-reh) (*Excuse me, where is the bathroom please?*) Some people get fancy and ask for **la toilette** with a Frenchified accent; however, **bagno** gets you where you need to go (no pun intended).

Scusi, dov'è la farmacia più vicina? (skooh-zee doh-veh lah fahr-mah-chee-ah pyooh vee-chee-nah) (*Excuse me, where's the nearest pharmacy?*)

Scusi, dov'è una banca? (skooh-zee doh-veh ooh-nah bahn-kah) (*Excuse me, where is a bank?*)

Ho bisogno di/ Mi serve (sing.)/**Mi servono**(pl) (oh bee-zoh-nyoh dee/mee sehr-veh/mee sehr-voh-noh) (*I need*)

un paruchiere (oohn pah-rooh-kyeh-reh) (*a hairdresser*)

un'estetista (per fare la ceretta) (oohn-esh-teh-tees-tah) (pehr fah-reh lah chehr-eht-tah) (*an esthetician (for waxing)*)
(No Italian women I know shave with a razor.)

Sto cercando (stoh chehr-kahn-doh) (*I'm looking for*)

il dentifricio (il dehn-tee-free-choh) (*toothpaste*)

la crema solare (lah kreh-mah soh-lah-reh) (*sun protection lotion*)

i tamponi (ee tahm-poh-nee) (*tampons*)

la carta igienica (lah kar-tah ee-jehn-ee-kah) (*toilet paper*)

qualcosa per le zanzare (qwahl-koh-zah pehr leh dzahn-zah-reh)
(*something for mosquitoes*)

qualcosa per mal di testa (kwah-koh-zah pehr mahl dee tehs-tah)
(*something for a headache*)

Vorrei (vohr-rey) (*I'd like*)

Mi può/potrebbe consigliare . . . ? (mee pwoh/poh-trehb-beh
kohn-seel-yah-reh) (*Would you be able to recommend . . . ?*)

Puo ripetere lentamente, per favore? (pwoh ree-peh-teh-reh
lehn-tah-mehn-teh pehr fah-voh-reh) (*Would you repeat slowly, please?*)

Non capisco. (nohn kah-pees-koh) (*I don't understand.*)

Non lo so. (nohn loh soh) (*I don't know.*)

Talkin' the Talk

Massimo and Isa, two colleagues at work, are getting to know each other over a morning cappuccino, and so of course have to use many of the interrogative pronouns that this chapter recapitulates.

Massimo: **Cosa prendi?**
 koh-zah prehn-dee
 What are you having?

Isa: **Un cappuccio e una pasta.**
 oohn kahp-poohch-chee-noh eh ooh-nah pahs-tah
 A cappuccino and a pastry.

Massimo: **Quando hai cominciato il lavoro qui?**
 qwahn-doh ahy koh-meen-chah-toh il lah-voh-roh
 kwee
 When did you start working here?

Isa: **Due mesi fa.**
 dooh-eh meh-zee fah
 Two months ago.

- Massimo: **Dov'eri prima?**
dohv-eh-ree pree-mah
Where were you before?
- Isa: **Lavoravo per la succursale veneta.**
lah-voh-rah-voh pehr lah soohk-koohr-sah-leh
veh-neh-tah
I was working for the branch in the Veneto region.
- Massimo: **Come ti trovi?**
koh-meh tee troh-vee
How do you like it so far?
- Isa: **Mi piace abbastanza.**
mee pyach-cheh ahb-bahs-tahn-zah
I like it well enough.
- E tu, da quanto tempo lavori per la compagnia?**
eh tooh dah qwahn-toh tehm-poh lah-voh-ree pehr
lah kohm-pahn-ee-ah
And how long have you been working for the company?
- Massimo: **Da sei anni.**
dah sey ahn-nee
For six years.
- Da quando mi sono laureato.**
dah kwahn-doh mee soh-noh lou-reh-ah-toh
Since I graduated.
- Da quale università di tei laureata?**
dah qwah-leh ooh-nee-vehr-see-tah tee sey
lou-reh-ah-tah
What university did you go to?
- Isa: **Dall'Università di Urbino. E tu?**
dahl-looh-nee-vehr-see-tah dee oohr-bee-noh eh tooh
The University of Urbino. And you?

Massimo: **Bologna.**
boh-lohn-yah
Bologna.

Isa: **Vuoi tornare a Bologna?**
vwoi tohr-nah-reh ah boh-lohn-yah
Do you want to go back to Bologna?

Massimo: **Non lo so.**
nohn loh soh
I don't know.

Si, un giorno vorrei tornarci.
see oohn johr-noh vohr-rey tohr-nahr-chee
Yes, some day I'd like to go back there.



Pronto (*prohn-toh*) means more than just hello when you pick up the phone. It frequently means “ready,” in which case it functions as an adjective and, therefore, changes according to the noun it describes. In other words, when the noun it modifies is masculine, the adjective ends in -o — **pronto**. If the noun is feminine, it ends in -a — **pronta** (*prohn-tah*). When modifying plural nouns, it ends in **i** (ee) (masculine plural) and **e** (eh) (feminine plural). Consider these examples:

- ✓ **Ragazzi, siete pronti?** (rah-gats-zee see-eh-teh *prohn-tee*) (*Guys/kids, are you ready?*)
- ✓ **La cena è pronta.** (lah cheh-nah eh *prohn-tah*) (*Dinner is ready.*)

Another use of **pronto** that you should know is **pronto soccorso** (*prohn-toh sohk-kohr-soh*) (*first aid; emergency room*). In this context, **pronto** means “rapid.”

Presto (*prehs-toh*), on the other hand, means either early or soon, and as an adverb is invariable (ending always in o): **Siamo arrivati presto.** (see-ah-moh ahr-ree-vah-tee *prehs-toh*) (*We arrived early.*)

Words to Know

<i>consigliare</i>	<i>kohn-seel-yah-reh</i>	to recommend
<i>pronto</i>	<i>prohn-toh</i>	ready, hello (phone)
<i>presto</i>	<i>prehs-toh</i>	early, soon
<i>non lo so</i>	<i>nohn loh soh</i>	I don't know
<i>da quanto tempo?</i>	<i>dah kwahn-toh tehm-poh</i>	How long?
<i>gemello/a</i>	<i>jeh-mehl-lah</i>	twin (m/f)
<i>ditta</i>	<i>deet-tah</i>	company, firm
<i>come ti trovi</i>	<i>koh-meh tee troh-vee</i>	How do you like . . . ? (used only in certain situations, like a job or new city)
<i>abbastanza</i>	<i>ahb-bahs-tahn-zah</i>	enough
<i>il bagno</i>	<i>il bahn-yoh</i>	bathroom
<i>partita</i>	<i>pahr-tee-tah</i>	game
<i>vorrei</i>	<i>vohr-rey</i>	I would like

Talking About Yourself and Your Family — Possessives Part 2

You already saw how possessive adjectives and pronouns work in Chapter 15, but the story doesn't end there.

There are specific rules for possessive adjectives with family members. For singular family members you *do not* use the article, but plural family members *do* take the article:

Mia sorella (no definite article) (*mee-ah soh-rehl-lah*) (*my sister*) — **Le mie sorelle** (with definite article) (leh *mee-eh soh-rehl-leh*) (*my sisters*)

Table 17-1 shows some other relatives.

Table 17-1

Relatives

Relative	Pronunciation	Definition
marito	mah-ree-toh	<i>husband</i>
moglie	mohl-yeh	<i>wife</i>
figlio	feel-yoh	<i>son</i>
figlia	feel-yah	<i>daughter</i>
figli	feel-yee	<i>children</i>
nipote	nee-poh-teh	<i>niece, nephew, grand-daughter, grand-son</i>
nipoti	nee-poh-tee	<i>nieces, nephews, grand-daughters, grand-sons, grand-children</i>
suocera	swoh-cheh-rah	<i>mother-in-law</i>
nuora	nwoh-rah	<i>daughter-in-law</i>
genero	geh-neh-roh	<i>son-in-law</i>
zia	dzee-ah	<i>aunt</i>
zio	dzee-oh	<i>uncle</i>
cugina/o/e	kooh-jee-nah/oh/ee	<i>cousin (f.)/cousin (m)/cousins</i>
nonna/o/i	nohn-nah/noh/ee	<i>grand-mother/father/parents</i>
madre	mah-dreh	<i>mother</i>
padre	pah-dreh	<i>father</i>
genitori	geh-nee-toh-ree	<i>parents</i>

Talkin' the Talk

Teresa and Amy are two old friends catching up about their families after not having spoken for about 15 years. Notice they use definite articles in front of plural family relatives, and no article in front of singular family relatives.

- Teresa: **Ciao Amy. Sono Teresa.**
chou ey-mee soh-noh teh-reh-sah
Hi Amy. It's Teresa.
- Amy: **Da quanto tempo non ti sento!**
dah kwahn-toh tehm-poh nohn tee sehn-toh
What a long time it's been!
- Teresa: **Come stai?**
koh-meh stahy
How are you?
- Amy: **Sto bene!**
stoh beh-neh
I'm well!
- Raccontami di te!**
rahk-kohn-tah-mee dee teh
Tell me about you! (Yourself)
- Teresa: **Mi sono sposata undici anni fa.**
mee soh-noh spoh-sah-tah oohn-dee-chee
ahn-nee fah
I got married 11 years ago.
- Ho due figli.**
oh dooh-eh feel-yee
I have two children.
- Abito a Ravenna.**
ah-bee-toh ah rah-vehn-nah
I live in Ravenna.

Amy: **Quanti anni hanno i tuoi figli?**
kwahn-tee ahn-nee ahn-noh ee twoi feel-yee
How old are your children?

Teresa: **Mia figlia Emilia Rosa ha dieci anni.**
Mee-ah feel-yah eh-meel-yah roh-zah ah dyeh-chee ahn-nee
My daughter Emilia Rosa is ten years old.

E mio figlio Pietro ne ha otto.
eh mee-oh feel-yoh pee-eh-troh neh ah oht-toh
And my son Pietro is eight.

Come sta la tua famiglia?
koh-meh stah lah tooh-ah fah-meel-yah
How's your family doing?

Amy: **Mio marito Sandro è sempre in giro per il mondo.**
mee-oh mah-ree-toh sahn-droh eh seh-m-preh in jee-roh pehr il mohn-doh
My husband Sandro is always travelling all over the world.

Mia figlia Tania adesso ha diciotto anni e frequenta l'università.
mee-ah feel-yah tahn-yah ah-dehs-soh ah deech-oht-toh ahn-nee eh freh-kwehn-tah looh-neeh-vehr-see-tah
My daughter Tania is 18 years old and goes to college.

E mio figlio Luca ne ha ventidue.
eh mee-oh feel-yoh looh-kah neh ah vahn-tee-dooh-eh
And my son Luca is 22.

Teresa: **Come passano gli anni.**
koh-meh pahs-sahn-oh lyee ahn-nee
Time really flies.

Amy: **Eh si. Come stanno i tuoi genitori?**
eh see koh-meh stahn-noh ee twoi jehn-ee-tohr-ee
You bet. How are your parents?

Teresa: **Stanno bene grazie.**
stahn-noh beh-neh grah-tsee-eh
They're well, thanks.

Mio padre è in pensione finalmente.
mee-oh pah-dreh eh in pehn-see-oh-neh
fee-nahl-mehn-teh
My dad finally retired.

E tua sorella? Dove abita?
eh tooh-ah soh-rehl-lah doh-veh ah-bee-tah
And your sister? Where does she live?

Amy: **Mia sorella sta benone.**
mee-ah sohr-ehl-lah stah beh-noh-neh
My sister's doing great.

Fa l'oculista nello studio di mio padre.
fah lohk-ooh-lees-tah nehl-loh stooh-dee-oh dee
mee-oh pah-dreh
She's an oculist in my dad's practice.

Abita vicino a me.
ah-bee-tah vee-chee-noh ah meh
She lives near me.

Teresa: **Allora, quando possiamo vederci?**
ahl-loh-rah qwahn-doh pohs-syah-moh veh-dehr-chee
So, when can we see each other?

Amy: **Molto presto, spero.**
mohl-toh prehs-toh speh-roh
Very soon, I hope.

Speaking Reflexively



When you say “to enjoy yourself,” you use a reflexive verb. That is, you turn the action back to yourself. The same applies in Italian. But not all Italian reflexive verbs are reflexive in English, and vice versa. Some verbs, such as **riposarsi** (ree-poh-zahr-see) (*to rest oneself*) and **svegliarsi** (sveh-lyahr-see) (*to wake oneself*), are not reflexive in English although they are in Italian.

In Italian, you can tell whether a verb is reflexive by looking at the infinitive form. If the last syllable of the infinitive is **-si** (see), which translates as “oneself,” then the verb is reflexive. When you conjugate a reflexive verb, you must remove the last syllable **-si**, and shift that **-si** as a reflexive pronoun to the front of the verb (in most cases). Then, you simply conjugate the verb just like regular **-are**, **-ere**, or **-ire** verbs (from Chapter 2 and Appendix A).

The following conjugation of **vestirsi** (vehs-teer-see) (*get dressed, to dress oneself*) demonstrates that the conjugation of the verb follows the regular pattern. When you chop off the **si** from the verb **divertirsi** (dee-vehr-teer-see) (*to enjoy oneself; to have a good time*), the verb looks like **divertire** (and is, therefore, conjugated like **partire** (pahr-tee-reh) (*to leave or depart*)). The only difference is that you add the reflexive pronoun, which refers to the person concerned (the subject). Repeat those pronouns a few times to yourself like a mantra until they sink in (**mi, ti si, ci vi si**).

Conjugation	Pronunciation	Translation
mi vesto	mee vehs-toh	<i>I'm getting dressed, I get dressed</i>
ti vesti	tee vehs-tee	<i>You're getting dressed, you get dressed</i>
si veste	see vehs-teh	<i>He/she is getting dressed, he/she gets dressed</i>
ci vestiamo	chee vehs-tyah-moh	<i>We're getting dressed, we get dressed</i>
vi vestite	vee vehs-tee-teh	<i>You're getting dressed, you get dressed</i>
si vestono	see vehs-toh-noh	<i>They're getting dressed, they get dressed</i>

Here are some more examples:

- ✓ **Mi diverto molto.** (mee dee-vehr-toh mohl-toh) (*I enjoy myself a lot.*)
- ✓ **Vi annoiate in campagna?** (vee ahn-noh-yah-teh een kahm-pah-nyah) (*Do you get bored in the country?*)
- ✓ **A che ora ti svegli?** (ah keh oh-rah tee sveh-lyee) (*What time do you wake up?*)

Table 17-2 shows a list of some common everyday reflexive verbs.

Table 17-2

Reflexive Verbs

Verb	Pronunciation	Meaning
accomodarsi	ahk-koh-moh-dahr-see	<i>to make oneself at home, to get comfortable</i>
alzarsi	ahl-tsahr-see	<i>to get up</i>
arrabbiarsi	ahr-rahb-bee-ahr-see	<i>to be (get) angry</i>
innamorarsi	in-nahm-oh-rahr-see	<i>to fall in love</i>
farsi la barba	fahr-see lah bahr-bah	<i>to shave (for a man)</i>
fermarsi	fehr-mahr-see	<i>to stop</i>
laurearsi	lou-reh-ahr-see	<i>to graduate from a university</i>
lavarsi	lah-vahr-see	<i>to wash (oneself)</i>
mettersi	meht-tehr-see	<i>to put on (clothes, contact lenses, glasses)</i>
pettinarsi	peht-teen-ahr-see	<i>to comb your hair</i>
sedersi	seh-dehr-see	<i>to sit down</i>
svegliarsi	svehl-yahr-see	<i>to wake up</i>
trasferirsi	trahs-fehr-eer-see	<i>to move form from one city to another</i>
vestirsi	vehs-teer-see	<i>to get dressed</i>

Talking shop

Work is such a big part of so many people's lives it's something you might want to be able to talk about when you're in Italy and have just started a conversation with people you've just met.

So the verb **lavorare** (lah-voh-rah-reh) (*to work*) will be useful as will other key terms:

Che lavoro fa/fai? (keh lah-voh-roh fah/fahy) (*What work/job do you do?*)
(formal/informal)

Che mestiere fa/fai? (keh mehs-tyeh-reh fah/fahy) (*What work do you do?*)
(formal/informal)

You can generally answer this question in two ways: Note the verbs, and the use of the definite article in the first example.

Faccio il/la dentista. (fach-choh il/lah dehn-tees-tah) (*I'm a dentist.*) (m/f)

Sono dentista. (soh-noh dehn-tees-tah) (*I'm a dentist.*)

Discussing your job

Italian has at least three words for "company" — **la compagnia** (lah kohm-pah-nyee-ah), **la ditta** (lah deet-tah) (which also means "the firm"), and **la società** (lah soh-cheh-tah). These words are virtually interchangeable.



L'ufficio (loohf-fee-choh) is Italian for "office." The following sentences give you a taste of the phrases you hear in **uffici** (oohf-fee-chee) (*offices*) everywhere:

- ✓ **È una grande società?** (eh ooh-nah grahn-deh soh-cheh-tah)
(*Is it a big company?*)
- ✓ **Non proprio, diciamo media.** (nohn proh-pree-oh dee-chah-moh
meh-dee-ah) (*Not really, let's say medium sized.*)
- ✓ **Lavoro per una piccola agenzia.** (lah-voh-roh pehr ooh-nah
peek-koh-lah ah-jehn-tsee-ah) (*I work for a small company.*)
- ✓ **Mi piace il mio lavoro.** (mee pyah-cheh eel mee-oh lah-voh-roh)
(*I like my job.*)

Table 17-3 shows some of the professions and careers with which you might be familiar.

Table 17-3**Professions/Jobs**

Profession	Pronunciation	Meaning
agronomo	ah-groh-noh-moh	<i>agronomist</i>
archeologo	ahr-keh-oh-loh-goh	<i>archeologist</i>
architetto	ahr-kee-teht-toh	<i>architect</i>
avvocato	ahv-voh-kah-toh	<i>lawyer</i>
bracciante	brach-chahn-teh	<i>farm worker</i>
chirurgo	kee-roohr-goh	<i>surgeon</i>
commesso	kohm-mehs-soh	<i>salesperson</i>
dentista	denhn-tees-tah	<i>dentist</i>
falegname	fah-lehn-yah-meh	<i>carpenter</i>
giornalista	johr-nah-lees-tah	<i>journalist</i>
impiegato	ihm-pyeh-gah-toh	<i>clerk (white-collar worker)</i>
ingegnere	in-gehn-yeh-reh	<i>engineer</i>
insengante	in-sehn-yahn-teh	<i>teacher (grades 1-8)</i>
meccanico	mehk-kah-nee-koh	<i>mechanic</i>
medico	meh-dee-koh	<i>doctor</i>
operaio	oh-pehr-ahy-oh	<i>factory worker</i>
pasticciere	pahhs-teech-cheh-reh	<i>baker</i>
psicologo	psee-koh-loh-goh	<i>psychologist</i>
professore	proh-fehs-soh-reh	<i>professor, teacher (grades 9-university)</i>
segretaria	seh-greh-tah-ree-ah	<i>secretary</i>
stilista	stee-lees-tah	<i>designer</i>

You might need some of the following words as well when talking about jobs:

Che lavoro vuoi fare da grande? (keh lah-voh-roh vwoi fah-reh dah grahn-deh) (*What work would you like to do when you are older/grow up?*)

Cosa vuoi diventare? (*koh-zah vwoi dee-vehn-tah-reh*) (*What do you want to be?*)

fabbrica	<i>fahb-bree-kah</i>	<i>factory</i>
capo	<i>kah-poh</i>	<i>head, boss</i>
padrone	<i>pah-droh-neh</i>	<i>boss, owner</i>
direttore	<i>dee-reht-toh-reh</i>	<i>manager, director</i>
sciopero	<i>shoh-peh-roh</i>	<i>strike</i>
stipendio	<i>stee-pehn-dee-oh</i>	<i>salary</i>



The word **sciopero** (*shoh-peh-roh*) (*strike*) is very important in Italy, where workers go on strike all the time.

Talkin' the Talk

La professoressa Lucia, a high-school teacher, is asking her young second-year Italian students what they want to be when they grow up.

Lucia: **Ermanna, che lavoro vuoi fare da grande?**
ehr-mahn-nah keh lah-voh-roh vwoi fah-reh dah
grahn-deh
Ermanna, what do you want to be when you grow up?

Ermanna: **Voglio fare la veterinaria.**
vohl-yoh fah-reh lah veh-teh-ree-nahr-ee-ah
I want to be a veterinarian.

Lucia: Perchè?
pehr-keh
Why?

Ermanna: **Perchè amo gli animali.**
 pehr-keh ah-moh lyee ah-nee-mah-lee
 Because I love animals.

Lucia: **Clara, tu cosa vuoi diventare?**
 klah-rah tooh koh-zah vwoi dee-vehn-tah-reh
 Clara, what do you want to be?

Clara: **Voglio fare la scrittrice.**
 vohl-yoh fah-reh lah skreet-tree-cheh
 I want to be a writer.

Lucia: **So che ti piace scrivere.**
 soh keh tee pyah-cheh skree-veh-reh
 I know that you like to write.

Riccardo, e tu?
 reek-kahr-doh eh tooh
 And you, Richard?

Riccardo: **Voglio fare il medico come il mio babbo.**
 vohl-yoh fah-reh il meh-dee-koh koh-meh eel
 mee-oh bahb-boh
 I want to be a doctor like my dad.

Lucia: **Emilia, che lavoro ti interessa?**
 eh-meel-yah keh lah-voh-roh tee in-teh-rehs-sah
 Emilia, what kind of work are you interested in?

Emilia: **Vorrei fare l'insegnante delle elementari.**
 vohr-rey fah-reh lin-sen-yahn-teh dehl-leh
 eh-leh-mehn-tah-ree
 I'd like to be an elementary school teacher.

Lucia: **Bravi, ragazzi!**
 brah-vee rah-gats-tsee
 Good job, children!



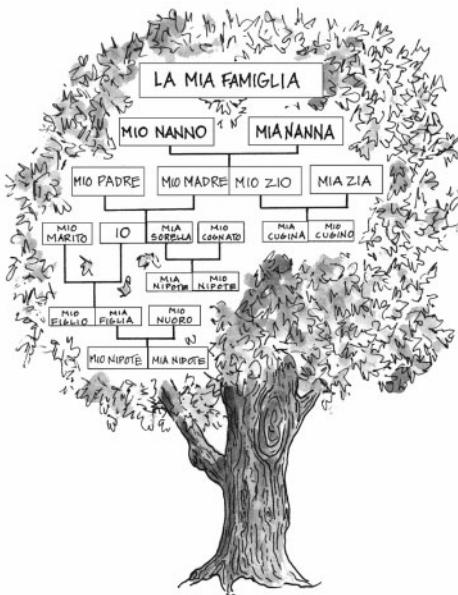
There is an exception to the rule about singular family relatives. Whereas most do not take the definite article (**mia madre, e mio padre**) (mee-ah mah-dreh eh mee-oh pah-dreh), some shorter terms of endearment do, such as **la mia mamma** (lah mee-ah mahm-mah) (my mom) and **il mio babbo/il mio papà** (il mee-oh bahb-boh/il mee-oh pah-pah) (my dad).

Words to Know

lavoro	lah-voh-roh	work, job
insegnante	in-sehn-yahn-teh	teacher
babbo	bahb-boh	dad, daddy
medico	meh-dee-koh	doctor
direttore	dee-reht-toh-reh	director, manager
fabbrica	fahb-bree-kah	factory
sciopero	shoh-peh-roh	strike
stipendio	stee-pehn-dee-oh	salary
ti interessa/ mi interessa	tee in-teh-rehs-sah/ mee in-teh-rehs-sah	you're interested in/ I'm interested in
tasse	tahs-seh	taxes, tuition



Fun and Games



Here are ten fill-in-the-blank questions. Pick words and terms from the family tree to complete each statement. You may need the plural for some of the possessive adjectives and relatives. See Appendix D for the answer key.

1. I miei genitori sono _____ e _____.
2. Il figlio di mia madre è _____.
3. I figli di mio fratello sono _____.
4. La madre della mia mamma è _____.
5. La sorella di mia madre è _____.
6. Il marito di mia sorella è _____.
7. La moglie di mio figlio è _____.
8. La sorella di mio figlio è _____.
9. I figli di mia zia sono _____.
10. La mamma di mio marito è _____.

Part IV

The Part of Tens

The 5th Wave

By Rich Tennant



"My wife and I are taking the course together.
I figure I only have to learn half as much, since
she finishes all of my sentences anyway."

In this part . . .

These chapters help you add polish to the basics the rest of the book provides. I give you ten ways to pick up Italian very quickly, from reading Italian food labels to singing along with your favorite Italian song. You also learn ten things to never say in Italian, and ten phrases to use so people will think you're Italian. These chapters might be short, but they're invaluable!

Chapter 18

Ten Ways to Pick Up Italian Quickly

In This Chapter

- ▶ Enjoying Italian food
 - ▶ Listening to Italian
 - ▶ Going to Italian films
 - ▶ Sharing Italian with other people
 - ▶ Surfing the Web
-

Of course, you've already chosen one of the quickest ways to learn Italian — you picked up this book! For smaller bites of Italian, nibble on one or all of the suggestions in this chapter. Above all, practice, practice, practice!

Read Italian Food Labels

These days, finding Italian food is easy in most countries. If you buy Italian food, read the original label a couple of times before you throw the package away. Usually, you can find an English translation alongside the Italian. In a few weeks, you won't need to read the English part anymore!

Ask for Food in Italian

If you go to an Italian restaurant or pizzeria, don't be shy! Order your favorite dishes by using their original names and Italian pronunciations. (Don't forget that **bruschetta** is pronounced broohs-keht-tah, with the **k** sound, just like **porchetta** (pohr-keht-tah)!)

Listen to Italian Songs

You can easily pick up Italian words and pronunciation by listening to Italian music and singing along with **la canzone** (lah kahn-tsoh-neh) (*the song*). You have access to scores of Italian singers through the Internet (especially YouTube). You can easily find the lyrics either by Googling them separately, or by modifying your YouTube search by adding the word "karaoke." Put as many songs as you can on your iPod, and listen (and sing) whenever you can!

Read Italian Publications

Trying to read a newspaper in a foreign language can be very frustrating! Don't worry: Experts say that journalistic language is the most difficult to understand. The culture, gossip, crime, and weather articles are undoubtedly the easiest to understand, and many online newspapers also offer small video clips. You can find several Italian newspapers on-line. By the way, Italians call the newspaper **il giornale** (eel johr-nah-leh).

Watch Italian Movies

We hope you like movies! Watching a movie in the original language is a pleasant way to pick up words, expressions, and names, and you can even discover something about the country where the story takes place. You can find several Italian movies with English subtitles, from classic **neorealismo** (neh-oh-reh-ah-leez-moh) (*neorealism*) to the most recent releases. You can even find old familiar cartoons online, dubbed into Italian. You won't need subtitles for these!

Tune In to Italian Radio and TV Programs

Many countries deliver radio programs (especially the news) in Italian. Find some Italian programs and listen as often as you can. You can at least understand the basics of what the newscaster says because the speakers usually articulate very clearly and slowly, and some of the news is the same as you'd hear in your own national programs, but perhaps with a different perspective. Again, you can pick up words without much effort.

With good Internet access, you can also listen to stations directly from Italy. For several programs on the radio and television, start with these sites:

<http://www.international.rai.it/>

<http://italiansinfonia.com.stations.htm>

Listen to Italian Language Tapes

You can listen to Italian language tapes — or the audio CD that comes with this book — almost any time: when you jog, clean your apartment or house, cook, or whenever you like. And please, don't forget to repeat aloud what you hear.

Share Your Interest

I consider this a valid tip when learning any language: Learning a language with other people is much more pleasant (and easier!) than doing it by yourself. Having company while you broaden your knowledge of Italian is helpful not only because language is primarily a means of communicating with others, but also because fun is a vital element in every learning process.

Write an ad and put it in the local library or bookshop to start an Italian conversation or book group — you never know what doors this will open for you!

Surf the Net

Nothing is easier than looking for information on the Internet. To find information about Italy, type **Italia** (ee-tah-lee-ah) (*Italy*) or the name of a famous city or monument in Italian, such as **Venezia** (veh-neh-tsee-ah) (*Venice*) or **Colosseo** (koh-lohs-seh-oh) (*the Colesseum*), to mention just two. Each city and region has its own official website full of all sorts of useful information. The best place to start is www.Google.it, the Italian Google.

Cook!

One of my favorite sites is Italianfoodnet.com. Not only will you find great recipes, but also cooking videos in Italian that you can watch again and again as you cook alongside the chefs. After a while, you'll be confident enough to turn off the subtitles.

Chapter 19

Ten Things Never to Say in Italian

In This Chapter

- Using “Ciao” properly
- Realizing that literal translations don’t always work
- Encountering “false friends”
- Playing with “to play”
- Having hunger

We hope the title to this chapter isn’t too dramatic! Remember that you should always approach the learning process as fun. If you don’t speak Italian perfectly, you may say something wrong — which might be funny or even embarrassing. Don’t worry; messing up is not a tragedy! On the contrary, most people are pleased when non-heritage speakers make any attempt to learn their language, and they allow for mistakes in both speech and behavior. Nevertheless, we want to give you a little advice to help you avoid such situations.

Ciao-ing Down



Ciao (chou) is a common way to say “hello” and “goodbye” that even people who don’t speak Italian know. However, please remember that Italians use it only with persons they address with the informal **tu** (tooh) (*you*) — see Chapter 2 for a discussion of the use of **tu**. Many non speakers of Italian use the formal **lei** (ley) and still say **ciao**; again, this misstep is not a tragedy, but when you’re addressing someone in the formal manner, it’s more Italian to say **buongiorno** (bwohn-johr-noh) (*good morning*) or **arrivederci** (ahr-ree-veh-dehr-chee) (*good-bye*).

Don't Be Literal

A literal translation from English to Italian doesn't work in many cases. Here's a typical example: You may want to ask your Italian friend, "How do you like Los Angeles?" Because you've probably learned a lot, you might translate your question into "**Come ti piace Los Angeles?**" (*koh-meh tee pyah-cheh Los Angeles*) knowing that **come** is the translation of "how" and **ti piace** means "do you like." Both are absolutely correct translations, but the whole question doesn't sound Italian. I would ask "**Ti piace Los Angeles?**" (*tee pyah-cheh Los Angeles*) (*Do you like Los Angeles?*).

Five Fickle "False Friends"

We consider some words "false friends." These words sound and look quite similar in two different languages but, unfortunately, don't have the same meaning. One example is the word sympathy. In Italian, **simpatia** (seem-pah-tee-ah) is the feeling you have for someone you find nice, funny, and pleasant; it doesn't mean that you feel what the other person feels. **Simpatia's** translation can be "liking." So to say that you find somebody **simpatico** (seem-pah-tee-koh) means that you like him or her — the person is nice. Interestingly, English kept the original Greek meaning of the word sympathy, which is "to suffer together."

Another false friend is the word **educazione** (eh-dooh-kah-tsyoh-neh). In Italian, it does not mean the level of your schooling, but the way you have grown up — your upbringing. **Educato** (eh-dooh-kah-toh) [**educata** (eh-dooh-kah-tah) for a female] translates as "well-brought-up" or "polite." A good Italian word for "education" is **istruzione** (ees-trooh-tsyoh-neh).

The surprises aren't over. Guess what the Italian word **sensibile** (sehn-see-bee-leh) means? The subject of this section tells you already that it doesn't mean "sensible." Instead, it means "sensitive." You can translate the English "sensible" with the adjective **ragionevole** (rah-joh-neh-voh-leh).

The adjective **vecchio** (m) (*vehk-yoh*) / **vecchia** (f) (*vehk-yah*) translates as "old," but avoid using it to refer to people. You can use **vecchio** for objects (a car, a book, or whatever), but when referring to a person, say **anziano** (m) (ahn-tsee-ah-noh) or **anziana** (f) (ahn-tsee-ah-nah). **Anziano** means that the person is not young anymore — but it doesn't sound negative.

Most hotels and inns offer at least breakfast, so you might want to ask for more **marmellata** (mahr-mehl-lah-tah) if they have run out. Do not ask for **preservativi** (preh-zehr-vah-tee-vee) (*condoms*) or you will be greeted with an incredulous stare.

Food Faux Pas

So if you're trying to blend in and sound like an Italian, don't order a **cappuccino** after, let's say, 11:00 a.m. **Cappuccino** is a breakfast drink.

Do not ask for **parmigiano** cheese for the **pasta** with fish/clams/shrimp that has just been brought to the table. Mixing fish with cheese is tantamount to eating pickles with milk!

And don't be surprised if you don't find spaghetti and meatballs on the menu. More than likely, you won't (and so shouldn't ask for it).

The Problem with “Play”

We'd like to dedicate the last two points of this chapter to the translations of the verb “to play.” In English, this verb has different meanings, all of them describing nice activities. The most usual meaning (and the first given in all dictionaries) corresponds to the Italian **giocare** (joh-kah-reh): “to have fun” or “to do things to pass the time pleasantly, as children do.” But don't use this verb when talking about instruments. Instead, use **suonare** (swoh-nah-reh); therefore, the correct sentence is **suono il piano** (swoh-noh eel pee-ah-noh) (*I play piano*).

Being Careful of “False Friends”

The pitfalls surrounding “false friends” that look or sound like words you know but have different meanings — can transfer to idiomatic expressions that can be very funny for a foreigner. Just think of the English expression “It's raining cats and dogs,” which is the best example of a funny expression for non-native English speakers. You now must know that you wouldn't say **Sta piovendo gatti e cani** (stah pyoh-vehn-doh gaht-tee eh kah-nee). To express the same sentiment, you say instead **Piove a catinelle** (pyoh-veh ah kah-tee-nehl-leh) (*It's raining buckets.*).

The same is true for the expression “I'm hungry.” In Italian, you “have” hunger; therefore you say **Ho fame** (oh fah-meh). You could also say **Sono affamato** (soh-noh ahf-fah-mah-toh), but this sounds more like “I'm starving,” which is much stronger.

Chapter 20

Ten Favorite Italian Expressions

In This Chapter

- Expressions you hear all the time
- Phrases you can say to sound Italian

Counting how many times a day Italians use some of the following expressions would be an interesting experiment! They are all very typical, and you hear them often in colloquial Italian. So if you remember some of them and use them on the right occasion, you will seem very Italian. Of course, there are, as in any language, always expressions that sound strange coming from the mouth of a foreigner, but the following can be used without hesitation. Exceptions may be **mamma mia** and **uffa**, because they are very spontaneous. But using any or all of the others can make you really sound Italian.

Mamma mia!



Mamma mia! (*mahm-mah mee-ah*) Please don't think that all Italians are like children just because you notice how often they call for their mommies! In fact, the literal translation is something like "Oh Mama!" and Italians use the exclamation to express surprise, impatience, happiness, sorrow, and so on — in general, a strong emotion. The figurative translation is something like "My goodness!"

Che bello!

Che bello! (keh beh-lloh) (*How lovely! How nice! — literally, how beautiful!*) Using this phrase shows that you're enthusiastic about something.

Uffa!

Uffa! (*oohf-fah*) is a very clear way to show that you're annoyed, bored, angry, or simply fed up with a situation. In English, you'd probably express the same by exhaling in exasperation.

Che ne so!/Boh!

When Italians want to say that they have no idea about something, they shrug their shoulders and say **Che ne so!** (*keh neh soh*) (*How should I know?*) and/or **boh!** (*boh*). We don't need to tell you that both are quite common expressions.

Magari!

Magari! (*mah-gah-ree*) Just one word, but it expresses so much! It indicates a strong wish or hope. It's a good answer, for instance, if somebody asks you if you'd like to win the lottery. A good translation of this word is "If only!" or "I'd love it!"

Ti sta bene!

Ti sta bene! (*tee stah beh-neh*) This is the Italian way to say "Serves you right!" But this can also mean: "It looks good on you!" depending on the context.

Non te la prendere!

If you see that somebody is sad, worried, or upset, you can try to console him or her by saying **Non te la prendere!** (*nohn teh lah prehn-deh-reh*) (*Don't get so upset!*). Sometimes it works.

Che macello!

Figuring out the derivation of this phrase is not difficult. The literal translation of **Che macello!** (keh mah-*chehl*-loh) is “What a slaughterhouse!” Italians usually say this in situations in which an English speaker would say “What a mess!”

Non mi va!

Non mi va! (nohn mee vah) is one of the first phrases Italian children learn. It means that you don’t want to do something. The best translation is “I don’t feel like it!”

Mi raccomando!

With **Mi raccomando!** (mee rahk-koh-*mahn*-doh), you express a special emphasis in asking for something — like saying “Please, I beg you!” An example is **Telefonami, mi raccomando!** (“Don’t forget to call me, please!”).

Chapter 21

Ten Phrases to Say So That People Think You're Italian

In This Chapter

- Wishing someone good luck
- Shutting your mouth
- Being blessed
- Contradicting someone emphatically
- Telling someone to dream on!
- Being unsympathetic
- Saying “Stop it!”
- Slowing down
- Emphasizing a yes
- Letting go

In Chapter 20, we give you ten typical expressions Italians love and use a lot. Using them can help you sound very Italian. In this chapter, we offer more sophisticated expressions to make you sound even more Italian — these are truly idiomatic expressions. Using these expressions may make an Italian gape in astonishment. Have fun!

In bocca al lupo!

Perhaps you have an Italian friend facing a difficult situation and you want to wish her good luck. The literal translation of **buona fortuna!** (*bwoh-nah fohr-tooh-nah*) would work, but we think that this phrase makes you sound really Italian: **in bocca al lupo!** (een *bohk-kah ahl looh-poh*). Literally, this means “in the wolf’s mouth!” The upcoming difficulty looks like a big wolf, waiting with mouth open wide. Your friend will probably answer **Credi il lupo!** (*kreh-pee eel looh-poh*), which means “May the wolf die!”

Acqua in bocca!

When you want to share a secret with somebody — but want to make sure that he or she won't tell anybody else — say **acqua in bocca!** (*ahk-wah een bohk-kah*). This expression means “water in mouth.” If your mouth is full of water, you can't speak. Similar idioms in English are “Don't say a word about it!” and “Mum's the word!”

Salute!

Someone sneezes and you say **salute!** (*sah-looh-teh*), which means “health.” In fact, it's a way to wish the person to be healthy very soon. “Bless you!” is the English equivalent. You can also use this when making a toast.

Macché!

Italians love to talk, no doubt about it. Nevertheless, situations exist in which they prefer to say just one word. One good example is **macché!** (*mahk-keh*). It's a strong and determined way to say “Of course not” or “Certainly not!”

Neanche per sogno!

Similar to the preceding idiom, **neanche per sogno** (*neh-ahn-keh pehr soh-nyoh*) means literally “not even in a dream.” It is another way to say “No way!” and is close to the English expression “In your dreams.”

Peggio per te!

You don't show much sympathy when saying this phrase, but if you're looking for the Italian equivalent of “Too bad for you!” or “Tough luck!” **peggio per te** (*peh-joh pehr teh*) is what you need.

Piantala!

This is an informal way to say “Stop it!” or “Cut it out!” The literal translation of **piantala** (*pyahn-tah-lah*) is “Plant it!”

Vacci piano!

“Slow down!” is the translation of the Italian expression **Vacci piano!** (*vahch-chee pyah-noh*). Use it when you feel that somebody is going too fast or being too enthusiastic about something.

Eccome!

This emphatic word sums up the following phrases: “And how!” “You’d better believe it!” “Very!” “And then some.” Let’s say you ask a friend if someone you might be interested in is married: Your friend responds: **Eccome!** (*ehk-koh-meh*).

Lascia perdere!

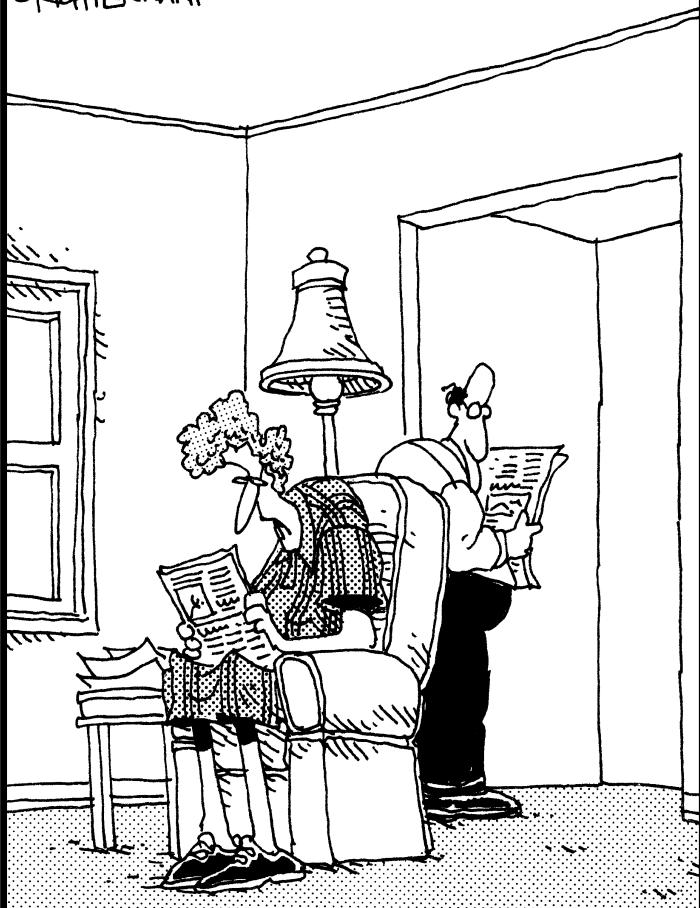
Let’s say something is really bugging your new Italian friend. A quick “**Lascia perdere!**” (*lah-shah pehr-deh-reh*) (*Let it go! Forget about it!*) will help put things into a new light. Didn’t get the woman you courted? Your son totaled your car but is safe and sound? **Lascia perdere!**

Part V

Appendixes

The 5th Wave By Rich Tennant

©RICH TENNANT



"Here's something. It's a language school that will teach you to speak Italian for \$500, or for \$200 they'll just give you an accent."

In this part . . .

Here is where the real nuts and bolts are found. Included are verb conjugation tables and an extensive mini-dictionary with both English-to-Italian and Italian-to-English translations. This part also contains the instructions on how to use the CD as well as a list of all the tracks on the CD. Last but not least, you'll find the answer key to all the Fun & Games exercises at the end of the chapters.

Appendix A

Verb Tables

Italian Verbs

Regular Verbs Ending with *-are*

For example: **parlare** (to speak);

Past participle: **parlato** (spoken) (w/avere)

io (I)
tu (you, inf.)
lui/lei (he/she/ you form.)
noi (we)
voi (you)
loro (they/you form. pl.)

Present	Past	Future
parlo	ho parlato	parlerò
parli	hai parlato	parlerai
parla	ha parlato	parlerà
parliamo	abbiamo parlato	parleremo
parlate	avete parlato	parlerete
parlano	hanno parlato	parleranno

Other common **-ARE** verbs: **mangiare** (to eat), **studiare** (to study), **imparare** (to learn), **insegnare** (to teach), **suonare** (to play instrument), **giocare** (to play game/sport), **disegnare** (to draw), **cucinare** (to cook), **lavorare** (to work)

Regular Verbs Ending with *-ere*

For example: vendere (to sell);

Past participle: venduto (sold) (w/avere)

io (I)
tu (you, inf.)
lui/lei (he/she/you form.)
noi (we)
voi (you)
loro (they/you form. pl.)

	Present	Past	Future
vendo	ho venduto	venderò	
vendi	hai venduto	venderai	
vende	ha venduto	venderà	
vendiamo	abbiamo venduto	venderemo	
vendete	avete venduto	venderete	
vendono	hanno venduto	venderanno	

Other common **-ERE** verbs: **leggere** (to read), **scrivere** (to write), **mettere** (to put), **prendere** (to take), **vivere** (to live), **vedere** (to see), **chiudere** (to close), **ripetere** (to repeat). Unlike the example, most of these past participles are irregular: **letto**, **scritto**, **messo**, **preso**, **vissuto**, **visto/veduto**, **chiuso**. Only **ripetuto** is regular.

Regular Verbs Ending with *-ire* *

For example: partire (to leave);

Past participle: partito (left) (w/essere)

io (I)
tu (you, inf.)
lui/lei (he/she/you form.)
noi (we)
voi (you)
loro (they/you form. pl.)

	Present	Past	Future
parto	sono partito/a	partirò	
parti	sei partito/a	partirai	
parte	è partito/a	partirà	
partiamo	siamo partiti/e	partiremo	
partite	siete partiti/e	partirete	
partono	sono partiti/e	partiranno	

Other common -IRE verbs: **aprire** (to open), **dormire** (to sleep), **coprire** (to cover), **sentire** (to hear, feel, taste, touch). Note that **aprire** and **coprire** have irregular past participles (**aperto** and **coperto**)

Note that -IRE (isc) verbs come later in this Appendix.

Verb *avere* (to have)
Past Participle: avuto (had) (w/ avere)

	Present	Past	Future
<i>io (I)</i>	ho	ho avuto	avrò
<i>tu (you, inf.)</i>	hai	hai avuto	avrai
<i>lui/lei (he/she/you form.)</i>	ha	ha avuto	avrà
<i>noi (we)</i>	abbiamo	abbiamo avuto	avremo
<i>voi (you)</i>	avete	avete avuto	avrete
<i>loro (they/you form. pl.)</i>	hanno	hanno avuto	avranno

Verb *essere* (to be)
Past Participle: stato (been) (w/essere)

	Present	Past	Future
<i>io (I)</i>	sono	sono stato/a	sarò
<i>tu (you, inf.)</i>	sei	sei stato/a	sarai
<i>lui/lei (he/she/you form.)</i>	è	è stato/a	sarà
<i>noi (we)</i>	siamo	siamo stati/e	saremo
<i>voi (you)</i>	siete	siete stati/e	sarete
<i>loro (they/you form. pl.)</i>	sono	sono stati/e	saranno

Reflexive Verbs

For example: lavarsi (to wash oneself)

Past Participle: lavato (washed) (essere *ALL reflexive verbs take essere in the past)

io (I)
tu (you, inf.)
lui/lei (he/she/you form.)
noi (we)
voi (you)
loro (they/you form. pl.)

	Present	Past	Future
<i>io (I)</i>	mi lavo	mi sono lavato/a	mi laverò
<i>tu (you, inf.)</i>	ti lavi	ti sei lavato/a	ti laverai
<i>lui/lei (he/she/you form.)</i>	si lava	si è lavato/a	si laverà
<i>noi (we)</i>	ci laviamo	ci siamo lavati/e	ci laveremo
<i>voi (you)</i>	vi lavate	vi siete lavati/e	vi laverete
<i>loro (they/you form. pl.)</i>	si lavano	si sono lavati/e	si laveranno

Other common reflexive verbs include: **alzarsi** (to get up), **divertirsi** (to have fun), **sentirsi** (to feel), **innamorarsi** (to fall in love), **mettersi** (to put [something] on), **addormentarsi** (to fall asleep), **permettersi** (to afford)

Irregular Italian Verbs

andare
to go

	Present	Future	Past Participle
<i>io</i>	vado	andrò	
<i>tu</i>	vai	andrai	
<i>lui/lei</i>	va	andrà	andato/a/i/e
<i>noi</i>	andiamo	andremo	(w/essere)
<i>voi</i>	andate	andrete	
<i>loro</i>	vanno	andranno	

		Present	Future	Past Participle
bere to drink	<i>Io</i>	bevo	berrò	
	<i>tu</i>	bevi	berrai	
	<i>lui/lei</i>	beve	berrà	bevuto (w/avere)
	<i>noi</i>	beviamo	berremo	
	<i>voi</i>	bevete	berrete	
	<i>loro</i>	bevono	berranno	

		Present	Future	Past Participle
dare to give	<i>io</i>	do	darò	
	<i>tu</i>	dai	darai	
	<i>lui/lei</i>	dà	darà	dato
	<i>noi</i>	diamo	daremo	(w/avere)
	<i>voi</i>	date	darete	
	<i>loro</i>	danno	daranno	

		Present	Future	Past Participle
dire to say; to tell	<i>io</i>	dico	dirò	
	<i>tu</i>	dici	dirai	
	<i>lui/lei</i>	dice	dirà	detto
	<i>noi</i>	diciamo	diremo	(w/avere)
	<i>voi</i>	dite	direte	
	<i>loro</i>	dicono	diranno	

		Present	Future	Past Participle
dovere to have to; ought to; must	<i>io</i>	devo	dovrò	
	<i>tu</i>	devi	dovrai	
	<i>lui/lei</i>	deve	dovrà	dovuto
	<i>noi</i>	dobbiamo	dovremo	(w/avere, usually)
	<i>voi</i>	dovete	dovrete	
	<i>loro</i>	devono	dovranno	
fare to do; to make	<i>io</i>	faccio	farò	
	<i>tu</i>	fai	farai	
	<i>lui/lei</i>	fa	farà	fatto
	<i>noi</i>	facciamo	faremo	(w/avere)
	<i>voi</i>	fate	farete	
	<i>loro</i>	fanno	faranno	
morire to die	<i>io</i>	muoio	morirò	
	<i>tu</i>	muori	morirai	
	<i>lui/lei</i>	muore	morirà	morto/a/i/e
	<i>noi</i>	moriamo	moriremo	(w/essere)
	<i>voi</i>	morite	morirete	
	<i>loro</i>	muoiono	moriranno	
piacere to like	<i>mi/ti/le/ci/gli/loro</i>	piace	piacerà	piaciuto/a/i/e (w/essere)
	<i>loro</i>	piacciono	piaceranno	

The verb **piacere** takes indirect object pronouns and you usually only need the third person singular and plural of this verb.

		Present	Future	Past Participle
porre to put	<i>io</i>	pongo	porrò	
	<i>tu</i>	poni	porrai	
	<i>lui/lei</i>	pone	porrà	posto
	<i>noi</i>	poniamo	porremo	(w/avere)
	<i>voi</i>	ponete	porrete	
	<i>loro</i>	pongono	porranno	

Other verbs conjugated like **porre** include: **opporsi** (to oppose) e **imporre** (to impose), and **proporre** (to propose or suggest)

		Present	Future	Past Participle
potere can; to able to	<i>io</i>	posso	potrò	
	<i>tu</i>	puoi	potrai	
	<i>lui/lei</i>	può	potrà	potuto
	<i>noi</i>	possiamo	potremo	(w/avere)
	<i>voi</i>	potete	potrete	
	<i>loro</i>	possono	potranno	

		Present	Future	Past Participle
rimanere to stay; to remain	<i>io</i>	rimango	rimarrò	
	<i>tu</i>	rimani	rimarrai	
	<i>lui/lei</i>	rimane	rimarrà	rimasto/a/i/e
	<i>noi</i>	rimaniamo	rimarremo	(w/essere)
	<i>voi</i>	rimanete	rimarrete	
	<i>loro</i>	rimangono	rimarranno	

		Present	Future	Past Participle
salire to go up	<i>io</i>	salgo	salirò	
	<i>tu</i>	sali	salirai	
	<i>lui/lei</i>	sale	salirà	salito/a/i/e
	<i>noi</i>	saliamo	saliremo	(w/essere)
	<i>voi</i>	salite	salirete	
	<i>loro</i>	salgono	saliranno	
sapere to know	<i>io</i>	so	saprò	
	<i>tu</i>	sai	saprai	
	<i>lui/lei</i>	sa	saprà	saputo
	<i>noi</i>	sappiamo	sapremo	(w/avere)
	<i>voi</i>	sapete	saprete	
	<i>loro</i>	sanno	sapranno	
scegliere to choose	<i>io</i>	scelgo	sceglierò	
	<i>tu</i>	scegli	sceglierai	
	<i>lui/lei</i>	sceglie	sceglierà	scelto
	<i>noi</i>	scegliamo	sceglieremo	(w/avere)
	<i>voi</i>	scegliete	sceglierete	
	<i>loro</i>	scelgono	sceglieranno	

		Present	Future	Past Participle
sedersi to sit	<i>io</i>	mi siedo		
	<i>tu</i>	ti siedi		
	<i>lui/lei</i>	si siede		seduto
	<i>ci sediamo</i>			(w/essere)
	<i>voi</i>	vi sedete		
	<i>loro</i>	si siedono		

		Present	Future	Past Participle
stare to stay; to be	<i>io</i>	sto	starò	
	<i>tu</i>	stai	starai	
	<i>lui/lei</i>	sta	starà	stato/a/i/e
	<i>noi</i>	stiamo	staremo	(w/essere)
	<i>voi</i>	state	starete	
	<i>loro</i>	stanno	staranno	

		Present	Future	Past Participle
tacere to be silent	<i>io</i>	taccio	tacerò	
	<i>tu</i>	taci	tacerai	
	<i>lui/lei</i>	tace	tacerà	taciuto
	<i>noi</i>	taciamo	taceremo	(w/avere)
	<i>voi</i>	tacete	tacerete	
	<i>loro</i>	tacciono	taceranno	

		Present	Future	Past Participle
tenere to hold	<i>io</i>	tengo	terrò	
	<i>tu</i>	tieni	terrai	
	<i>lui/lei</i>	tiene	terrà	tenuto
	<i>noi</i>	teniamo	terremo	(w/avere)
	<i>voi</i>	tenete	terrete	
	<i>loro</i>	tengono	terranno	
togliere to take away	<i>io</i>	tolgo	toglierò	
	<i>tu</i>	togli	toglierai	
	<i>lui/lei</i>	toglie	toglierà	tolto
	<i>noi</i>	togliamo	toglieremo	(w/avere)
	<i>voi</i>	togliete	toglierete	
	<i>loro</i>	tolgono	toglieranno	
uscire to go out	<i>io</i>	esco	uscirò	
	<i>tu</i>	esci	uscirai	
	<i>lui/lei</i>	esce	uscirà	uscito/a/i/e
	<i>noi</i>	usciamo	usciremo	(w/essere)
	<i>voi</i>	uscite	uscirete	
	<i>loro</i>	escono	usciranno	

		Present	Future	Past Participle
venire to come	<i>io</i>	vengo	verrò	
	<i>tu</i>	vieni	verrai	
	<i>lui/lei</i>	viene	verrà	venuto/a/i/e
	<i>noi</i>	veniamo	verremo	(w/essere)
	<i>voi</i>	venite	verrete	
	<i>loro</i>	vengono	verranno	

		Present	Future	Past Participle
volere to want	<i>io</i>	voglio	vorrò	
	<i>tu</i>	vuoi	vorrai	
	<i>lui/lei</i>	vuole	verrà	voluto
	<i>noi</i>	vogliamo	vorremo	(w/avere)
	<i>voi</i>	volete	vorrete	
	<i>loro</i>	vogliono	vorranno	

Italian -IRE Verbs with a Special Pattern (-isc-)

		Present	Future	Past Participle
capire to understand	<i>io</i>	capisco	capiрò	
	<i>tu</i>	capisci	capirai	
	<i>lui/lei</i>	capisce	capiрà	capito
	<i>noi</i>	capiamo	capiremo	(w/avere)
	<i>voi</i>	capite	capirete	
	<i>loro</i>	capiscono	capiрanno	

		Present	Future	Past Participle
finire to finish	<i>io</i>	finisco	finirò	
	<i>tu</i>	finisci	finirai	
	<i>lui/lei</i>	finisce	finirà	finito
	<i>noi</i>	finiamo	finiremo	(w/avere)
	<i>voi</i>	finite	finirete	
	<i>loro</i>	finiscono	finiranno	

		Present	Future	Past Participle
preferire to prefer	<i>io</i>	preferisco	preferirò	
	<i>tu</i>	preferisci	preferirai	
	<i>lui/lei</i>	preferisce	preferirà	preferito
	<i>noi</i>	preferiamo	preferiremo	(w/avere)
	<i>voi</i>	preferite	preferirete	
	<i>loro</i>	preferiscono	preferiranno	

Other common -ISC verbs include: **pulire** (to clean), **interferire** (to interfere), and **costruire** (to build)

Common Irregular Past Participles

	Past Participle	Definition
cuocere (to cook)	cotto	<i>cooked</i>
decidere (to decide)	deciso	<i>decided</i>
leggere (to read)	letto	<i>read</i>
mettere (to put)	messo	<i>put</i>
morire (to die)	morto	<i>died</i>
nascere (to be born)	nato	<i>born</i>
perdere (to lose)	perso, perduto	<i>lost</i>
prendere (to take, to have)	preso	<i>took, had, taken</i>
rispondere (to reply/respond)	risposto	<i>replied/responded/answered</i>
scogliere (to melt)	sciolto	<i>melted</i>
scrivere (to write)	scritto	<i>wrote, written</i>
vedere (to see)	visto, veduto	<i>saw, seen</i>
vivere (to live)	vissuto	<i>lived</i>

For more on Italian verbs and also practice exercises, see *Italian Verbs For Dummies* (John Wiley & Sons, Inc.).

Italian-English Mini Dictionary

A

a destra/ah dehs-trah/(on the) right
a domani/ah doh-mah-nee/see you tomorrow
a dopo/ah doh-poh/see you later
a sinistra/ah see-nees-trah/(on the) left
abitare/ah-bee-tah-reh/to live
abito/m/ah-bee-toh/suit
acqua/f/ahk-kwah/water
aereo/m/ah-eh-reh-oh/airplane
aeroporto/m/ah-eh-roh-pohr-toh/airport
affittare (v.)/ahf-feet-tah-reh/to rent
agosto/ah-gohs-toh/August
albergo/m/ahl-behr-goh/hotel
amare (v.)/ah-mah-reh/to love
americana/f/americano/m (v.)/ah-meh-ree-kah-nah/ah-meh-ree-kah-noh/American
amica/f/amico/m/ ah-mee-kah/ah-mee-koh/friend
amore/m/ah-moh-reh/love
anche/ahn-keh/also
andare (v.)/ahn-dah-reh/to go
andata/f/ahn-dah-tah/one-way (ticket)
andata/f/e ritorno/m/ahn-dah-tah eh ree-tohr-noh/round trip
anno/m/ahn-noh/year
antipasti/m/ahn-tee-pahs-tee/appetizers

anziana/f/anziano/m/ahn-tsee-ah-nah/ahn-tsee-ah-noh/old (for persons)
appartamento/m/ahp-pahr-tah-mehn-toh/apartment
aprile/ah-pree-leh/April
architetto/m/ahr-kee-teht-toh/architect
arrivare/ahr-ree-vah-reh/to arrive
arrivederci/ahr-ree-veh-dehr-chee/see you; good-bye
assegno/m/ahs-seh-nyoh/check
autobus/m/ou-toh-boohs/bus
automobile/f/ou-toh-moh-bee-leh/car
avere (v.)/ah-veh-reh/to have
avvocato/m/ahv-voh-kah-toh/lawyer

B

bambina/f/bambino/m/bahm-bee-nah/bahm-bee-noh/child
banca/f/bahnkah/bank
bella/f/bello/m/behl-lah/behl-loh/beautiful
bene/beh-neh/well, good (adverb)
bere (v.)/beh-reh/to drink
bianca/f/bianco/m/byahnkah/byahn-koh/white
bicchiere/m/beek-kyeh-reh/glass
bicicletta/f/bee-chee-kleht-tah/bicycle
biglietto/m/bee-lyeht-toh/ticket
birra/f/beer-rah/beer

blu/f/m/blooh/blue
borsa/f/bohr-sah/bag, hand-bag
bottiglia/f/boht-tee-lyah/bottle
braccio/m/brahch-choh/arm
buona/f/buono/m/bwoh-nah/
bwoh-noh/good
buonanotte/bwoh-nah-noht-teh/
good-night
buonasera/bwoh-nah-seh-rah/
good evening
buongiorno/bwohn-johr-noh/
good morning; good day

C

c'è/cheh/there is
caffè/m/kahf-feh/coffee
calcio/m/kahl-choh/soccer
calda/f/caldo/m/kahl-dah/*kahl-doh*/
warm; hot
cambiare/kahm-bee-ah-reh/to change
cameriera/f/cameriere/m/kah-meh-ryeh-
rah/kah-meh-ryeh-reh/waitress/waiter
camicia/f/kah-mee-chah/shirt
campagna/f/kahm-pah-nyah/country
(countryside)
canadese/f/m/kah-nah-deh-zeh/Canadian
cane/m/kah-neh/dog
capelli/m.pl./kah-pehl-lee/hair
cappello/m/kahp-pehl-loh/hat
cappotto/m/kahp-poht-toh/coat
cara/f/caro/m/kah-rah/*kah-roh*/
dear; expensive
carina/f/carino/m/kah-ree-nah/
kah-ree-noh/nice
carta di credito/f/kahr-tah dee
kreh-dee-toh/credit card
casa/f/kah-zah/house; home
cassa/f/kahs-sah/cash register

cavallo/m/kah-vahl-loh/horse
cena/f/cheh-nah/dinner
cento/chehn-toh/hundred
chi/kee/who
chiara/f/chiaro/m/kyah-rah/*kyah-roh*/
light-colored (clear)
ci sono/chee soh-noh/there are
ciao/chou/hello; good-bye
cinema/m/chee-neh-mah/cinema
cinquanta/cheen-kwahn-tah/fifty
cinque/cheen-kweh/five
cioccolata/f/choh-koh-lah-tah/chocolate
città/f/cheet-tah/city, town
codice postale/m/koh-dee-cheh
pohs-tah-leh/zip code
colazione/f/koh-lah-tsyoh-neh/breakfast
collo/m/kohl-loh/neck
colore/m/koh-loh-reh/color
come/koh-meh/how
commessa/f/commesso/m/kohm-mehs-
sah/kohm-mehs-soh/sales clerk
comprare (v.)/kohm-prah-reh/to buy
costume da bagno/m/kohs-tooh-meh dah
bah-nyoh/bathing suit
cravatta/f/krah-vaht-tah/tie
crema/f/kreh-mah/custard

D

d'accordo/dahk-kohr-doh/all right; okay
dai!/dahy/come on!
dare (v.)/dah-reh/to give
dentista/f/m/dehn-tees-tah/dentist
dicembre/dee-chehm-breh/December
diciannove/dee-chahn-noh-veh/nineteen
diciassette/dee-chahs-seht-teh/seventeen
diciotto/dee-choht-toh/eighteen

dieci/dyeh-chee/ten
dire (v.)/dee-reh/to say
dito/m/dee-toh/finger
dodici/doh-dee-chee/twelve
dolce/f/m/dohl-cheh/sweet
domani/doh-mah-nee/tomorrow
donna/f/dohn-nah/woman
dormire (v.)/dohr-mee-reh/to sleep
dottore/m/doht-toh-reh/doctor
dove/doh-veh/where
dovere (v.)/doh-veh-reh/to have to, must
due/dooh-eh/two

E

emergenza/f/eh-mehr-jehn-tsah/
 emergency
entrata/f/ehn-trah-tah/entrance
entrare/ehn-trah-reh/to enter
essere (v.)/ehs-seh-reh/to be
est/m/ehst/east

F

faccia/f/fahch-chah/face
facile (adj.)/fah-chee-leh/easy
fame/f/fah-meh/hunger
fare (v.)/fah-reh/to do
febbraio/fehb-brah-yoh/February
felice (adj.)/feh-lee-cheh/happy
festa/f/fehs-tah/party, holiday
figlia/f/fee-lyah/daughter
figlio/m/fee-lyoh/son
fine/f/fee-neh/end
finestra/f/fee-nehs-trah/window
finire/fee-nee-reh/to finish

fiore/m/fyoh-reh/flower
formaggio/m/fohr-mahj-joh/cheese
fragola/f/frah-goh-lah/strawberry
fratello/m/frah-tehl-loh/brother
fredda/f/freddo/m/frehd-dah/
 frehd-doh/cold
frutta/f/frooh-tah/fruit

G

gatto/m/gaht-toh/cat
gelato/m/jeh-lah-toh/ice cream
gennaio/jehn-nah-yoh/January
gente/f/jehn-teh/people
ghiaccio/m/gyahch-choh/ice
giacca/f/jahk-kah/jacket; blazer
gialla/f/giallo/m/jahl-lah/jahl-loh/yellow
giardino/m/jahr-dee-noh/garden
ginocchio/m/jee-nohk-kyoh/knee
giocare (v.)/joh-kah-reh/to play
gioco/m/joh-koh/game
giornale/m/johr-nah-leh/newspaper
giorno/m/johr-noh/day
giovane/f/m/joh-vah-neh/young
giugno/jooh-nyoh/June
gonna/f/goahn-nah/skirt
grande/f/m/grahn-deh/big; tall; large
grande magazzino/m/grahn-deh mah-
 gaht-tsee-noh/department store
grazie/grah-tsee-eh/thank you
griglia/f/grigio/m/gree-jah/gree-joh/gray

I

ieri/yeh-ree/yesterday
impermeabile/m/eem-pehr-meh-ah-
 bee-leh/raincoat

impiegata/f/**impiegato**/m/eem-pyeh-gah-tah/eem-pyeh-gah-toh/employee
in ritardo/een ree-tahr-doh/late
indirizzo/m/een-dee-reet-tsoh/address
infermiera/f/een-fehr-myeh-rah/nurse
ingegnere/m/een-jeh-nyeh-reh/engineer
insalata/f/een-sah-lah-tah/salad
invito/m/een-vee-toh/invitation
io/ee-oh/I
italiana/f/**italiano**/m/ee-tah-lee-ah-nah/ee-tah-lee-ah-noh/Italian

J

jeans/m/jeenz/jeans

L

lago/m/lah-goh/lake
lana/f/lah-nah/wool
larga/f/**largo**/m/lahr-gah/lahr-goh/wide
latte/m/laht-teh/milk
lavoro/m/lah-voh-roh/work
lei/ley/she; formal you
libro/m/lee-broh/book
loro/loh-roh/they
luglio/looh-lyoh/July
lui/looh-ee/he

M

ma/mah/but
macchina/f/mahk-kee-nah/car
madre/f/mah-dreh/mother
maggio/mahj-joh/May
mai/mahy/never
malata/f/**malato**/m/mah-lah-tah/mah-lah-toh/ill

mamma/f/mahm-mah/mom
mangiare (v.)/mahn-jah-reh/to eat
mano/f/mah-noh/hand
mare/m/mah-reh/sea
marito/m/mah-ree-toh/husband
marrone (adj.)/mahr-roh-neh/brown
marzo/mahr-tsoh/March
me/meh/me
medicina/f/meh-dee-chee-nah/medicine
medico/m/meh-dee-koh/physician
mercato/m/mehr-kah-toh/market
mese/m/meh-zeh/month
metropolitana/f/meh-troh-poh-lee-tah-nah/subway
mettersi/meht-tehr-see/to wear
mia/f/**mio**/m/mee-ah/mee-oh/my
mille/meel-leh/thousand
moglie/f/moh-lyeh/wife
montagna/f/mohn-tah-nyah/mountain

N

naso/m/nah-zoh/nose
nebbia/f/nehb-byah/fog
negozio/m/neh-goh-tsee-oh/shop
nera/f/ **nero**/m/neh-rah/neh-roh/black
neve/f/neh-veh/snow
noi/noi/we
noiosa/f/**noioso**/m/noi-oh-zah/noi-oh-zoh/boring
nome/m/noh-meh/name
nord/m/nohrd/north
nove/noh-veh/nine
novembre/noh-vehm-breh/November
numero/m/nooh-meh-roh/number
nuoto/m/nwoh-toh/swimming

O

- occhio**/m/*ohk-kyoh*/eye
orecchio/m/*oh-rehk-kyoh*/ear
ospedale/m/*ohs-peh-dah-leh*/hospital
otto/*oht-toh*/eight
ottobre/*oht-toh-breh*/October
ovest/m/*oh-vehst*/west

P

- padre**/m/*pah-dreh*/father
pagare/pah-*gah-reh*/to pay
pane/m/*pah-neh*/bread
panna/f/*pahn-nah*/cream
pantaloni/m.pl./*pahn-tah-loh-nee*/pants
parlare (v.)/*pahr-lah-reh*/to talk
partire (v.)/*pahr-tee-reh*/to leave
passaporto/m/*pahs-sah-pohr-toh*/passport
pasticceria/f/*pahs-teech-cheh-ree-ah*/pastry shop
per favore/pehr fah-*voh-reh*/please
perché/pehr-*keh*/why; because
pesce/m/*peh-sheh*/fish
piacere (v.)/*pyah-cheh-reh*/nice to meet you; to like; pleasure
piazza/f/*pyaht-tsah*/square
piccola/f/**piccolo**/m/*peek-koh-lah*/ peek-*koh-loh*/small; short
pioggia/f/*pyohj-jah*/rain
piove/pyoh-*veh*/it's raining
polizia/f/*poh-lee-tsee-ah*/police
potere/poh-*teh-reh*/can; may
pranzo/m/*prahn-zoh*/lunch
preferire (v.)/*preh-feh-ree-reh*/to prefer
prego/preh-*goh*/you're welcome

prendere/prehn-deh-reh/to take; to order, such as in a bar or restaurant

presentare/preh-zehn-tah-reh/to introduce

Q

- qualcosa**/kwahl-koh-zah/something
quale/kwah-leh/which
quando/kwahn-doh/when
quanti/kwahn-tee/how many
quanto/m/kwahn-toh/how much
quattro/m/kwaht-troh/four
quattordici/m/kwaht-tohr-dee-chee/fourteen
qui/kwee/here
quindici/kween-dee-chee/fifteen

R

- ragazza**/f/rah-gaht-tsah/girl
ragazzo/m/rah-gaht-tsoh/boy
ridere (v.)/ree-deh-reh/to laugh
riso/m/ree-zoh/rice, laughter
rossa/f/**rosso**/m/rohs-sah/rohs-soh/red

S

- saldi**/m.pl./sahl-dee/sales
sale/m/sah-leh/salt
scarpa/f/skahr-pah/shoe
scura/f/**scuro**/m/skooh-rah/skooh-roh/dark
sedici/seh-dee-chee/sixteen
segretaria/f/**segretario**/m/seh-greh-tah-ree-ah/seh-greh-tah-ree-oh/secretary
sei/sey/six

sempre/sehm-preh/always
sete/f/seh-teh/thirst
sette/seht-teh/seven
settembre/seht-tehm-breh/September
settimana/f/seht-tee-mah-nah/week
signora/f/see-nyoh-rah/Mrs.; Ms.; woman
signore/m/see-nyoh-reh/Mr.; a gentleman
soldi/m.pl./sohl-dee/money
sole/m/soh-leh/sun
solo/soh-loh/only, just
sorella/f/soh-rehl-lah/sister
spalla/f/spahl-lah/shoulder
stanca/f/stanco/m/stahn-kah/
stahn-koh/tired
stazione/f/stah-tsyoh-neh/station
strada/f/strah-dah/street; road
stretta/f/stretto/m/streht-tah/streht-toh/
 tight; narrow
sud/soohd/south
supermercato/m/sooh-pehr-mehr-
kah-toh/supermarket

T

tazza/f/taht-tsah/cup
teatro/m/teh-ah-troh/theater
telefono/m/teh-leh-foh-noh/phone
tempo/m/tehm-poh/time; weather
tre/treh/three
tredici/treh-dee-chee/thirteen
treno/m/treh-noh/train
tropo/trohp-poh/too much
tu/tooh/you
tutti/tooh-t-tee/everybody
tutto/tooht-toh/everything

U

ufficio/m/oohf-fee-choh/office
uno/ooh-noh/one
uscita/f/ooh-shee-tah/exit
uomo/woh-moh/man

V

vacanza/f/vah-kahn-tsah/vacation
valigia/f/vah-lee-jah/suitcase
vedere/veh-deh-reh/to see
vendere/vehn-deh-reh/to sell
venire/veh-nee-reh/to come
venti/vehn-tee/twenty
verde/f/m/vehr-deh/green
verdura/f/vehr-dooh-rah/vegetables
vestito/m/vehs-tee-toh/dress
via/f/vee-ah/street
viaggiare/vee-ahj-jah-reh/to travel
viaggio/m/vyahj-joh/travel
viale/m/vee-ah-leh/avenue
vino/m/vee-noh/wine
voi/voi/you
volere/voh-leh-reh/to want

Z

zero/dzeh-roh/zero
zia/f/dzee-ah/ant
zio/m/dzee-oh/uncle
zucchero/m/dzoohk-keh-roh/sugar

English-Italian Mini Dictionary

A

address/**indirizzo**/m/een-dee-reet-tsoh
airplane/**aereo**/m/ah-eh-reh-oh
airport/**aeroporto**/m/ah-eh-roh-pohr-toh
all right; okay/**d'accordo**/dahk-kohr-doh
also/**anche**/ahn-keh
always/**sempre**/sehm-preh
American/**americana**/f/**americano**/m/ah-meh-ree-kah-nah/ah-meh-ree-kah-noh
aunt **zia**/f/dzee-ah
apartment/**appartamento**/m/ahp-pahr-tah-mehn-toh
appetizers/**antipasti**/m/ahn-tee-pahs-tee
April/**aprile**/ah-pree-leh
architect/**architetto**/m/ahr-kee-teht-toh
arm/**braccio**/m/brahch-choh
arrive (v.)/**arrivare**/ahr-ree-vah-reh
August/**agosto**/ah-gohs-toh
avenue/**viale**/m/vee-ah-leh

B

bad/**cattivo**/m/**cattiva**/f/kaht-tee-voh/kaht-tee-vah
bag/**borsa**/f/bohr-sah
bakery/**pasticceria**/f/pahs-teech-cheh-ree-ah
bank/**banca**/f/bahnkah

bathing suit/**costume da bagno**/m/kohs-tooh-meh dah bah-nyoh
be (v.)/**essere**/ehs-seh-reh
beach/**spiaggia** /f/spyahj-jah
beautiful/**bella**/f/**bello**/m/behl-lah/behl-loh
because/**perché**/pehr-keh
beer/**birra**/f/beer-rah
bicycle/**bicicletta**/f/bee-chee-kleht-tah
big; tall; large/**grande**/f/m/grahn-deh
black/**nera**/f/**nero**/m/neh-rah/neh-roh
blue/**blu**/f/m/blooh
book/**libro**/m/lee-broh
boring/**noiosa**/f/**noioso**/m/noi-oh-zah/noi-oh-zoh
bottle/**bottiglia**/f/boht-tee-lyah
boy/**ragazzo**/m/rah-gaht-tsoh
bread/**pane**/m/pah-neh
breakfast/**colazione**/f/koh-lah-tsyooh-neh
brother/**fratello**/m/frah-tehl-loh
brown/**marrone**/f/m/mahr-roh-neh
bus/**autobus**/m/ou-toh-boohs
but/**ma**/mah
buy (v.)/**comprare**/kohm-prah-reh

C

can, may (v.)/**potere**/poh-teh-reh
Canadian/**canadese**/f/m/kah-nah-deh-zeh
car/**automobile**/f/ou-toh-moh-bee-leh

car/**macchina**/mahk-kee-nah
 cash register/f/**cassa**/kahs-sah
 cat/**gatto**/m/gaht-toh
 change (v.)/**cambiare**/kahm-bee-ah-reh
 check/**assegno**/m/ahs-seh-nyoh
 cheese/**formaggio**/m/fohr-mahj-joh
 child (female)/**bambina**/f/bahm-bee-nah
 child (male)/**bambino**/m/bahm-bee-noh
 chocolate/**cioccolata**/f/choh-koh-lah-tah
 cinema/**cinema**/m/chee-neh-mah
 city; town/**città**/f/cheet-tah
 coat/**cappotto**/m/kahp-poht-toh
 coffee/**caffè**/m/kahf-feh
 cold/**fredda**/f/**freddo**/m/frehd-dah/
 frehd-doh
 color/**colore**/m/koh-loh-reh
 come on/**dai**/dahy
 come (v.)/**venire**/veh-nee-reh
 country/**campagna**/f/kahm-pah-nyah
 cream/**panna**/f/pah-nah
 credit card/**carta di credito**/f/kahr-tah
 dee kreh-dee-toh
 cup/**tazza**/f/taht-tsah
 custard/**crema**/f/kreh-mah

D

dark/**scura**/f/**scuro**/m/skooh-rah/
 skooh-roh
 daughter/**figlia**/f/fee-lyah
 day/**giorno**/m/johr-noh
 dear/**cara**/f/**caro**/m/kah-rah/kah-roh
 December/**dicembre**/dee-chehm-breah
 dentist/**dentista**/f/m/dehn-tees-tah
 department store/**grande magazzino**/m/
 grahn-deh mah-gaht-tsee-noh
 dessert (sweet)/**dolce**/m/ dohl-cheh
 dinner/**cena**/f/cheh-nah
 doctor/**dottore**/m/doht-toh-reh

dog/**cane**/m/kah-neh
 dress/**vestito**/m/vehs-tee-toh
 drink (v.)/**bere**/beh-reh

E

ear/**orecchio**/m/oh-rehk-kyoh
 east/**est**/m/ehst
 easy/**facile**/f/m/fah-chee-leh
 eat (v.)/**mangiare**/mahn-jah-reh
 eight/**otto**/oht-toh
 eighteen/**diciotto**/dee-choht-toh
 eleven/**undici**/oohn-dee-chee
 emergency/**emergenza**/f/
 eh-mehr-jehn-tsah
 employee/**impiegata**/f/**impiegato**/m/
 eem-pyeh-gah-tah/eem-pyeh-gah-toh
 end/**fine**/f/fee-neh
 engineer/**ingegnere**/m/een-jeh-nyeh-reh
 enter (v.)/**entrare**/ehn-trah-reh
 entrance/**entrata**/f/ehn-trah-tah
 everybody/**tutti**/tooh-t tee
 everything/**tutto**/tooh-t toh
 exit/**uscita**/f/ooh-shee-tah
 expensive/**cara**/f/**caro**/m/kah-rah/kah-roh
 eye/**occhio**/m/ohk-kyoh

F

face/**faccia**/f/fahch-chah
 father/**padre**/m/pah-dreh
 February/**febbraio**/fehb-brah-yoh
 fifteen/**quindici**/kween-dee-chee
 fifty/**cinquanta**/cheen-kwahn-tah
 finger/**dito**/m/dee-toh
 finish (v.)/**finire**/fee-nee-reh
 fish/**pesce**/m/peh-sheh
 five/**cinque**/cheen-kweh
 flower/**fiore**/m/fyoh-reh

fog/**nebbia**/f/*nehb-byah*
 four/**quattro**/kwaht-troh
 fourteen/**quattordici**/kwaht-tohr-dee-chee
 friend/**amica**/f/**amico**/m/*ah-mee-kah*/
ah-mee-koh
 fruit/**frutta**/f/*frooh-tah*

G

garden/**giardino**/m/*jahr-dee-noh*
 girl/**ragazza**/f/*rah-gaht-tsah*
 give (v.)/**dare**/dah-reh
 glass/**bicchiere**/m/*beek-kyeh-reh*
 go/**andare**/ahn-dah-reh
 good/**buona**/f/**buono**/m/*bwoh-nah*/
bwoh-noh
 good-bye/**ciao**/chou
 good evening/**buonasera**/
bwoh-nah-seh-rah
 good morning; good day/**buongiorno**/
bwohn-johr-noh
 good-night/**buonanotte**/
bwoh-nah-noht-teh
 green/**verde**/f/m/*vehr-deh*
 gray/**grigia**/f/**grigio**/m/*gree-jah/gree-joh*

H

hair/**capelli**/m/kah-pehl-lee (plural)
 hand/**mano**/f/mah-noh
 happy/**felice**/feh-lee-cheh
 hat/**cappello**/m/kahp-pehl-loh
 have (v.)/**avere**/ah-veh-reh
 have, take (bar, restaurant) (v.)/
prendere/prehn-deh-reh
 have to (v.)/**dovere**/doh-veh-reh
 he/**lui**/looh-ee
 hello/**ciao**/chou
 help/**aiuto**/ah-yooh-toh

here/**qui**/kwee
 horse/**cavallo**/m/kah-vahl-loh
 hospital/**ospedale**/m/ohs-peh-dah-leh
 hot/**calda**/f/**caldo**/m/kahl-dah/kahl-doh
 hotel/**albergo**/m/ahl-behr-goh
 house; home/**casa**/f/*kah-sah*
 how/**come**/koh-meh
 how many/**quanti**/kwahn-tee
 how much/**quanto**/kwahn-toh
 hundred/**cento**/chehn-toh
 hunger/**fame**/f/fah-meh
 husband/**marito**/m/mah-ree-toh

I

I/**io**/ee-oh
 ice/**ghiaccio**/m/gyahch-choh
 ice cream/**gelato**/m/jeh-lah-toh
 ill/**malata**/f/**malato**/m/mah-lah-tah/
mah-lah-toh
 introduce (v.)/**presentare**/
preh-zehn-tah-reh
 invitation/**invito**/m/een-vee-toh
 Italian/**italiana**/f/**italiano**/m/ee-tah-lee-
ah-nah/ee-tah-lee-ah-noh

J

jacket; blazer/f/**giacca**/jahk-kah
 January/**gennaio**/jehn-nah-yoh
 jeans/**jeans**/m/jeenz
 July/**luglio**/looh-lyoh
 June/**giugno**/jooh-nyoh

K

knee/**ginocchio**/m/jee-nohk-kyoh
 knife/**coltello**/m/kohl-tehl-loh

L

lake/**lago**/m/*lah-goh*
 large/**larga**/f/**largo**/m/*lahr-gah/lahr-goh*
 late/**in ritardo**/een *ree-tahr-doh*
 laugh (v.)/**ridere**/*ree-deh-reh*
 lawyer/**avvocato**/m/*ahv-voh-kah-toh*
 leave (v.)/**partire**/*pahr-tee-reh*
 (on the) left/a **sinistra**/ah *see-nees-trah*
 light-colored/**chiara**/f/**chiaro**/m/*kyah-rah/kyah-roh*
 live (v.)/**abitare**/ah *bee-tah-reh*
 love (v.)/**amare**/ah *mah-reh*
 love/**amore**/m/*ah-moh-reh*
 lunch/**pranzo**/m/*prahn-tsoh*

M

man/**uomo**/woh-moh
 March/**marzo**/mahr-tsoh
 market/**mercato**/m/mehr-kah-toh
 May/**maggio**/mahj-joh
 me/**me**/meh
 meat/**carne**/f/*kahr-neh*
 medicine/**medicina**/f/meh-dee-*chee-nah*
 milk/**latte**/m/*laht-teh*
 mom/**mamma**/f/*mahm-mah*
 money/**soldi**/m/*sohl-dee*
 month/**mese**/m/*meh-zeh*
 mother/**madre**/f/*mah-dreh*
 mountain/**montagna**/f/*mohn-tah-nyah*
 Mr./**signore**/m/*see-nyoh-reh*
 Mrs./**signora**/f/*see-nyoh-rah*
 my/**mia**/f/**mio**/m/*mee-ah/mee-oh*

N

name/**nome**/m/*noh-meh*
 neck/**collo**/m/*kohl-loh*

R

rain/**pioggia**/f/*pyohj-jah*
 raincoat/**impermeabile**/m/
 eem-pehr-meh-ah-bee-leh
 red/**rossa**/f/**rosso**/m/*rohs-sah/rohs-soh*
 rent (v.)/**affittare**/ahf-feet-tah-reh
 (on the) right/**a destra**/ah *dehs-trah*
 rice/**riso**/m/*ree-zoh*
 round trip/**andata/f/e ritorno**/m/
 ahn-dah-tah eh *ree-tohr-noh*

S

salad/**insalata**/f/*een-sah-lah-tah*
 sales/**saldi**/m. pl./*sahl-dee*
 sales clerk/**commessa/f/commesso**/m/
 kohm-mehs-sah/kohm-mehs-soh
 salt/**sale**/m/*sah-leh*
 say (v.)/**dire**/dee-reh
 sea/**mare**/m/*mah-reh*
 secretary/**segretaria/f/segretario**/m/*seh-greh-tah-ree-ah/seh-greh-tah-ree-oh*
 see (v.)/**vedere**/veh-deh-reh
 see you; good-bye/**arrivederci**/
 ahr-ree-veh-dehr-chee
 see you later/**a dopo**/ah *doh-poh*
 see you tomorrow/**a domani**/ah
 doh-mah-nee
 sell (v.)/**vendere**/vehn-deh-reh
 September/**settembre**/seht-tehm-breh
 seven/**sette**/seht-teh
 seventeen/**diciassette**/dee-chahs-seht-teh
 she/**lei**/ley
 shirt/**camicia**/f/*kah-mee-chah*
 shoe/**scarpa**/f/*skahr-pah*
 shop/**negozi**/m/*neh-goh-tsee-oh*
 shoulder/**spalla**/f/*spahl-lah*
 sister/**sorella**/f/*soh-rehl-lah*
 six/**sei**/sey

sixteen/**sedici**/seh-dee-chee
 skirt/**gonna**/f/*gohn-nah*
 sleep (v.)/**dormire**/dohr-mee-reh
 small; short/**piccola/f/piccolo**/m/
 peek-koh-lah/peek-koh-loh
 snow/**neve**/f/*neh-veh*
 soccer/**calcio**/m/*kahl-choh*
 something/**qualcosa**/kwahl-koh-zah
 son/**figlio**/m/*fee-lyoh*
 south/**sud**/m/*soohd*
 square/**piazza**/f/*pyaht-tsah*
 station/**stazione**/f/*stah-tsee-oh-neh*
 strawberry/**fragola**/f/*frah-goh-lah*
 street; road/**strada**/f/*strah-dah* or via/
 f/vee-ah
 subway/**metropolitana**/f/
 meh-troh-poh-lee-tah-nah
 sugar/**zucchero**/m/*dzook-keh-roh*
 suit/**abito**/m/*ah-bee-toh*
 suitcase/**valigia**/f/*vah-lee-jah*
 sun/**sole**/m/*soh-leh*
 supermarket/**supermercato**/m/
 sooh-pehr-mehr-kah-toh
 sweet/**dolce**/f/m/*dohl-cheh*
 swimming/**nuoto**/m/*nwoh-toh*

T

take (v.)/**prendere**/prehn-deh-reh
 talk (v.)/**parlare**/pahr-lah-reh
 tax/**dazio**/m/*dah-tsee-oh*
 telephone/**telefono**/m/*teh-leh-foh-noh*
 ten/**dieci**/dyeh-chee
 thank you/**grazie**/grah-tsee-eh
 theater/**teatro**/m/*teh-ah-troh*
 there are/**ci sono**/chee soh-noh
 there is/**c'è**/cheh
 they/**loro**/loh-roh
 thirst/**sete**/f/*seh-teh*
 thirteen/**tredici**/treh-dee-chee

thousand/**mille**/meel-leh
 three/**tre**/treh
 ticket/**biglietto**/m/bee-lyeht-toh
 tie/**cravatta**/f/krah-vaht-tah
 tight; narrow/**stretta**/f/**stretto**/m/streht-tah/streht-toh
 time; weather/**tempo**/m/tehm-poh
 tired/**stanca**/f/**stanco**/m/stahn-kah/stahn-koh
 today/**oggi**/ohj-jee
 tomorrow/**domani**/doh-mah-nee
 too much/**trop**/trohp-poh
 train/**treno**/m/treh-noh
 travel (v.)/**viaggiare**/vee-ahj-jah-reh
 travel/**viaggio**/m/vee-ahj-joh
 trousers/**pantaloni**/m/pahn-tah-loh-nee
 twelve/**dodici**/doh-dee-chee
 twenty/**venti**/vehn-tee
 two/**due**/dooh-eh

U

uncle/**zio**/m/dzee-oh

V

vacation/**vacanza**/f/vah-kahn-tsah
 vegetables/**verdura**/f/vehr-dooh-rah

W

waitress/waiter/**cameriera**/f/
cameriere/m/kah-meh-ryeh-rah/kah-meh-ryeh-reh
 wallet/**portafoglio**/pohr-tah-foh-lyoh
 want (v.)/**volere**/voh-leh-reh
 warm/**calda**/f/**caldo**/m/kahl-dah/kahl-doh

water/**acqua**/f/ah-kwah
 we/**noi**/noi
 wear (v.)/**mettersi**/meht-tehr-see
 week/**settimana**/f/seht-tee-mah-nah
 well (adverb)/**bene**/beh-neh
 west/**ovest**/m/oh-vehst
 what/**cosa**/koh-sah
 when/**quando**/kwahn-doh
 where/**dove**/doh-veh
 which/**quale**/f/m/kwah-leh
 white/**bianca**/f/**bianco**/m/byahn-kah/byahn-koh
 who/**chi**/kee
 why/**perché**/pehr-keh
 wife/**moglie**/f/moh-lyeh
 window/**finestra**/f/fee-nehs-trah
 wine/**vino**/m/vee-noh
 woman/**donna**/f/dohn-nah
 wool/**lana**/f/lah-nah
 work/**lavoro**/m/lah-voh-roh

Y

year/**anno**/m/ahn-noh
 yellow/**gialla**/f/**giallo**/m/jahl-lah/jahl-loh
 yesterday/**ieri**/yeh-ree
 you (formal)/**Lei**/ley
 you (plural, informal/formal)/**voi**/voi
 you (singular, informal)/**tu**/tooh
 you're welcome/**prego**/preh-goh
 young/**giovane**/f/m/joh-vah-neh

Z

zero/**zero**/dzeh-roh
 zip code/**codice postale**/m/koh-dee-cheh/pohs-tah-leh

Appendix C

About the CD

Track Listing

Following is a list of the tracks that appear on this book's audio CD, which you can find inside the back cover. Note that this is an audio-only CD — just pop it into your stereo (or whatever you use to listing to regular music CDs).

Track 1: Introduction and pronunciation guide

Track 2: Common phrases

Track 3: Asking directions

Track 4: Making informal small talk

Track 5: Having an informal conversation

Track 6: Talking with friends

Track 7: Talking about the weather

Track 8: Days of the week

Track 9: Months of the year

Track 10: Following a recipe

Track 11: Finding a place to meet

Track 12: Getting back to the train station

Track 13: Making dinner reservations

Track 14: Let's Eat! (Si mangia!)

Track 15: Enjoying some after-dinner ice cream

Track 16: Shopping for clothes

Track 17: Shopping for shoes

Track 18: Going to the movies

Track 19: Inviting friends to a party

Track 20: Talking on the phone to a friend

Track 21: Making a doctor's appointment

- Track 22:** Leaving a message
- Track 23:** Talking about the weekend
- Track 24:** Talking about sports
- Track 25:** Discussing free-time activities
- Track 26:** Planning a vacation
- Track 27:** Talking about a plane schedule
- Track 28:** Changing dollars to euros
- Track 29:** Making train connections
- Track 30:** Purchasing train tickets
- Track 31:** Taking the subway
- Track 32:** Checking in to a hotel
- Track 33:** Common Italian when planning a trip
- Track 34:** Visiting a doctor
- Track 35:** Reporting an accident to the police
- Track 36:** Using interrogative pronouns

Customer Care

If you have trouble with the CD, please call Wiley Product Technical Support at 877-762-2974. Outside the United States, call 317-572-3993. You can also contact Wiley Product Technical Support at support.wiley.com. Wiley Publishing will provide technical support only for installation and other general quality control items.

To place additional orders or to request information about other Wiley products, please call 877-762-2974.

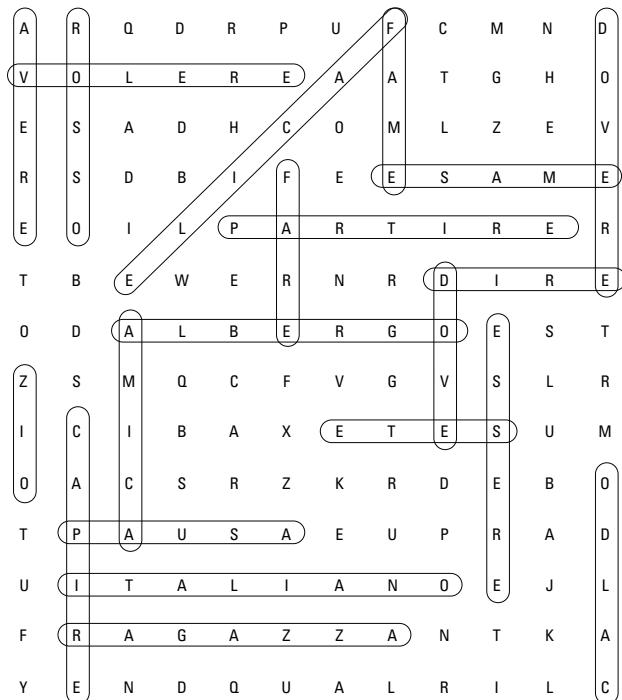
Appendix D

Answer Keys

T

he following are the answers to the Fun & Games activities.

Chapter 2: Jumping Into the Basics of Italian

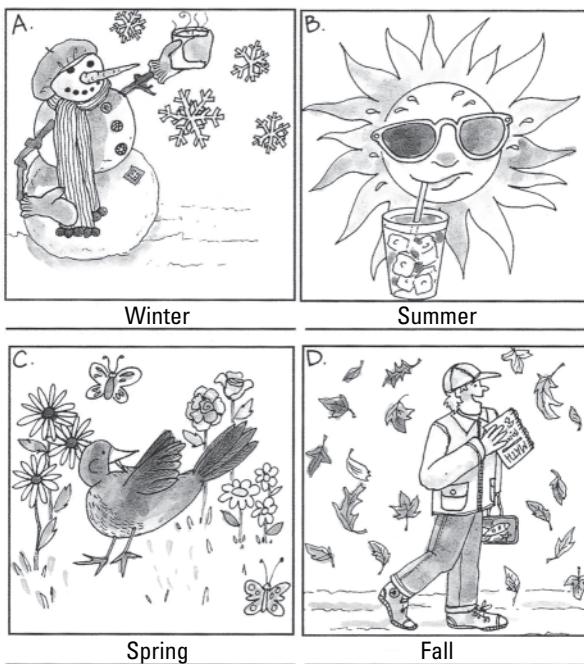


albergo
amica
avere
bici
caldo
capire
dire
dove
dovere
esame
essere

facile
fame
fare
italiano
partire
pausa
ragazza
rosso
sete
volere
zio

Chapter 3: Buongiorno! Salutations!

come sta conoscerla
e lei il piacere
le presento

Chapter 4: Getting Your Numbers and Time Straight**Chapter 5: Casa dolce casa (Home Sweet Home)**

1. il bagno (the bathroom)
2. la camera da letto (the bedroom)
3. il letto (the bed)
4. il soggiorno (the living room)
5. il divano (the couch)
6. la cucina (the kitchen)
7. i fornelli (the stove-top)
8. la tavola (the table)

Chapter 6: Where Is the Colosseum? Asking Directions

1. Via della Vigna Nuova
2. Ponte Santa Trinità and Ponte Vecchio
3. Arno
4. Palazzo Vecchio
5. Piazza Duomo and Piazza San Giovanni
6. Lungarno
7. Piazza della Repubblica

Chapter 7: Food Glorious Food – and Don’t Forget the Drink

1. ananas
2. ciliegia
3. uva
4. pera
5. cocomero
6. fragola

Chapter 8: Shopping, Italian Style

1. cappello
2. camicia
3. cravatta
4. completo
5. pantaloni
6. scarpe
7. gonna
8. camicetta

Chapter 9: Having Fun Out on the Town

1. festa
2. invitato
3. sabato
4. ora
5. verso
6. dove

7. perchè
8. aspetto

Chapter 10: Taking Care of Business and Telecommunicating

1. pronto
2. parlo
3. amico
4. C'è
5. appena
6. lasciare un messaggio
7. prego
8. chiamato

Chapter 11: Recreation and the Outdoors

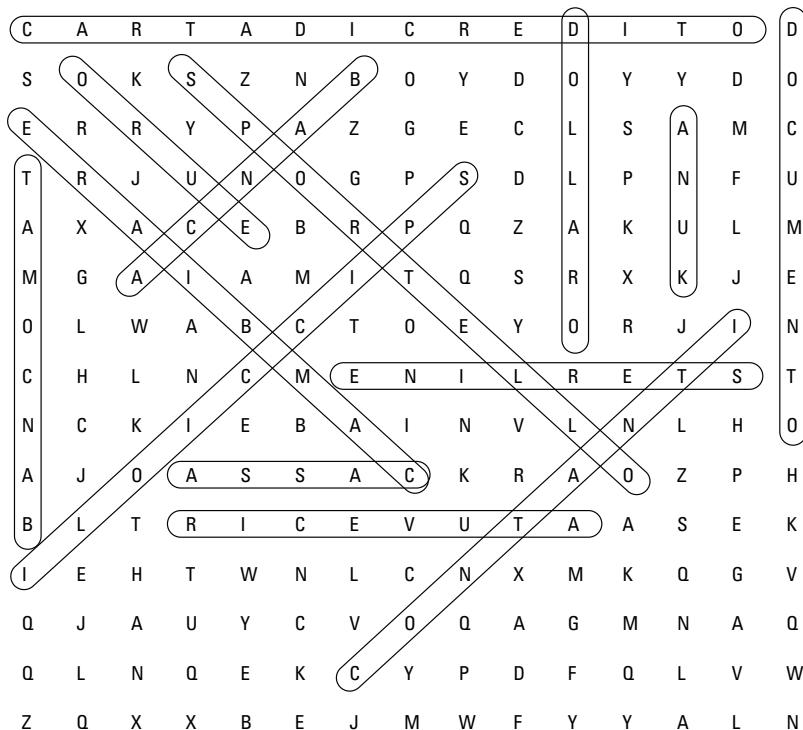
A	J	A	R	O	C	E	P	O	S
U	I	V	S	W	S	O	P	A	B
A	H	C	E	M	L	U	Y	O	A
C	I	K	R	L	L	U	V	G	D
C	G	B	A	E	F	O	L	E	D
U	N	V	M	Z	U	I	N	S	D
M	A	R	X	J	C	Q	O	I	Y
C	G	A	T	T	O	E	I	R	P
A	L	B	E	R	O	P	S	T	E
F	R	H	O	L	L	E	C	C	U

cavallo, fiore, uccello, gatto, lupo, quercia, pino, mucca, pecora, albero

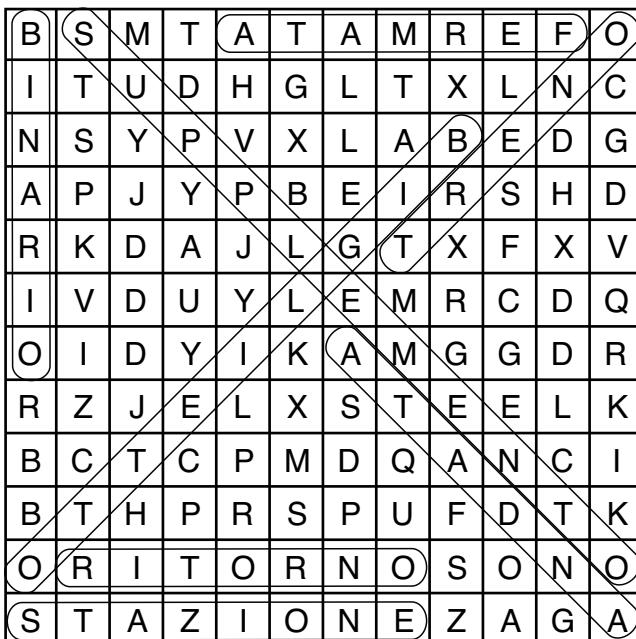
Chapter 12: Planning a Trip

- | | |
|------|------|
| 1. b | 4. c |
| 2. a | 5. a |
| 3. b | |

Chapter 13: Money, Money, Money



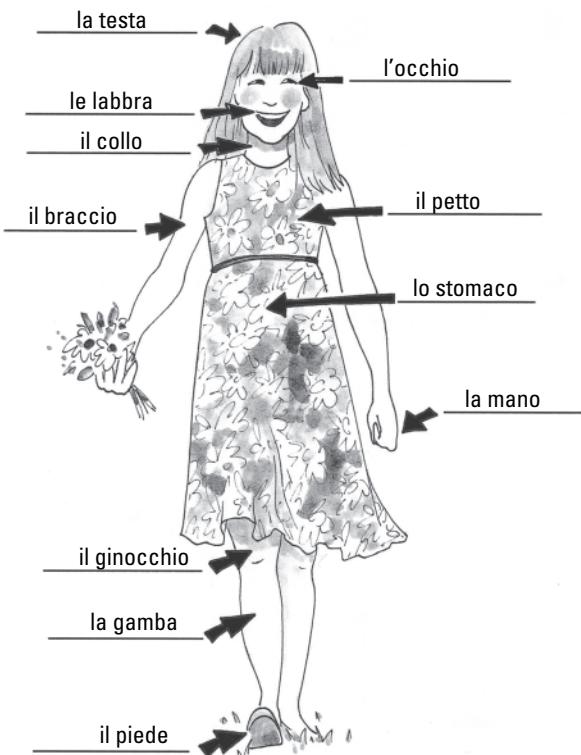
Bank	identification	small change
ATM	dollar	door
to change	euro	counter
credit card	Croatian currency	British pound
cash	receipt	

Chapter 14: Getting Around: Planes, Trains, Taxis, and Buses

traeno, fermata, stazione, binario, biglietto, andata, ritorno, supplemento

Chapter 15: Finding a Place to Stay

valige, cameriere, culla, camera, matrimoniale, letto, piscine, stanza, albergo, prenotazione, pensione, chiave, bagaglio, bagno

Chapter 16: Handling Emergencies**Chapter 17: Small Talk, Wrapping Things Up**

1. mia madre e mio padre
2. mio fratello
3. i miei nipoti
4. mia nonna
5. mia zia
6. mio cognato
7. mia nuora
8. mia figlia
9. i miei cugini
10. mia suocera

Index

• Symbols and Numerics •

24-hour clock, 71

• A •

a che ora (what time), 153
a che piano è (what floor is it on), 90
a destra (on the right), 106, 117
a domani (see you tomorrow), 46, 179
a dopo (see you later), 46
a presto (see you soon), 46
a proposito (by the way), 80
a sinistra (on the left), 106, 117
abbastanza (enough), 300
abbigliamento da donna/da uomo
 (women's/men's wear), 140
abito (suit), 142
accanto (next to), 95
accessori (accessories), 140, 147
accessorizing clothes, 147
accettare (to accept), 226
accettazione (check-in), 234
accidenti (wow, darn it), 12
accidents, reporting to police, 280–281
acciughe fresche (fresh anchovies), 133
accommodations
 checking in, 259–262
 choosing, 255
 Fun & Games, 269
 imperatives, 267–268
 pronouns, 262–266
 reserving rooms, 256–258
 Talkin' the Talk, 255, 257–258, 260–261,
 265–266
acqua frizzante (sparkling water), 121
acqua gassata/gasata (sparkling
water), 121

acqua in bocca (water in mouth), 328
acqua liscia/naturale (still water), 121
acqua minerale (mineral water), 121
addormentarsi (to fall asleep), 336
adjectives
 demonstrative, 263
 possessive, 300–304
 relationship with gender, 25–26
aeropporto (airport), 11, 117, 231
affidabile (dependable), 189
affittare (to rent), 88
agenzia di viaggi (travel agency),
 213, 246
agenzia immobiliare (real estate
agency), 87
agnello (lamb), 132
agriturismo (farm stay), 215, 255
airports
 checking in, 234–236
 excess baggage, 236
 after landing, 238–239
 waiting to board, 237
aiutami (help me), 271
aiuto (help), 271, 276
al bar (in the bar), 151
al forno (baked), 133
al macellaio (at the butcher's), 132
albergo/i (hotel/hotels), 40, 255
albero (tree), 14, 192
alla dogana (at customs), 240
alla griglia (grilled), 133
alla stazione (at the station), 246
all'angolo (at the corner), 106
all'incrocio (at the intersection), 106
alphabet, 13
alta (tall), 283
alta stagione (high/peak season),
 209, 256
alzarsi (to get up), 336

ambulanza (ambulance), 276, 281
amica/amiches (girl-friend/s), 26
amico/i (male friends or mixed gender friends), 26
ammobiliata (furnished), 87
amore (love), 10
anch'lo (I also, me too), 40
andare (to go), 32, 33, 109, 183, 197, 198, 336
andata (one way, spoken), 249
andate (go), 110
andiamo (let's go), 12
angolo cottura (cooking area), 88
anni (years), 80
annoiarsi (to be bored), 195
annuncio (advertisement), 87, 189
Answer Key for Fun & Games, 361–367
antipasto (appetizers), 127
aperitivo (before-dinner drink), 122
aperto (open), 140
apparecchiare (to set the table), 97
appartamento (apartment), 87
appliances, 95
aprà (finish), 267
apriamo (let's open), 267
aprire (to open), 29, 267, 335
aprire un conto (to open an account), 221
arancione (orange), 145
Arena, 159
aria condizionata (air conditioning), 87, 245, 258
armadio (armoire), 94
arrivare (to arrive), 216
arrivederci (good bye), 44, 319
arrivo/i (arrival/arrivals), 240, 252
articles
 definite, 24–25, 144
 indefinite, 23–24, 144
ascensore (elevator), 88, 140
ascoltare (to listen), 183, 205
ascoltare la musica (listen to music), 203

asiugamano/gli, asciugamani
 (towel/s), 94
asking simple questions, 295
aspettare (to wait), 253
aspiravpolvere (vacuum cleaner), 95
assicurazione (insurance), 288
assistente (assistant), 189
attenda in linea (please hold), 182
attenzione (attention), 11
attore (actor), 156
attraversa/attraversi/attraversate/attraversino (cross), 110
auto (car), 15
autobus (bus), 113, 249
autunno (autumn, fall), 73
avanti (come in), 10
avere (to have)
 about, 30, 273
 idiomatic uses of, 32–35
passato prossimo with, 183
 past participles using, 184
avere bisogno di (to need), 141
avere mal di (to have a __ache), 276
avete (do you (plural) have), 261
azienda (company), 186
azzurri (blue), 284
azzurro (sky blue), 145

• **B** •

babbo (dad, daddy), 311
baffi (moustache), 284
bagaglio (baggage, carry-on luggage), 236, 266
bagno (bathroom), 88, 94, 300
balcone (balcony), 88
ballare (to dance), 170
bambino/a (child), 10
banca (bank), 224
bancomat (ATM), 225, 226, 228
barba (beard), 284
barista (waiter), 120

bassa (short), 283
batteria (drums), 205
beach, 217
bed and breakfasts (bed and breakfasts), 255
beige (beige), 145
bello (beautiful), 19
bene (well), 15
benzina super (premium fuel), 245
benzina verde (unleaded fuel), 245
bere (to drink), 14, 170, 337
berretto (cap), 147
biancheria per la casa (household linens and towels), 140
bianco (white), 145
bicchiere/i (glass/glasses), 97
bidet (bidèt), 94
Biennale di Venezia, 160
biglietto (ticket), 153, 249
bilocali (two-room apartments), 87
bimbo (little boy), 14
binario (platform, track), 246, 249, 252
biondi (blond), 283
birra (beer), 123
bistecca (steak), 132
blu (blue), 145
boarding planes, 237
bocca carnosa (plump mouth), 284
bocca larga (wide mouth), 284
bocca stretta (thin lips), 284
bocce (lawn bowling), 199
body language, 46
boh (How should I know), 324
booking trips, 213–215
borsa (bag, handbag), 147, 283
bosco (woods), 192
bottiglia (bottle), 123
boutiques, 139–142
branzino (sea bass), 133
bravo/a (bravo), 10
breakfast, 126–127
bucatini (thick, tube-like spaghetti), 128

bunoa giornata (have a good day), 44
bunoa serata (have a good evening), 44
buon viaggio (have a nice trip), 209
buona fortuna (good luck), 163
buonanotte (good-night), 44
buonasera (good afternoon, good evening), 44
buone vacanze (have a nice vacation), 209
buongiorno (hello, good morning), 43, 44, 319
buono (good), 26
buses, 249–251
business and telecommuting
asking for people, 179–182
discussing your job, 186–189
Fun & Games, 190
getting messages, 179–182
making arrangements over phones, 178–179
past tense, 182–186
phones, 173–178
Talkin' the Talk, 175, 176–177, 178–179, 180, 181, 184–185, 188
buste (envelopes), 218

• C •

cabriolet (convertible), 245
caffè (coffee), 19, 120, 126
caio (hello, goodbye), 16
cala mobile (escalator), 140
calamari (squid), 133
calcio (soccer), 191, 198
calendar, 68–72
calle (narrow Venetian street), 107
calvo (bald), 284
calze (stockings), 147
cambiare (to change/exchange), 226, 231
cambiare valuta (to change money), 221
cambio (money exchange), 240
camera (room), 101, 256, 258

camera da letto (bedroom), 88, 94
camera doppia (room with two twin beds), 258
camera matrimoniale (room with a double bed), 258
camera singola (single room), 258
camere da letto (bedrooms), 87
cameriera (chambermaid, waitress), 266
cameriere (waiter), 120, 125
camicetta (blouse), 142
camicia (shirt), 142
camoscio (suede), 146
campagna (countryside), 87, 193, 209, 212
cane (dog), 194
cantantore (singer-songwriter), 162
cantina (cellar), 88
canzone (song), 316
capello (hair), 18
capire (to understand), 29, 30, 343
capo (head, boss), 309
cappello (hat), 18, 147
cappotto (coat), 142
capra (goat), 194
car rentals, 243–245
car trouble, 285–286
carne (meat), 127
caro (expensive), 90
Caro diario (film), 153
carro attrezzi (tow truck), 286
carta di credito (credit card), 223, 225
carta d'identità (identity card), 239
carta igienica (toilet paper), 132, 297
carta/scheda (phone card), 178
cartoline (postcards), 218
casa (house), 12, 14, 16, 26
casalinghi (housewares), 140
casco (helmet), 40
cassa (cash register), 140
cassaforte (safe), 259
castani (brown), 283
cattivo (bad), 26

cavallino (horse), 194
CD track listing, 359–360
c'è (there is), 296
cè l'ascensore (Is there an elevator), 90
cellphones, 174, 178
cellulari (cellphones), 174, 178
cena (dinner), 16, 119, 129
centesimi (cents), 229
centimetro (centimeter), 78
centri commerciali (shopping malls), 139
centro (downtown, city center), 109
certo (certainty, of course), 16, 228
changing money, 224–226
che (what), 294
che bello (how beautiful), 323
che c'è (what's up), 12
che domanda (what a question), 228
che è successo (what happened), 281
che macello (what a mess), 325
che ne so (how should I know), 324
che ora è (what time is it), 70
che ors sono (what time is it), 70
checking in
 to accommodations, 259–262
 for flights, 234–236
chi (who), 294
chi è il regista (who is the director), 156
chi sono gli attori (who's starring), 156
chiacchierare (to chat), 182
chiamare (to call), 182
chiamarsi (to call oneself), 47
chiamata/e (call), 182, 276
chiari (fair), 284
chiave (key), 16
chiesa (church), 16, 18, 117
chilogrammo (kilogram), 78
chilo/i (kilo/s), 78, 80, 135
chilometro (kilometer), 78
chirugo (surgeon), 277
chitarra (guitar), 205
chiudere (to close), 334

- chiuso** (closed), 140
ci sono (there are), 296
ci vediamo (see you), 46
ciao (hello, goodbye), 10, 40, 44, 319
cibo (food), 16
ciclismo (cycling), 198
cinema (cinema), 14, 117, 154
cinema, going to, 154–156
cinquanta centesimi (50 cents), 78
cintura (belt), 147
cioccolata (chocolate), 16, 126
cioccolata calda (hot cocoa), 121
circa (about), 237
città (city), 19
ciuccio (baby's pacifier), 16
clarinetto (clarinet), 205
classica (classical), 203
cleaning, 99–100
cognates, 11
colazione (breakfast), 258
collant (tights/pantyhose), 147
colloquio (interview), 189
color, 145
colori (colors), 145
Colosseo (Colosseum), 318
colpa (guilt), 16
coltello/i (knife/knives), 97
come (how), 294
come, scusi/a (I beg your pardon), 112
come al solito (as usual), 77
come ti trovi (how do you like), 300
cominciare (to start), 153
commessa/commesso (sales clerk), 141
communicazione (communication), 11
comò (dresser), 94
comodino (nightstand), 94
compagnia (company), 186, 307
Compleanno (birthday), 80
completo (outfit), 142
concert, going to, 162–164
concerto (concert), 163
condominio (condominium building), 87
coniglio (rabbit), 132
cono (cone), 131
consegna bagagli (baggage claim), 240
consigliare (to recommend), 300
consonants, 15–19
contanti (cash), 226, 228
conto (bill), 125
conto corrente (checking account), 223
contorni (side dishes), 127
controlli l'olio (check the oil), 245
controllo passaporti (passport control), 239
conventions, explained, 1–2
cooking, 98–99
coppetta (cup), 131
coprire (to cover), 335
correira (bus), 249
corsia di emergenza (emergency lane), 286
corta/e/o/i (short), 148, 284
cosa (what), 294
cosa le fa male (what hurts you), 275
costa di più (it costs more), 90
costa meno (it costs less), 90
costa poco (it costs little), 90
costruire (to build), 344
costume da bagno (bathing suit), 142
cotone (cotton), 146
counting, 63–66
countries, 56–58
cozze (mussels), 133
cravatta (tie), 147
credenza (credenza), 94
credit cards, 226–228
crema (custard), 126
crema solare (sun protection lotion), 296
crepi il lupo (may the wolf die), 327
cucchiaio/chucchiai (spoon/s), 97
cucina (kitchen), 88, 93–94
cucinare (to cook), 98, 333
culla (crib), 258

cuocere (to cook), 345
cuore (heart), 16
currencies, 228–231
cuscini (pillows), 94
customer care, 360
customs, 240–241

• D •

da morire (deadly), 75
da quanto tempo (how long), 300
d'accordo (agreed, okay), 12, 40
dai (you give), 15
dal giornalaio (at newspaper stands), 249
danno (damage), 288
dare (to give), 15, 32, 34, 337
dat tabaccaio (tobacco shop), 249
dates, making, 68–72
davanti a (in front of), 95, 106
days of the week, 66–68
decidere (to decide), 345
definite articles
 relationship with gender, 24–25
 when clothes shopping, 144
demonstrative adjectives, 263
dentifricio (toothpaste), 296
dentista (dentist), 277
dentists, 279
dentro (inside), 95, 106
denunciare (to report), 283, 288
department stores, 139–142
desidera (can I be of help, can I
 help you), 141
destinazione (destination), 240
destro/a (right), 274
di fronte a (opposite), 106
di lato (on its side), 95
di mattina (in the morning), 70
di media statura (of medium build), 283
di pomeriggio (in the afternoon), 70
di sera (in the evening), 70
dichiarare (to declare), 243

diciannove (nineteen), 64
diciassette (seventeen), 64
diciotto (eighteen), 64
dietro a (behind), 95, 106
dietro l'angolo (around the corner), 106
digitare (to enter), 228
dining out
 about, 123–124
 making reservations, 124–125
 paying for meals, 125–126
 sales slips, 126
 dinner, 129–132
dire (to say, tell), 32, 33, 337
directions, asking for
 Fun and Games, 118
 locations, 113–117
 specific places, 103–109
 Talkin' the Talk, 105, 107, 108–109,
 111–112, 114, 115
 verbs, 109–113
direttore (manager, director), 309, 311
disegnare (to draw), 333
distance, 78
ditta (company), 186, 300, 307
diva (diva), 15
divane (couch), 93
divertente (fun), 153
divertirsi (to enjoy oneself, to have a
 good time), 195, 305, 336
doccia (shower), 88, 94
doctors, talking to, 272–277
documento (identification), 174
dodici (twelve), 64
dogana (customs), 243
dolce/i (sweet/s), 14, 127, 134
dollaro/dollari (dollar/dollars), 230
domanda (question), 40
domanda d'assunzione (job
 application), 189
domani (tomorrow), 14, 67, 125, 231
dopo (after), 106
dopodomani (day after tomorrow), 67

doppiati (dubbed), 154
dormire (to sleep), 335
dottore (doctor), 277
double consonants, 18–19
dove (where), 40, 153, 294
dov'è (where is), 261
dove sono (where are), 261
dovere (to have to, must, need to), 37, 338
drinking, 119–123, 120–121
dritto (straight), 106
due (two), 63
duemila (two thousand), 64
duomo (cathedral), 109

• E •

e chi se ne importa (who cares), 12, 20
È lo stesso (It's all the same, It doesn't matter), 12
È rotto (It's broken), 189
eating, 119
ecco (here you go, here it is), 32
eccome (very), 329
economico (cheap), 90
elenco telefonico (phone book), 176
elettrodomestici (household appliances), 95
emergencies
about, 271–272
car trouble, 285–286
dentist, 279
doctors, 272–277
Fun & Games, 291
lawyers, 287–288
lost or stolen passports, 288–290
pharmacy, 277–279
reporting accidents to police, 280–281
robberies, 281–284
Talkin' the Talk, 275, 278–279, 280, 282, 285–286, 289–290

emergenza (emergency), 281
English words, in Italian language, 9–10
entrata (entrance), 140, 240
esame (exam), 26
esaurito (sold out), 163
espresso, 120–121
essere (to be)
about, 30, 295, 335
passato prossimo with, 183, 185
past participles using, 186
est (east), 105
estate (summer), 73, 121
estratto conto (bank statement), 223
etto (100 grams), 135
ettogrammo (hectogram), 78
euro, 228–229, 230
Euro City (EC) trains, 246
Euro Star train, 246
excess baggage, 236
expressions, favorite, 323–325

• F •

fabbrica (factory), 309, 311
faccia il pieno (fill it up), 245
“false friends”, 320, 321
famiglia (family), 19
fantastico (fanstastic), 12
fare (to do, to make), 15, 32, 33, 198, 338
fare benzina (to put in gas), 245
fare male (to hurt), 273, 276
farmacia (pharmacy), 277
fazzolettino di carta (tissue), 260
febbre (fever), 276
ferito (injured person), 281
fermare (to stop), 286
fermata (bus stop), 113
festa (party), 164, 170
Festival dei due mondi, 162
festivals, going to, 161–162
fettuccine (narrow, flat noodles), 128
fine settimana (weekends), 191

finestra (window), 88
finiamo (let's finish), 267
finire (to end), 153, 267, 344
finisca/i/ite (finish), 267
fino a (to, up to), 106
fiore (flower), 192
fiume (river), 193, 212
flauto (flute), 205
fodera (lining), 146
fon (blow dryer), 259
food
 breakfast, 126–127
 dining out, 123–126
 dinner, 129–132
 drinking, 119–123
 eating, 119
 faux pas, 321
Fun & Games, 137
 lunch, 127–129
 ordering in Italian, 316
 shopping for, 132–136
 Talkin' the Talk, 122, 123, 124–125,
 126–127, 130, 131–132, 134–135
food labels, reading, 315
forchetta/e (fork/s), 97
formal, compared with friendly, 45
Formula 1 (Formula One car racing), 198
fornelli (stove-top), 95
forno (oven), 95
fotocopia (photocopy), 187
fotocopiatrice (photocopier), 187
francese (French), 25
francobolli (stamps), 218
frappé (fruit milk shake, frozen
 fruit shake), 132
friendly, compared with formal, 45
frigorifero (refrigerator), 93, 95, 259
frullati (mixed fruit juice), 132
frullatore (blender), 95
frutta (fruit), 15
frutta fresca (fresh fruit), 127
frutti di mare (shell fish), 133

Fun & Games
 accommodations, 269
 Answer Key, 361–367
 basics, 41
 business and telecommuting, 190
 clothes shopping, 150
 directions, asking for, 118
 emergencies, 291
 food, 137
 home, 102
 money, 232
 nightlife, 171
 numbers and time, 81
 recreation and the outdoors, 206
 salutations, 61
 small talk, 312
 transportation, 254
 trip planning, 219
funghi porcini (porcini mushrooms), 78
funzionare (to work, function), 228
fuori (outside), 95, 106
furnishings, 92–95
furto (theft), 283
fusili (spiral-shaped pasta), 128
future tense, 37
futuro semplice (simple future), 217–218

• *G* •

gallima (chicken), 194
gallo (rooster), 194
gamba (leg), 17
gamberetti (small shrimp), 133
gamberi (prawns), 133
garage (garage, car park), 88, 266
gatto (cat), 194
gelateria (ice cream shop), 131
gelato (ice-cream), 40, 131
gelato artigianale (homemade
 ice cream), 131
gelosia (jealousy), 17, 18
gemello/a (twin), 300

gendered words, 22–26
gentile (kind), 17
 gestures, 20
ghiaccio (ice), 17, 121
ghirlanda (wreath), 17
giacca (jacket), 17, 142
giallo (yellow), 145
giocare (to play), 29, 197, 198, 205, 321, 333
gioco (game), 17
giornale (newspaper), 316
giorni feriali (weekdays), 252
giorni festivi (Sundays and holidays), 252
giorno (day), 17, 80
gira/giri/girate/girino (turn), 110
girare (to endorse), 223
girare a destra/a sinistra (to run right/left), 109
gita (tour), 212
gita organizzata (organized tour), 211
giudice (judge), 17
gli (the), 19
gli inquilini (tenants), 88
gomma (rubber), 17
gomma a terra (flat tire), 286
gonfio/a/o (swollen), 276
gonna (skirt), 142
 good-byes, common, 43–46
gradi (degrees), 77
grammo/i (gram, grams), 78
grande (big), 25, 142
grandi magazzini (department stores), 139
grassa (fat), 283
 greetings
 common, 43–46
 replying to, 45–46
grembiule (apron), 93
grigi/io (gray), 145, 284
guanti (gloves), 147
Guardia di Finanza (Financial Guard), 126

guerra (war), 17
guida (guide), 212
gusto (flavor), 131

• **H** •

ho bisogno di (I need), 141
ho fame (I'm hungry), 20
 home
 appliances, 95–98
 cooking and cleaning, 98–99
 directions to, 85–86
 finding apartments, 87–91
 Fun and Games, 102
 furnishing apartments, 92–95
 household chores, 100–101
 Talkin' the Talk, 89, 90–91, 92, 96–97, 98–99, 100
 types, 87

• **I** •

i mobili (furniture), 93
i padroni di casa (landlords), 88
i palchi (box seats), 156
i pensili (cabinets), 94
 icons, explained, 4–5
ieri (yesterday), 67
il bagno (bar/beach/club/restaurant), 217
il (piatto) fondo (bowl for soup or pasta), 97
il mio (mine), 264
il mio babbo/il mio papa (my dad), 310
 Il Museo della Scienza e della Tecnica, 160
il (il piatto) piano (flat dish), 97
il più presto possibile (as soon as possible), 286
il secondo (second course), 127
imbarco (boarding), 236
imparare (to learn), 333
 imperatives, 267–268
impermeabile (raincoat), 142

imporre (to impose), 339
importante (important), 11
in bocca al lupo (in the wolf's mouth), 327
in orario (on time), 237
in padella (in the skillet), 133
in piazza (on the public square), 151
in ritardo (late, delayed), 237
in treno (by train), 215
incidente (accident), 281
incidente stradale (traffic accident), 288
incredibile (incredible), 11
 indefinite articles
 relationship with gender, 23–24
 when clothes shopping, 144
indirizzo (address), 261
infermiera (female nurse), 277
infermiere (male nurse), 277
informazione (information), 182
infusi (herbal tea), 121
innamorarsi (to fall in love), 336
insegnante (teacher), 40, 311
insieme (together), 163
 Inter City (IC) trains, 246
interferire (to interfere), 344
 Internet, 174–175, 318
interprete (interpreter), 272
 interrogative pronouns, 293–300
intimo donna (ladies' intimate apparel), 140
intimo uomo (men's intimate apparel), 140
 introductions, making, 47–52
inverno (winter), 73
investire (to invest), 222
invitare (to invite), 164
 invitations, 60
invito (invitation), 164, 170
io (I), 27
 irregular past participles, 345
 irregular verbs, 30, 32, 336–343
Italia (Italy), 318

Italian films, 153, 316
 Italian language tapes, listening to, 317
 Italian publications, reading, 316
 Italian radio, 317
Italian Verbs For Dummies (Picarazzi), 345
 Italian words, in English language, 10–11
 Italianfoodnet.com, 318
italiano (Italian), 25

• **I** •

jeans (jeans), 142

• **L** •

La dolce vita (film), 153
 La festa di l'Unita, 161
La sagra del cinghiale (the wild boar festival), 161
La sagra del pesce azzurro (the Blue Fish Fair), 161
 La Scala, 159
la spiaggia (to the sea), 209
La strada (film), 153
La vita è bella (film), 153
Ladri di biciclette (film), 153
ladro (thief), 15
lago (lake), 193, 212
lampada (lamp), 94
lana (wool), 146
langa/ghe/go/ghi (long), 148
larga/ghe/go/ghi (loose), 148
largo (wide square), 107
lascia perdere (let it go, forget about it), 329
lastre (x-rays), 276
latte (milk), 132
lavandino (sink), 94
lavare i pavimenti (to wash the floors), 101
lavarsi (to brush, to wash oneself), 196, 336

lavastoviglie (dishwasher), 94, 95
lavatrice (washing machine), 95
lavello (sink), 94
lavero (job), 187
lavorare (to work), 307, 333
lavoro (work), 189, 311
 lawyers, 287–288
leggere (to read), 334, 345
lei (she, you), 15, 27, 28, 45
 length, 78
lentamente (slowly), 113
lenti a contatto (contact lenses), 281
lenzuolo/lenzuola (sheet/sheets), 94
 Leonardo da Vinci airport, 215
lettere (letters), 218
 letters, sending, 218
lettino (cot, lounge chair), 217, 260
letto (bed), 94
letto supplementare (extra bed), 258
librero professionista (self-employed), 187
libretto (registration), 288
libretto degli assegni (checkbook), 223
libro (book), 26
lino (linen), 146
lira/e (pound/pounds), 230
lisci (straight), 284
 listening to Italian language tapes, 317
 literal, being, 320
litro (liter), 78
lo sci alpino (downhill ski racing), 198
lo yogurt (frozen yogurt), 132
loggione (gallery), 156
loro (they), 27
 lost luggage, 241–243
 luggage, lost, 241–243
lui (he), 27
luna (moon), 15
 lunch, 127–129
lunedì (Monday), 19
lunghi (long), 284
lupo (wolf), 194

• M •

macché (of course not, certainly not), 328
macchina (car, machine), 113, 189, 286, 288
macedonia (fruit salad), 127
madre (mother), 15
magari (if only, I'd love it), 324
maglia (sweater), 142
maglietta (T-shirt), 142
magra (thin), 283
maiale (pig, pork), 132, 194
 Malpensa airport, 215
mamma mia (my goodness), 323
mandare (to send), 267
mandiamo (let's send), 267
mandi/manda/mandate (send), 267
mangiare (to eat), 29, 333
mansarda (attic), 88
manzo (beef), 132
 maps, public transportation, 251–252
marciapiede (sidewalk), 107
mare (sea), 193, 212
marmellata (jam), 14, 126
marrone/i (brown), 145, 285
me ne vado (I'm leaving), 20
meccanico (mechanic), 286
medicina (medicine), 277
medico (doctor), 272, 277, 311
merenda (snack-time), 119
meriuzzo (cod), 133
mese (month), 80
messaggino (text message), 174, 178, 189
messaggio (message), 266
messo litro (half liter), 78
 metric system, 77–80
metro (meter), 78
mettere (to put), 334, 345
mettere in ordine (to straighten up), 101
mettersi (to put on/to wear), 196, 336

mettete in ordine le vostre camere (clean up your rooms), 267
mezza pensione (half board), 255, 258
mezz'etto (50 grams), 135
mezzo (half), 135
mezzo chile (half a kilo), 135
mi (me), 275
mi aiuti, per favore (help me, please), 271
mi gira la testa (I'm dizzy), 276
mi piacciono (I like [something plural]), 40
mi place (I like [something singular]), 40
mi può aiutare, per favore (can you help me, please), 141
mi raccomando (please, I beg you), 325
mi scusa, non ho capito (I'm sorry, I didn't understand), 112
mi scusi/ino (excuse me), 103
mi sento male (I feel sick), 274
mi sento svenire (I'm about to faint), 276
mi sono persa (I'm lost), 40
mia mamma (my mom), 310
mia sorella (my sister), 301
microonde (microwave oven), 95
mila (one thousand), 64
mille grazie (thank you very much), 112
milligrammo (milligram), 78
millilitro (millileter), 78
millimetro (millimeter), 78
minuto (minute), 113
misura (size), 148
mite (mild), 77
moda (fashion), 139
modulo (form), 243
money
 banks, 221–223
 changing, 224–226
 credit cards, 226–228
 currencies, 228–231
 Fun & Games, 232
 Talkin' the Talk, 222–223, 224–225,
 226–227, 227–228, 229, 230–231

monolocali (studio apartments), 87
montagna (mountain), 193, 209, 212
morire (to die), 338, 345
moto GP (motorcycle racing), 198
motorino (moped), 283
movies, going to, 154–156
mucca (cow), 194
multisala (multiplex), 155
muscolo (muscle), 276
Musei Vaticani, 160
museo (museum), 163
museums, going to, 160–161
musica (music), 163
musicisti (musicians), 162

• N •

nascere (to be born), 345
naso corto (short nose), 284
naso lungo (long nose), 284
nationalities, 56–57
nazione (nation), 18
neanche per sogno (no way), 328
nebbia (fog), 77
negozi di regali (gift shop), 260
neorealismo (neorealism), 316
neri/o (black, dark), 145, 284
niente (nothing), 243
nightlife
 culture, 151–152
 Fun & Games, 171
 going to a concert, 162–164
 going to a local festival, 161–162
 going to a museum, 160–161
 going to the movies, 154–155
 going to the theater, 156–159
 Italian films, 153
 suggesting activities, 164–171
Talkin' the Talk, 152–153, 154–155,
 155–156, 157, 158–159, 160–161,
 161–162, 162–163, 165, 166, 168
no (no), 15
noi (we), 15, 27

non capisco (I don't understand), 297
non c'è di che (You're welcome), 12
non è caro (it's not expensive), 90
non fa niente (Don't worry about it, It doesn't matter), 12
non lo so (I don't know), 297, 300
non mi sento bene (I don't feel well), 274
non mi va (I don't feel like it), 325
non te la prendere (Don't get so upset), 324
nonno (grandfather), 18
nono (ninth), 18
nord (north), 105
nouns, relationship with gender, 22–23
numbers and time
 calendar, 68–72
 days of the week, 66–68
 making dates, 68–72
 metric system, 77–80
 numbers, 63–66
 ordinals, 85–87
 times of day, 66–68, 70–72
 weather, 72–77
numeri ordinali (ordinal numbers), 85
numero (number), 80, 113, 148
numero di telefono (telephone number), 176

• Ø •

occhio (eye), 19
office equipment, 187
oggi (today), 67
ognuno (each person), 101
ombrella (umbrella), 147
ombrellone (beach umbrella), 217
ondulati (wavy), 284
opporsi (to oppose), 339
orario (timetable), 252
orario di apertura (business hours), 140
orata (sea bream), 133
ordering food in Italian, 316

organization of this book, 3–4
ospedale (hospital), 117, 272, 276
otto (eight), 63
outdoors and recreation
 Fun & Games, 206
 hobbies and interests, 200–205
 reflexive verbs, 195–196
 sports, 196–200
 taking tours, 191–194
 Talkin' the Talk, 193–194, 196,
 199–200, 202, 203, 204
ovest (west), 106

• P •

padre (father), 15
padrone (boss, owner), 309
pagare (to pay), 243
pagine gialle (yellow page), 176
paio di scarpe (pair of shoes), 148
pallacanestro (basketball), 191
pallavolo (volleyball), 191
palline (scoops), 131
pane (bread), 134
pane e coperto (cover/service charge), 125
panetteria (breadshop), 134–135
panorama (view), 192
pantaloni (pants), 142
pantofole (slippers), 148
parla/i inglese (do you speak English), 53
parla/i italiano (do you speak Italian), 53
parlare (to speak), 27, 29, 333
parlo un po' (I speak a little bit), 53
parrucchiere (hairdresser), 260
partenza/e (departure/s), 240, 252
partire (to leave), 27, 29, 216, 305, 334
partita (game), 300
passaporto (passport), 215, 236, 239
passare la scopa (to sweep), 101
passare l'aspirapolvere (to vacuum), 101

passato prossimo (compound tense), 182–183
passports, 215, 288–290
past participles, irregular, 345
past tense, 37
pasta (pasta, pastry), 18, 126, 127
pasta all'uovo (egg noodles), 128
pasta fatta in casa (home made pasta), 128
pasta fresca (fresh pasta), 128
pastore (shepherd), 80
patente (driver's license), 243, 288
pattinare (to skate), 197
pausa (break), 40
pecora (sheep), 194
pedalò (paddle boat), 217
peggio per te (too bad for you, tough luck), 328
pelle (leather), 146
penne (short, cylinder-shaped pasta), 128
pensione completa (full board), 255, 258
pensioni (small hotels), 255
per favore (please), 18, 103, 259
per quando (for when), 246
perché (why), 19, 165, 170, 294
perdere (to lose), 345
periferia (suburbs), 87
permesso (may I pass, come in), 12
permettersi (to afford), 336
però (but), 19
personal pronouns, 27
pesce (fish), 127, 133
pesce spada (swordfish), 133
peseta/pesetas (peseta/pesetas), 230
peso (weight), 14
pharmacies, 277–279
phones, 171–179
phrases, favorite, 327–329
piacere (to like), 201, 338–339
piano (floor), 85
pianoforte (piano), 163, 205
pianta (plant), 192
piantala (stop it, cut it out), 329

piatto/i (dish/dishes), 97
piazza (square), 107, 109
Picarazzi, Teresa (author)
Italian Verbs For Dummies, 345
piccionaia (pigeonhouse), 156
piccolo (little, small), 14, 142
pino (pine), 192
piove (it's raining), 77
piscina (pool), 88, 260
pizza al taglio (slices of pizza), 134
plantina (map), 40
platea (orchestra), 156
pollo (chicken), 132
polpo/polipo (octopus), 133
poltrona (arm-chair), 93
pomata (cream), 281
ponte (bridge), 107, 109, 117
popular expressions, 11–12
porre (to put), 339
portacenere (ashtray), 260
portare fuori la spazzatura (to take out the garbage), 101
portiere (doorman), 266
possessives, 263–266, 300–304
posso dare un'occhiata (Is it all right if I just look), 141
postcards, sending, 218
potere (can, to be able to), 37, 339
pranzo (lunch), 119, 127
prato (meadow, lawn), 192
preferire (to prefer), 344
prego (you're welcome, thank you, can I help you, please, here you are sir), 18, 129
prelevare (to withdraw), 228
prelevare contate (to withdraw money), 221
prendere (to take), 29, 110, 127, 231, 267, 334, 345
prendiamo (let's take/have), 267
prendi/prenda/prendete/prendano (take), 110, 267
prenotare/fare una prenotazione (to make a reservation), 256

prenotazione (reservation), 125
 present tense, 37
preservativi (condoms), 320
presto (early, soon), 298, 300
prezzo (price), 140
prima (before), 106
prima colazione (breakfast), 119, 126
primavera (spring), 73
primo piatto (first course), 127
profumeria (perfumery), 140, 278
 pronouns
 demonstrative adjectives and, 263
 formal and informal ‘you’, 27–28
 interrogative, 293–300
 personal, 27
 possessive, 263–266, 300–304
pronto (hello, ready), 173, 182, 298, 300
pronto soccorso (emergency room), 276, 298
 pronunciation, basic
 about, 12–13
 alphabet, 13
 consonants, 15–19
 vowels, 13–15
proporre (to propose, suggest), 339
**proseguire/prosegui/proseguirà/
 proseguite/proseguano** (go on), 110
prova (test), 26
 public transportation
 bus or tram, 249–251
 maps and schedules, 251–252
 taxis, 245–246
 train, 246–249
pugilato (boxing), 198
pulire (to clean), 101, 344
pullman/pulmino (bus), 249
può ripetere per favore (could you
 repeat that please), 261
può ripetere più lentamente, per favore
 (can you please repeat it more
 slowly), 112

• Q •

quadro (picture), 17
quale/i (which, what), 294
quando (when), 80, 153, 294
quanti anni ha (how old is...), 40
quanti/e (how many), 80, 294
quanto (how much), 80, 294
quanto vengono (how much is it), 135
quattordici (fourteen), 64
quattro (four), 17
quattro stagioni (four seasons), 72
querzia (oak), 192
questo (this), 17, 263
questura (police headquarters), 283
quindici (fifteen), 64
quintale (quintal), 78

• R •

racchettone (beach tennis), 217
radio (radio), 18
ragazze (girls), 199
ragazzo/a/i (boy/boys), 26, 199
rasato (clean-shaven), 284
 reading
 food labels, 315
 Italian publications, 316
 recreation and the outdoors
 Fun & Games, 206
 hobbies and interests, 200–205
 reflexive verbs, 195–196
 sports, 196–200
 taking tours, 191–194
 Talkin’ the Talk, 193–194, 196,
 199–200, 202, 203, 204
 reflexive verbs, 195–196, 305–311, 336
regista (director), 156
 regular verbs, 28–30
reparti (departments), 140
 reserving rooms, 256–258
responsabile (responsible), 189

ricci (curly), 284
ricetta (prescription), 281
ricevuta/e (receipt/s), 232, 243
rifugi (mountain huts), 255
rigatoni (short-cylinder-shaped, and grooved pasta), 128
rimanere (to stay, to remain), 215, 339
ripetere (to repeat), 29, 334
riposarsi (to rest oneself), 195, 305
riscuotere (to cash), 223, 226
riscuotere un assegno (to cash a check), 221
risotto (risotto), 127
rispondere (to reply, respond), 345
ritorno (return trip), 249
robberies, 281–284
Roma, città aperta (film), 153
rooms, reserving, 256–258
rosa (pink), 145
rossi/o (red), 145, 284
rotonda (rotary), 109

• S •

sagre (town celebrations relating to harvest, wild boar, or saints), 151
sagreh (fairs), 161
sala di pranzo (dining room), 88
salata (savory), 126
saldare il conto (to check out), 261
saldi (sales), 140
saldi alla cassa (reduction at cash register), 140
sale (salt), 14
salire (to go up), 340
salutations
body language, 46
common greetings and good-byes, 43–46
Fun and Games, 61
getting acquainted, 53–60
introductions, 47–52

invitations, 60
Talkin' the Talk, 48, 49–50, 51, 52, 53–54, 54–55, 55–56, 59, 60
salute (bless you), 328
salve (hello, goodbye), 44
San Carlo, 159
sandali (sandals), 148
santo patrono (patron saint), 151
sapere (to know), 340
sassofono (saxophone), 205
scaffale (bookshelf), 93
scala (scale), 19
scarpe (shoes), 148
scegliere (to choose), 340
scena (scene), 19, 156
scesa (descent), 19
scheda telefonica (phone card), 174
schedules, public transportation, 251–252
sciarpa (scarf), 147
scimmia (monkey), 19
sciopero (strike), 309, 311
scippare (to snatch a handbag), 283
scippo (theft of a handbag), 283
scogliere (to melt), 345
sconto (discount), 19
scontrino (sales slip), 121, 126
scopa (broom), 97
scrivere (to write), 334, 345
scuola (school), 19
scuri (dark), 284
scusi/scusa/scusate (excuse me, sorry), 11, 103, 259
sedersi (to sit), 341
sedici (sixteen), 64
sedie (chairs), 94
seguire (to follow), 110
segui/segua/seguite/seguano (follow), 110
semaforo (traffic light), 109
semplice (plain), 126
sempre dritto (straight ahead), 106

- sending letters and postcards, 218
señorita (miss), 19
 sentences, simple, 21
sentire (to hear, feel, taste, touch), 335
sentirsi (to feel), 336
seppia (cuttlefish), 133
servizio in camera (room service), 258
servizio sveglia (wake-up call), 258
seta (silk), 146
 shoe sizes, 148
 shopping, for clothing
 accessorizing, 147
 color, 145
 definite and indefinite articles, 144
 department store and boutiques,
 139–142
 Fun & Games, 150
 sizes, 143, 148
 Talkin' the Talk, 141, 143–144, 145–146,
 147–148, 149
 shopping for food, 132–136
siamo arrivati presto (we arrived
 early), 298
 simple future tense, 217–218
sinistro/a (left), 274, 276
 sizes (clothing), 143, 148
 Skype, 174–175
 small talk
 Fun & Games, 312
 interrogative pronouns, 293–300
 possessives, 300–304
 reflexive verbs, 305–311
 Talkin' the Talk, 297–299, 302–304,
 309–310
soccorso stradale (roadside
 assistance), 286
società (company), 186, 307
soggiorno (living room), 88, 93
sogliola (sole), 133
sole (sun), 14
solo (only), 18
soluzione (solution), 281
 songs, listening to in Italian, 316
sono americano (I'm American), 58
sopra (on top of), 95, 106
sorpresa (surprise), 182
sotto (under), 95, 106
sottopassaggio (underpass), 107
 spa, 217
spaghetti (spaghetti), 17, 128
sparecchiare (to clear the table), 97
specialista (specialist), 277
spettacolo (show), 153
spiaggia (beach), 19
spiccioli (small change), 226
spigola (snapper), 133
spingere (to push), 140
spolverare (to dust), 101
 sports, 196–200
spremute (fresh-squeezed fruit
 juice), 121
stanza (room), 88, 256, 258
stare (to stay, to be), 341
stasera (this evening, tonight), 40, 125
stazione (station), 109, 117
sterlina/e (pound/pounds), 230
stilisti (designers), 139
stipendio (salary), 309, 311
stivali (boots), 148
stomaco (stomach), 276
strada (street), 85, 107
strada principale (main street), 109
 stressing words, 19–20
stretta/e/o/i (tight), 148
studente (male student), 26
studentessa (female student), 26
studiare (to study), 333
studio (office, study), 88
stupendo (wonderful, fabulous), 12
subaffittare (sublet), 88
succhi dr frutta (fruit juice), 121
sud (south), 106
suonare (to play [a musical
 instrument]), 170, 205, 333

supermercato (supermarket), 132
supplemento (supplement, surcharge), 237, 246, 249
svegliarsi (to wake up), 195, 196, 305
svendite (sales), 140

• T •

tabaccaio (tobacconist), 174, 218
tacchino (turkey), 194
tacere (to be silent), 341
taglia (size), 148
tagliatelle (flat noodles), 128
tailleur (skirt or pants and jacket), 142
Talkin' the Talk
 accommodations, 255, 257–258,
 260–261, 265–266
 basics, 31, 35–36, 37–38
 business and telecommuting, 175,
 176–177, 178–179, 180, 181,
 184–185, 188
 days of the week, 67
 directions, asking for, 105, 107, 108–109,
 111–112, 114, 115
 emergencies, 275, 278–279, 280, 282,
 285–286, 289–290
 food, 122, 123, 124–125, 126–127, 130,
 131–132, 134–135
 home, 89, 90–91, 92, 96–97, 98–99, 100
 metric system, 78–80
 money, 222–223, 224–225, 226–227,
 227–228, 229, 230–231
 nightlife, 152–153, 154–155, 155–156,
 157, 158–159, 160–161, 161–162,
 162–163, 165, 166, 168
 numbers, 78–80
 recreation and the outdoors, 193–194,
 196, 199–200, 202, 203, 204
 Salutations, 48, 49–50, 51, 52, 53–54,
 54–55, 55–56, 59, 60
 shopping, for clothing, 141, 143–144,
 145–146, 147–148, 149

small talk, 297–299, 302–304, 309–310
 times of day, 72
 transportation, 234–235, 237, 238–239,
 241–242, 244–245, 247, 248, 249–250,
 250–251
 trip planning, 210, 211–212, 213–214, 216
 weather, 73–74, 74–75, 76
tamponi (tampons), 297
tappeto (rug), 93
tardi (late), 189
targa (license plate), 288
tartufi (truffles), 78
tasse (taxes, tuition), 311
tasso d'interesse (interest rate), 223
tavolino (small table), 122
tavolo (table), 94, 125
taxi (taxi), 245
 taxis, 245–246
tazza (cup, mug, toilet bowl), 18, 94
tè (tea), 121
tè freddo (iced tea), 121
teatro (theater), 117
 telecommuting and business
 asking for people, 179–182
 discussing your job, 186–189
 Fun & Games, 190
 getting messages, 179–182
 making arrangements over phones,
 178–179
 past tense, 182–186
 phones, 173–178
 Talkin' the Talk, 175, 176–177, 178–179,
 180, 181, 184–185, 188
telefonino/telefonica (telephone),
 174, 178
telefono pubblico (public phone), 178
tempo (time), 189
tempo incerto (uncertain weather), 77
tempo libero (free time), 200
tende (curtains), 94
tendine (tendon), 276

- tenere** (to hold), 342
tennis (tennis), 191
tense
 future, 37
 past, 37
 present, 37
 simple future tense, 217–218
terme (thermal springs), 217
text messaging, 174
theater, going to, 156–159
ti godi (you enjoy), 192
ti interessa/mi interessa (you're interested in/I'm interested in), 311
ti sta bene (serves you right, it looks good on you), 324
times of day, 66–68, 70–72
tirare (to pull), 140
togliere (to take away), 342
tonnarelli (tubular noodles), 128
tonnellata (ton), 78
tonno fresco (fresh tuna), 133
tornare/indietro (to go back), 110
torna/torni/tornate/tornino
 (go back), 110
tostapane (toaster), 95
tours, taking, 191–194, 211–212
tovaglia (table-cloth), 97
tovagliolo/i (napkin/s), 97
traffico (traffic), 286
traghetto (ferry), 215
trains, 246–249
tram (tram), 249
trama (plot), 156
tramonto (sunset), 192
trams, 249–251
transportation
 airports, 233–240
 car rentals, 243–245
 customs, 240–241
 early or late, 253
 Fun & Games, 254
 lost luggage, 241–243
public, navigating, 245–252
Talkin' the Talk, 234–235, 237, 238–239,
 241–242, 244–245, 247, 248, 249–250,
 250–251
trasferisi (to move from one city to another), 88
traslocare (change houses), 88
trattoria (little restaurant), 124
trecentoventidue (three hundred and twenty-two), 63
tredici (thirteen), 64
treno (train), 15
treno rapido (express train), 246
trip planning
 arrivare (to arrive), 216
 beach and spa, 217
 booking trips, 213–215
 Fun & Games, 219
partire (to leave), 27, 29, 216, 305, 334
sending letters and postcards, 218
simple future tense, 217–218
taking tours, 211–212
Talkin' the Talk, 210, 211–212,
 213–214, 216
when and where, 209–210
tromba (trumpet), 205
tu (you), 15, 27, 28, 47
TV programs, 317
24-hour clock, 71

• U •

- uccello** (bird), 194
uffa (showing annoyance), 324
ufficio di cambio (exchange office), 224
ufficio postale (post office), 109, 218
ufficio/i (office/offices), 186, 307
Uffizi, 160
Umbria Jazz Festival, 162
umido (humid), 77
undici (eleven), 64
università (university), 20

uno (one), 63

uno sputino (a snack), 119

uscire (to go out), 32, 35, 342

uscita (exit, gate), 140, 236

uscita di sicurezza (emergency exit), 140

uso personale (personal use), 243

• V •

va bene (okay), 12, 40

vacanza (vacation), 240

vacci piano (slow down), 329

valiglia (suitcase), 236, 266

vasca da bagno (bath tub), 88, 94

va/vada/vadano (go), 110

vedere (to see), 334, 345

velluto (velvet), 146

vendere (to sell), 334

vendesi (for sale), 93

Venezia (Venice), 318

venga nel mio ufficio (come in my office), 267

vengo dall'America (I'm from America), 58

venire (to come), 32, 33, 343

venti (twenty), 63

ventidue (twenty-two), 63

verbs. See also specific verbs

directional, 109–111

-ire with special patterns, 343–344

irregular, 30, 32, 336–343

reflexive, 195–196, 305–311, 336

regular, 28–30

verde/i (green), 25, 145, 284

versare soldi sul tuo conto (to deposit money into your account), 221

vestirsi (get dressed, to dress oneself), 305

vestiti (clothes), 142

vestito (dress), 142

via (street), 85, 107

via principale (main street), 107

viaggiare (to travel), 215

viaggio (trip), 231

viaggio organizzato (organized trip), 215

viale (parkway, avenue), 107

vicino a (beside, next to), 106

vicolo (alley, lane), 107

villaggi turistici (resorts in hot spots), 255

vino/i (wine/wines), 15, 121

viola (purple), 145

violino (violin), 205

violoncello (cello), 205

virtù (virtue), 20

visas, 215

viscosa (rayon), 146

visibilità (visibility), 77

visto (visa), 215

vita (life), 14

vitello (veal), 132

vivere (to live), 27, 29, 334, 345

voce (voice), 205

voi (you), 27

volere (to want), 37, 343

volo (flight), 215, 237

vongole (clams), 133

vorrei (I would like), 297, 300

vowels, 13–15

• W •

watching Italian movies, 316

weather, 72–77

weight, 78

• X •

xenofobia (xenophobia), 16

xilofono (xylophone), 16

Apple & Macs

- iPad For Dummies
978-0-470-58027-1
- iPhone For Dummies,
4th Edition
978-0-470-87870-5
- MacBook For Dummies, 3rd
Edition
978-0-470-76918-8
- Mac OS X Snow Leopard For
Dummies
978-0-470-43543-4

Business

- Bookkeeping For Dummies
978-0-7645-9848-7
- Job Interviews
For Dummies,
3rd Edition
978-0-470-17748-8
- Resumes For Dummies,
5th Edition
978-0-470-08037-5
- Starting an
Online Business
For Dummies,
6th Edition
978-0-470-60210-2
- Stock Investing
For Dummies,
3rd Edition
978-0-470-40114-9
- Successful
Time Management
For Dummies
978-0-470-29034-7

Computer Hardware

- BlackBerry
For Dummies,
4th Edition
978-0-470-60700-8
- Computers For Seniors
For Dummies,
2nd Edition
978-0-470-53483-0
- PCs For Dummies,
Windows
7 Edition
978-0-470-46542-4
- Laptops For Dummies,
4th Edition
978-0-470-57829-2

Cooking & Entertaining

- Cooking Basics
For Dummies,
3rd Edition
978-0-7645-7206-7
- Wine For Dummies,
4th Edition
978-0-470-04579-4

Diet & Nutrition

- Dieting For Dummies,
2nd Edition
978-0-7645-4149-0
- Nutrition For Dummies,
4th Edition
978-0-471-79868-2

- Weight Training
For Dummies,
3rd Edition
978-0-471-76845-6

Digital Photography

- Digital SLR Cameras &
Photography For Dummies,
3rd Edition
978-0-470-46606-3

- Photoshop Elements 8
For Dummies
978-0-470-52967-6

Gardening

- Gardening Basics
For Dummies
978-0-470-03749-2
- Organic Gardening
For Dummies,
2nd Edition
978-0-470-43067-5

Green/Sustainable

- Raising Chickens
For Dummies
978-0-470-46544-8
- Green Cleaning
For Dummies
978-0-470-39106-8

Health

- Diabetes For Dummies,
3rd Edition
978-0-470-27086-8
- Food Allergies
For Dummies
978-0-470-09584-3
- Living Gluten-Free
For Dummies,
2nd Edition
978-0-470-58589-4

Hobbies/General

- Chess For Dummies,
2nd Edition
978-0-7645-8404-6

- Drawing
Cartoons & Comics
For Dummies
978-0-470-42683-8

- Knitting For Dummies,
2nd Edition
978-0-470-28747-7

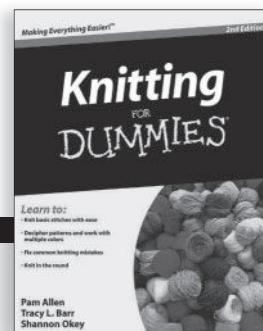
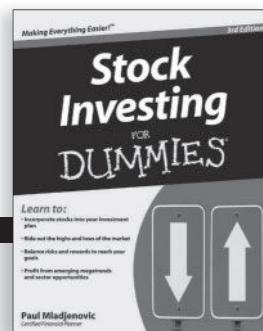
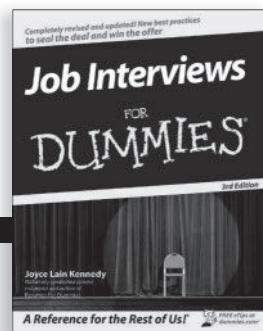
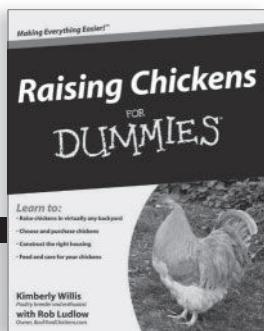
- Organizing
For Dummies
978-0-7645-5300-4
- Sudoku For Dummies
978-0-470-01892-7

Home Improvement

- Home Maintenance
For Dummies,
2nd Edition
978-0-470-43063-7

- Home Theater
For Dummies,
3rd Edition
978-0-470-41189-6
- Living the
Country Lifestyle
All-in-One
For Dummies
978-0-470-43061-3

- Solar Power Your Home
For Dummies,
2nd Edition
978-0-470-59678-4



Available wherever books are sold. For more information or to order direct: U.S. customers visit www.dummies.com or call 1-877-762-2974. U.K. customers visit www.wileyeurope.com or call (0) 1243 843291. Canadian customers visit www.wiley.ca or call 1-800-567-4797.

Internet

Blogging For Dummies,
3rd Edition
978-0-470-61996-4

eBay For Dummies,
6th Edition
978-0-470-49741-8

Facebook For Dummies,
3rd Edition
978-0-470-87804-0

Web Marketing
For Dummies,
2nd Edition
978-0-470-37181-7

WordPress
For Dummies,
3rd Edition
978-0-470-59274-8

Language & Foreign Language

French For Dummies
978-0-7645-5193-2

Italian Phrases
For Dummies
978-0-7645-7203-6

Spanish For Dummies,
2nd Edition
978-0-470-87855-2

Spanish
For Dummies,
Audio Set
978-0-470-09585-0

Math & Science

Algebra I
For Dummies,
2nd Edition
978-0-470-55964-2

Biology For Dummies,
2nd Edition
978-0-470-59875-7

Calculus For Dummies
978-0-7645-2498-1

Chemistry For Dummies
978-0-7645-5430-8

Microsoft Office

Excel 2010 For Dummies
978-0-470-48953-6

Office 2010 All-in-One
For Dummies
978-0-470-49748-7

Office 2010 For Dummies,
Book + DVD Bundle
978-0-470-62698-6

Word 2010 For Dummies
978-0-470-48772-3

Music

Guitar For Dummies,
2nd Edition
978-0-7645-9904-0

iPod & iTunes For
Dummies, 8th Edition
978-0-470-87871-2

Piano Exercises
For Dummies
978-0-470-38765-8

Parenting & Education

Parenting For Dummies,
2nd Edition
978-0-7645-5418-6

Type 1 Diabetes
For Dummies
978-0-470-17811-9

Pets

Cats For Dummies,
2nd Edition
978-0-7645-5275-5

Dog Training For Dummies,
3rd Edition
978-0-470-60029-0

Puppies For Dummies,
2nd Edition
978-0-470-03717-1

Religion & Inspiration

The Bible For Dummies
978-0-7645-5296-0

Catholicism For Dummies
978-0-7645-5391-2

Women in the Bible
For Dummies
978-0-7645-8475-6

Self-Help & Relationship

Anger Management
For Dummies
978-0-470-03715-7

Overcoming Anxiety
For Dummies,
2nd Edition
978-0-470-57441-6

Sports

Baseball
For Dummies,
3rd Edition
978-0-7645-7537-2

Basketball
For Dummies,
2nd Edition
978-0-7645-5248-9

Golf For Dummies,
3rd Edition
978-0-471-76871-5

Web Development

Web Design
All-in-One
For Dummies
978-0-470-41796-6

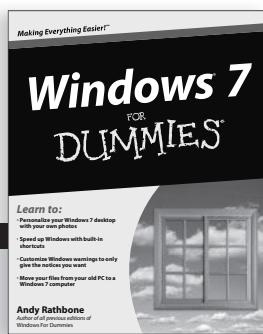
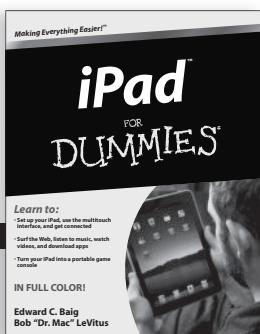
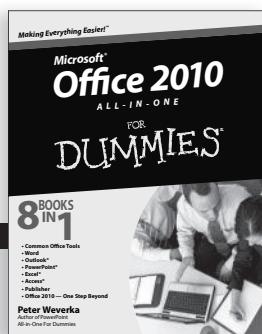
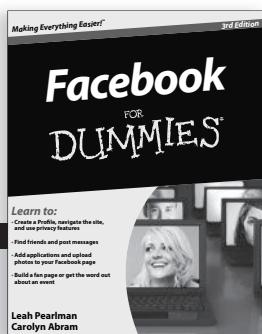
Web Sites
Do-It-Yourself
For Dummies,
2nd Edition
978-0-470-56520-9

Windows 7

Windows 7
For Dummies
978-0-470-49743-2

Windows 7
For Dummies,
Book + DVD Bundle
978-0-470-52398-8

Windows 7 All-in-One
For Dummies
978-0-470-48763-1



Available wherever books are sold. For more information or to order direct: U.S. customers visit www.dummies.com or call 1-877-762-2974. U.K. customers visit www.wileyeurope.com or call (0) 1243 843291. Canadian customers visit www.wiley.ca or call 1-800-567-4797.

Mobile Apps FOR DUMMIES®

There's a Dummies App for This and That

With more than 200 million books in print and over 1,600 unique titles, Dummies is a global leader in how-to information. Now you can get the same great Dummies information in an App. With topics such as Wine, Spanish, Digital Photography, Certification, and more, you'll have instant access to the topics you need to know in a format you can trust.

To get information on all our Dummies apps, visit the following:
www.Dummies.com/go/mobile from your computer.
www.Dummies.com/go/iphone/apps from your phone.

